

"SEMANTIC LEXICOLOGY AMONG A PRE-LEXICOGRAPHICAL PEOPLE"

The Rev. R.C. Wynne

Submitted to satisfy the requirements
for a degree of Master of Arts
in the Department of African Languages
U.C.T.

Date: October 13th, 1978.

The copyright of this thesis vests in the author. No quotation from it or information derived from it is to be published without full acknowledgement of the source. The thesis is to be used for private study or non-commercial research purposes only.

Published by the University of Cape Town (UCT) in terms of the non-exclusive license granted to UCT by the author.

"SEMANTIC LEXICOLOGY AMONG A PRE-LEXICOGRAPHICAL PEOPLE".

<u>Contents:</u>	<u>Page:</u>
1. <u>LEXICAL INFORMATION</u>	1
A. The Function of a Dictionary	1
B. Principles of Lexicology and Lexicography and their Application to the Appended English-Mbukushu Dictionary	2
1) Perspective and Purpose	3
2) Structural Pattern	4
3) Inclusion or Exclusion of Words	5
4) Necessary Information	5
5) Method used to gain Lexical Information	8
C. Pioneer Compilation of Dictionaries of African Languages	9
D. The Relationship of Mbukushu to other African Languages	10
2. <u>GRAMMATICAL ANALYSIS</u>	15
A. Phonology	15
B. Orthography	16
C. Morphology	19
Comparative Analysis of Verbal Extensions	26-32
3. <u>SEMANTIC DISCRIMINATION</u>	33
A. Confusion of Words	33
B. Semantic Implications of Method used to gather Lexical Information	34
C. Appreciation of the Target-Language	36
D. Equivalence	37
E. Polysemy	38
F. Homographs	39
G. Synonyms	39
4. <u>VERBAL EXTENSIONS</u>	41
<u>CONCLUSION</u>	54
<u>LIST OF REFERENCES</u>	55-57

SEMANTIC LEXICOLOGY AMONG A PRE-LEXICOGRAPHICAL PEOPLE

It has been said that "the business of this world is carried on by words". That business can be carried on if the words that are used are mutually understood. On what does such understanding depend? Much is conveyed by the tone of voice, by the look and gesture of the speaker. But this is outside the sphere of linguistics. The contribution of linguistics to the understanding of words is through lexical information, grammatical analysis and semantic discrimination.

1. LEXICAL INFORMATION

Beginning with lexical information, it is necessary to consider

- A. The function of a dictionary.
- B. The principles of lexicology and lexicography, and their application to the appended English-Mbukushu dictionary.
- C. The pioneer compilation of dictionaries of African languages.
- D. The relationship of Mbukushu to other African languages.

A. THE FUNCTION OF A DICTIONARY

There are two schools of thought about the function of a dictionary. The one follows the tenets of Dr Samuel Johnson and Noah Webster; the other originates with the Oxford English Dictionary of 1859, descending via Isaac Frank to the 1934 edition of Webster's Dictionary. In 1755, Dr. Johnson wrote, "Every language has its improprieties and characteristics, which it is the duty of the lexicographer to correct or proscribe. The function of a dictionary is one by which the pronunciation of our language may be fixed, and attainment facilitated; by which its purity may be preserved, use ascertained and duration lengthened".¹

In contrast, the compilers of the Oxford English Dictionary formulated these principles in 1859:- "The aim of this dictionary is to present in alphabetical series the words which have formed English vocabulary

from the time of the earliest records to the present day, with all the relevant facts concerning their form, sense-history, pronunciation and etymology. It embraces not only the standard language of literature and conversation...but also the main technical vocabulary, and a large measure of dialectical usage and slang'. It may be noted that the compilers say nothing about fixing the language, but of making a record of words and of their usage. Later, Isaac Frank stated succinctly that "the chief function of a dictionary is to record usage".²

Finally, the Introduction to the 1934 Webster Dictionary declares:-
 "Both Samuel Johnson and Noah Webster conceived it to be the duty of the dictionary editor to maintain the purity of the standard language. With the growth of literacy in the past century, and the increase in the use of dialect, slang and colloquial speech, it has become necessary for the general dictionary to record and interpret the vocabularies of geographical and occupational dialects".

The compiler of the appended English-Mbukushu Dictionary has conceived it to be his duty to record usage and to determine the meaning of words. He has not adopted a purist approach on principle; it is the Hambukushu themselves who are concerned to preserve the purity of their language. For example, when he used the word 'kushinya' for 'to spoil', he was told promptly, "That comes from the Thitswana 'gosenya'; the good Thimbukushu word is 'kupetha'".

B. THE PRINCIPLES OF LEXICOLOGY AND LEXICOGRAPHY, AND THEIR APPLICATION TO THE APPENDED ENGLISH-MBUKUSHU DICTIONARY

The Concise Oxford Dictionary defines lexicography as 'dictionary-writing'. Dictionaries are concerned with words and their meaning; or, to be more precise, with "the semantic description of individual terms in appropriate contexts".³ Lexicology may be defined as dictionary-science. It is concerned with the relationship between words in significant meaning and form; or, again to be precise, "with the study of recurrent patterns of semantic relationship and of any formal devices by which they may be rendered".⁴ This means "that lexicography is dependent on, but by no means the same as lexicology, and that the writer of dictionaries...would do well to separate the practical from the theoretical".⁵

In his theoretical approach to the preparation of his dictionary, the compiler has to make up his mind about his perspective and purpose; he has to create a clear structural pattern; he has to decide what words he will include or exclude; he has to give necessary information clearly and concisely.

1) Perspective and Purpose

From what perspective will he view his material? Will he arrange it conventionally, in alphabetical order; or classify it in semantic patterns and clusters; or adopt an arbitrary attitude towards it? The appended English-Mbukushu Dictionary is arranged in strict alphabetical order, so that the user can readily find the information for which he is looking. But there is also much classification of semantic patterns and clusters in many lexical entries, and extensive cross-references. As is stated in the Preface, "The purpose of this dictionary is objective; it is concerned with the recording of usage". The function of this dictionary accords with the standpoint of the Oxford English Dictionary and Isaac Frank.

The Preface continues:- "As this is the first dictionary to appear in Mbukushu, the compiler has tried to make it both clear in outline and comprehensive in scope. It is offered in the hope that others will be able to build on its foundations, to expand and to extend, to amend and to revise the work that he has begun". To this end, the outline pattern has been based on the Concise Oxford Dictionary. But entries and glosses have been selective, and many other glosses have been included such as would only be found in a dictionary of an African language. An attempt has been made "to make a dictionary that is concise but exhaustive; exact while not exacting; linguistically adequate for both languages, yet uncluttered with trivial details".⁶ A counsel of perfection? It is proverbial that "if one aims at the moon, one may hit a star".

2) Structural Pattern

A clear structural pattern will be based on the near equivalence of a word, single or compound, in the source language, with a word or words in the target-language. Where the equivalence in translation is not exact, or is idiomatic in the target-language(T-L), a literal translation of the word or words in the T-L will be entered.

A gloss will be needed to define the meaning of the word in the source-language(S-L); several glosses if the word has more than one meaning. Concise illustrations may be needed to clarify the use of the word in the T-L. As the Concise Oxford Dictionary says:- "The use of illustrative sentences are a necessary supplement to a definition when a word has different senses between which the distinction is fine, or when a definition is obscure and unconvincing until exemplified".⁷ To be precise, "Define, and your readers get a silhouette: illustrate, and they have it in the round".⁸

The appended dictionary has been arranged in three column format for clarity. In the first column(C1) will be found: English entry word(SL) - Definitive Gloss(g1). In the second column(C2) will be found: Mbukushu word(TL). In the third column(C3) will be found: Sentence or phrase illustrative of the use of the Mbukushu word(ill); or an explanatory note on the gloss(NB g1); or the continuation of the Mbukushu translation, if several words are needed to express the meaning of the English word(-TL).

When none of these are needed, a gloss and Mbukushu word may appear in the third column. (Otherwise paper wastage would be considerable).

A literal translation (lit) of the word or words in the T-L may appear after the gloss or in the third column.

This arrangement may be tabulated as follows:-

C1		C2		C3	
SL	g1	TL		ill	
SL	g1	TL	(-TL)	lit	
	(lit)		(SL	g1	NB g1
					TL)

3) Inclusion or Exclusion of Words

Decisions have to be made as to the inclusion or exclusion of words in the SL. Clearly the number of archaic or poetic English words will be strictly limited; also peculiarly English idioms will usually be omitted. A more difficult task is to restrict the number of words in particular semantic clusters. A decision has to be made as to which words are basic, most used, and still in circulation.

In preparing the appended dictionary, the compiler has had to remind himself that he is dealing with the living speech of an unsophisticated African river people, with a language whose literature is at present limited to primary school textbooks and translations of St Mark's and St Luke's Gospels, with a language of a people who are only just beginning to encounter the so-called 'civilised world'. So he has had to record the words that the people are using now, and to set down the best translation of English words which they may need in the foreseeable future. He has also had to include a limited number of grammatical and arithmetical terms, referring the reader to a full list of these in the booklet "Mbukushu Terminology".⁹

4) Necessary Information

Four kinds of information need to be given in a dictionary:-
basic grammar, pronunciation, morphology and semantics.

a) Basic Grammar The word in the S-L will be immediately followed by an abbreviation indicating the part of speech to which it belongs (ps). If the word in the T-L belongs to a different part of speech, the reader needs to be warned by an abbreviation placed before it.

If the word in the T-L is a noun, the number of the noun-class will have to be entered after it (n-cl); if it is irregular in singular or plural, it will be marked accordingly (irr).

Irregular verbs will be similarly marked. If the verbal form is an extension, this will be indicated (ext), and in some cases the verbal root may be given (R). In the appended dictionary, the number of the extension is given that corresponds to the number in the Linguistic and Semantic Tables in the Introduction.

This arrangement may be tabulated as follows:-

LHP						
SL	ps	gl	(ps)	a/s TL	n-cl	or ext
		(lit.	irr .		R)	

b) Pronunciation The word or words in the T-L will be marked by high tone accents or by a horizontal mark over a vowel when a syllable appears to have a slight stress. (See a/s over TL in the table above).

In the appended dictionary, lexical tone is the tone pattern of the word in isolation. It is not the tone pattern of the word at the end of a statement, as in Fr. Hannam's Shona Dictionary.¹⁰ But when the Mbukushu entry is longer than a single word, the tone pattern of each word will depend on its position in the phrase and its relationship to the other words.

c) Morphology Word-formation in a dictionary is indicated by prefixation, infixation, reduplication, and suffixation. (These are discussed fully under "Grammatical Analysis").

i) Prefixes to Mbukushu nouns are found in the Introductory Table of Class Prefixes. Compound prefixation of nouns does not occur, as it does, for example, in Shona.

ii) Infixation In the Semantic Table of Verbal Extensions and Variant Forms, the Reciprocal and Reflexive Variant Forms have an infix ku- between the infinitive ku- and the verbal radix + a".

iii) Reduplication of word-stems occurs particularly in adverbs, idiomatic expressions, and in the Reduplicative Variant Form of Verbs. Reduplication is one of the outstanding characteristics of Mbukushu.

d) Semantics

Definitive glosses after the word in the S-L delimit the significant meaning of the word in the T-L. Short, apposite sentences and phrases may illustrate it; literal translations where necessary will clarify it. Homographs and similar-sounding words will distinguish it; antonyms will sharpen the meaning by their opposition to it.

Synonyms will establish the semantic relationships of the word. But they need careful handling. Almost invariably they are near-synonyms; often they are synonyms of one particular meaning of the word in the T-L.

All this information has been entered in the appended dictionary. Special features are the treatment of multiple meanings, extensive cross-referencing, and the linking up of many verbal extensions with their roots and other extended verb-forms.

Multiple meanings are indicated by a number before the Mbukushu word, with entry references in brackets for other meanings. The dominant meaning is marked 1; the next most common meaning is marked 2; and so on.

Cross-references link words in the same semantic clusters; sometimes this is limited to a particular meaning of an entry word. Sometimes an illustrative sentence in one entry will illustrate the meaning of the Mbukushu word in other cross-referenced entries.

The linking up of many verbal extensions with their roots and other extensions is selective, as this would be the proper function of an Mbukushu-English dictionary. An example of how this would be done prefaces the entry 'Go'.

e) Entry of Semantic Information

Semantic information has been added to the structural pattern of the appended dictionary, with its basic grammar, as follows:-

Synonyms(syn), Multiple meanings(mm), and Cross-references(cr) will be entered with regard to spacing. Homographs(hom) and Antonyms(ant) will be usually found in the third column.

The resultant entry pattern may be tabulated as follows:-

	C1			C2		C3	
SL	ps	gl	a/s TL	ncl,ext	-TL	ill	NBgl
	(lit cr)(irr.ps)			(pl,R,mm)		(lit, or R, mm	hom,ant)
					(SL	gl	TL)

5) Method used to gain Lexical Information

The Hambukushu are great fishermen. A man will fish with rod and line, to hook one fish at a time. But the women use a large butterfly-type net to scoop up a number of fish, which they sort out on the river bank.

Lexicographers usually fish for words like the man with rod and line. They 'catch' one word of an African target-language. They try to find out all they can about its form and meaning; then they enter in a card index the information which they receive. Most lexicographers compile a dictionary from the African target-language into English or Afrikaans. Then they will use this material to compile a dictionary from English or Afrikaans back into the target-language.

But the appended dictionary has been worked out in the opposite direction, that is, from English into Mbukushu. The compiler has used a method analogous to the woman with the butterfly-type net, in order to elicit the lexical information which he desired. He has cast out a net with a large number of hooks to catch a number of T-L words at one time. These he has sorted, classified and arranged. He has used a single word in the source-language with selected glosses based on the Concise Oxford Dictionary. These glosses have 'hooked' the appropriate words from the target-language. But some T-L words have been 'lauded', not singly, but with attachments, such as near-synonyms, or multiple meanings.

The compiler has found that such differentiation of the uses of a word in the source-language stimulated the minds of his informants to 'come up with' different uses of some T-L words. So Mbukushu glosses began to appear among the S-L glosses, proliferating variations in meaning peculiar to the thinking of an African people.

When the information gleaned in this way was noted down and checked against previous information, further questions arose which confirmed or corrected, modified or enlarged the information previously given. For example, the compiler would notice that a T-L word occurred in several contexts and under different entries. He would question his informants to determine the dominant, secondary and tertiary meanings.

Again, he would hear variations in lexical tone, which led to the discovery and recording of homographs.

Also, he would try to find out the 'radix' of verbal extensions, which would lead to further discoveries of verbal morphology and semantics.

The semantic implications of this method of gaining lexical information are fully discussed on page 34ff of this thesis.

C. PIONEER COMPILATION OF DICTIONARIES OF AFRICAN LANGUAGES

Lexicographical and lexicological principles have been considered; their application to the appended English-Mbukushu dictionary has been outlined. It is right now to acknowledge the lexicographical work that has been done on African languages; and then to consider the relationship to other languages of Mbukushu.

In 1964, Dr Benson reviewed a "Century of Bantu Lexicology".¹¹ He showed that most of the pioneer lexicographical work in Africa had been done by missionaries. Some of them like John Whitehead were excellent linguists. This can be seen by his lucid classification of verbal extensions in Bobangi.¹²

The pioneer linguistic work of the missionaries is illuminated by comments in the Southern Sotho-English Dictionary¹³:- "The whole word treasure of a language cannot be assembled in a few years.

Words have wings, and are apt to escape capture for a long time... Every Mosuthu carried his dictionary with him in his mind...Mabille registered words whenever they happened to come his way".

The compiler of the appended dictionary has had a similar experience. When he began his work, the vocabulary of the language appeared to be small and confined. Gradually the whole landscape widened out; words that had eluded him came within his reach; riches in the language that he had never imagined were clearly revealed. He has come to realise that if he had done his work in a library or in the study of an urban dwelling, he would never have discovered what he has by living among the speakers of the language. He would never have found out, for example, the names of trees, and the uses to which the people put them; he would never have known what it means to carry a fire, for people who had not seen a match-box until about ten years ago; he would never have heard such a *recherché* idiomatic expression as '-kama thinyereri', which means 'to milk a cow after its calf is dead'. It is right and proper that lexicographical work should normally be done nowadays by highly trained linguists. Yet even their work will be stunted and impoverished unless their academic studies are refreshed by frequent contact with the living speakers of the language with which they deal.

The compiler of the appended dictionary acknowledges his debt to pioneer missionary and modern academic linguists, who have enabled him to do some comparative study of verbal extensions in which Mbukushu is particularly rich. This study is tabulated in the next section of this thesis, where the work of the authorities whom he has consulted are acknowledged.

D. THE RELATIONSHIP OF MBUKUSHU TO OTHER AFRICAN LANGUAGES

It is necessary to consider the relationship of Mbukushu to other languages. How should it be classified? Who are its linguistic neighbours? What influence have other languages been having on Mbukushu?

C.G. Black¹⁴ classified Mbukushu in the West Sub-Branch class to the 'Se-Yeiye' (presumably Ha-Yei).

R.N. Cust¹⁵ placed Mbukushu geographically in the Okavango-Cuito region of rivers. Among its near neighbours are Shambio and Kwangari.

C.N. Doke¹⁶ sited Mbukushu partly in the Central Zone of the Zambesi Group, and partly in the West-Central Zone.

M. Guthrie¹⁷ included Mpukushu as no.33 in Zone K, Group 30. Zone K is midway between Zone G, Swahili, and Zone L, Lula-Luka; but Dr Guthrie admitted that group 30 was the weak part of the classification, owing to insufficient data.

Dr Margaret Bryan¹⁸ placed Mbukushu in what she called "the Kwangali Single Unit". This was composed of Kwangali, Sambyu(cp Cust above), Mbogedu (Ngciriku), and Mbukushu.

She noted that other names of Mbukushu were Mampukush, Mambukush, Mbukuhu, Gova or Goba. There are two points of confusion here.

a) The full name of the language is Thimbukushu cp Setswana; the correct name for the people is Hambukushu. 'Mampukush and Mambukush' are Batswana corruptions of Hambukushu; the prefix of the second noun class in Tswana is ba-, but in Mbukushu it is ha-.

b) As to 'Gova or Goba', Dr Bryan supposed that this was another name for the language Mbukushu. Professor Schapera¹⁹ also referred to the 'Mambukushu', and stated that "their own name for themselves was apparently Ha-Gova". This is not so. The Mbukushu word 'haguva' means simply 'people'; 'muguva' means 'person'.

Professor Westphal²⁰ has classified Mbukushu in what he calls the "Okavango Dialect Group". He lists the other members of the Group as Kwangari, Sambyu, Mbogedu (Gciriku), and possibly Mbundza, in Angola.

He stated that Kwangari was the only language in the group with literature. And he adds that Hambukushu are to be found in the Okavango River Native Territory of South-West Africa, across the Okavango river into Angola, and across the Caprivi Strip into Botswana. He mentions that in 1958, there were 5 919 speakers of Mbukushu in Ngamiland. To-day there are considerably more. There are 4 000 at Etsha Settlement alone a good distribution in the North from Shakawe to Seronga, and a small colony in Maun. There is a large number clustered around Andara in the Caprivi Strip, where a Roman Catholic Mission has worked since 1910. But the greater part of the tribe are in Angola; their numbers are not known.

This dispersal of the Hambukushu has had three consequences.

- i) It has led to some dialectical variations.²¹
- ii) It has led to the use by Mbukushu speakers of words derived from other languages²² - Afrikaans, English, Portuguese and Setswana. The majority of these are from Setswana.
- iii) A certain number of words from other languages are found in circulation with Mbukushu words of the same meaning.²³ These words come from the languages of tribes living close to or among Hambukushu communities - Ha-Gceriku, Ha-Herero, Ha-Kwangadi and Ha-Ndjamba. Small communities of these tribes are living among the Hambukushu at Etsha Settlement, in North Ngamiland.

Dialectical variations, derivative words from other languages, and current words from other languages are found in the lexical entries, with their source indicated by abbreviations listed in the Introductory Notes.

The Problem of Classifying Mbukushu

While Professor Westphal classifies Mbukushu with a western group of languages, Professor Fortune²⁴ lists it in an eastern group, namely in a S.W. cluster of Luyana languages which includes N. Kwandu, Mashi

and S. Kwandu. (We have already noted that Dr Doke sited Mbukushu partly in the Central Zone of the Zambesi Group, and partly in the West-Central Zone).

Support could be claimed for both these classifications from the history of locations and migrations of the Hambukushu Tribe. Dr Thomas Larsen²⁵ says that in 1750, they were living near the Zambesi river close to Katima Molilo Rapids, and to the South where the river forms the Eastern border of the Caprivi. They were a sub-tribe in the Barotse Empire. In 1800, they quarrelled with another sub-tribe, and the Paramount Chief ordered them to leave his empire. They migrated to the Mashi region of the Mid-Kwando River swamps, which to-day forms part of the Caprivi, West Barotseland and S.E. Angola.

Larsen quotes Sillery as thinking that they became widely dispersed; that some went to Lachindo on the Linyanti River, others settled among the Toka. Some intermarried with the Totela on the N. Zambesi adjacent to the Caprivi, to form the Subia tribe, who still call themselves Hambukushu; under Lipelangwe they migrated to Impalala Island at the extreme eastern tip of the Caprivi Strip. A significant number migrated to the lower Okavango River, settling at Andara, and taking with them the sacred rainmaking apparatus. Finally, Larsen cites Gibbons as saying that the Mbukushu, who migrated to Mashe river, lived there for sixty years; but, owing to a severe famine, to which Nettleton alludes, a large section under Chief Mashamba followed the elephants to the Okavango River country and remained there. The Chief established his capital on Sebanana Island.

This was the pattern of dispersion until 1967. A large number of Hambukushu were living at that time between the Kwando and Cuito Rivers in Angola. In 1967, the MPLA invaded the country of the Hambukushu, and the Portuguese retaliated. They removed the greater part of the tribe to 'concentrada' in S.W. Angola; some four thousand escaped to Botswana.

This historical summary of the movements and settlements of the Hambukushu suggests that social anthropologists like Dr Larsen, and historians who research African tribal movements have something to contribute to the discussion of the classification of African languages.

It would seem that a language should be studied not only in the context of where its speakers are living to-day, but also in relation to where they have lived in the past. It needs to be studied in relation to all the languages with which its speakers have come in contact, in order to determine their influence upon the language, and its correct classification.

The writer has lived for eight years among a Hambukushu community which includes minorities of Ha-Gceriku, Ha-Herero, Ha-Kwangadi and Ha-Ndjamba. He has noticed that the Hambukushu use some words from the languages of these minority tribes alongside with words of identical meaning in their own language. Sometimes it would seem that the foreign words are used more than the Mbukushu words of the same meaning. Clearly these languages of minority tribes are exerting some influence upon Mbukushu as spoken in this area. But influence upon a language is one thing; classification with other languages as a linguistic group is another. Setswana has exerted quite an influence on Thimbukushu in Ngamiland and S.W. Africa; but it would never be classified with Thimbukushu. In orthography alone the differences are considerable.

Classification of African Languages is a matter for the trained linguist, but it may be respectfully suggested that social anthropologists and research historians of African tribal movements may provide him with valuable material in making his decisions. The writer has summarised briefly the settlements and movements of the one tribe with which he is concerned. The locations and movements of all the tribes in a possible linguistic group might well be studied before a definitive classification is made.

2. GRAMMATICAL ANALYSIS

A grammatical analysis of Mbukushu is now outlined under three headings: A. Phonology, B. Orthography, C. Morphology.

A. PHONOLOGY

A sample of words containing every sound in Mbukushu was selected, and two Hambukushu were asked to say these words. Their utterances were recorded on tape, and fed into a sonogram for visual analysis. The results were tabulated as follows:-

(N.B.: H = high tone; L = low tone).

Disyllabic Words: 16 HH + 64 HL = 80
10 LH + 2 LL = 12

In a group of common nasals, seventeen in number, the percentage ratio was 66 to 33.

Trisyllabic Words: 30 HL + 4 HL = 34
7 LH + 14 LL = 21

(N.B.: The Prefix, being low tone, has been omitted from the tabulation).

In a random selection of fifty trisyllabic words of the 7/8 noun class group, a ratio of 32 to 18 was recorded.

Further observations may be made.

1. The sonogram pictures show that the vowels usually carry the tone.
2. These pictures also show that 'm' and 'n' as single consonants, or nasalised or compounded, also sometimes act peculiarly, creating a rising or falling tone phenomenon. There are nine examples in the disyllabic group; 5 in the trisyllabic group; for example:

ny-[\]a-[/]tj[\]i = buffalo; mwá[/]nà[\] = child; [^]no[^]mbo = goat.

3. Scientific testing has revealed that out of twenty-three disyllabic and trisyllabic nasals, only in *m-bwa'* = dog does 'm' have the sonic force of a syllable. Further investigation might reveal other examples of this.
4. In words of low tonality, one syllable is usually prominent enough to justify a horizontal mark over the vowel. This indicates a slight stress which could be due to a long vowel with a falling tone, or to loudness in the utterance of a word, or to the distribution of consonants, or to some other causes requiring further investigation.

B. ORTHOGRAPHY

Mbukushu vowels and consonants are tabulated phonetically in the Introduction to the appended dictionary.²⁶ The rules governing the orthography of Mbukushu are found in the booklet "Mbukushu Orthography no.1."²⁷

1) Vowels:

- a. All five vowels are used. 'a' is low neutral; 'e' and 'o' are half-closed; 'i' and 'u' are closed.²⁸
- b. Semi-vowels 'w' and 'y': "w and y respectively must be written when u is followed by a vowel other than u, and i is followed by a vowel other than i".
 e.g. *diyuwa* = sun;day; *kwiya* = to come...
 "When this w or y is followed by a vowel, they constitute one syllable. This rule also applies to word stems and class prefixes".
 (ii) "w must be written when the infinitive prefix *ku-* is used with a verb stem beginning with a vowel:
 e.g. *kwimba* = to sing / *ku + imba*".
 (iii) class prefixes: "u and i in the class prefix followed by a stem beginning with a vowel, changes to w and y respectively".
 e.g. *rware* / *ru + are* = river; *dyoko* / *di + oko* = arm.

(iv) y is used for the sound previously represented by j:

e.g. yitondo = trees.

J is only used with words of foreign origin,

e.g. Josef;

also in digraphs dj and tj,

e.g. -djata = tread; mutjima = heart;

and in the trigraph ndj,

e.g. ndjato = bag.

c. gh must be written in forty-one examples given in the booklet

"Mbukushu Orthography":

e.g. -pagha = kill; -sheghenya = lighten; thighire = let go;

nghoghororo = tortoise; thughu = short pounder.

Exception: "y must be written in the following examples:

dikayi = bangle; dipayi = blanket".

'gh' must be written with nominal stems of which 'gh' forms the initial consonant:

e.g. mughodhi = rope.

But 'when two vowels are juxtaposed in words of foreign origin, no gh or y is written between such vowels":

e.g. kuAndara = to Andara.

2) Consonants:²⁸

- a. PLOSIVES The voiceless plosives p, t, $\underset{\wedge}{t}$ and k can all be combined with the semi-vowels w and y.
The voiceless click, $\underset{\wedge}{c}$, written as 'c' in Mbukushu, can also be nasalised.
The voiced plosives b, d can be combined with w and y; g with y only.
The voiced click, $\underset{\wedge}{g}$, written as 'gc' in Mbukushu, can also be nasalised.
- b. AFFRICATES The affricates are limited to the voiceless $t\int$ and voiced $d\int$.
They can both be combined with w, but only $d\int$ can be nasalised.

- c. FRICATIVES The voiceless f, θ, \int can be combined with w , but not h ; s is only used in words of foreign origin. Only h can be nasalised. Of the voiced fricatives, $v, \mathfrak{J}, \mathfrak{Z}$, only v can be combined with y , but v and \cdot can be nasalised.
- d. NASALS The voiced nasals m and n can be combined with w and y , but η with w only.
- e. ROLLED The voiced r can be combined with w .
- f. LATERAL The voiced l is only used with words of foreign origin.
- g. SEMI-VOWELS See 1)b. above, on page 16.
- 3) Indication of Tone: "Tone should only be indicated when the meaning of words could be confused":
 e.g. ngoma = snuff-box; ngoma = drum.

4) WORD DIVISION²⁹

1. "The following should be written CONJUNCTIVELY":

- (a) Na/no (and/with/also) in conjunction with nouns, proper names and kinship terms, absolute pronouns, demonstratives, possessive pronouns, adjectives.
- (b) Possessive concords in conjunction with nouns and pronouns.
- (c) pa- (according to) with the noun to which it is a preposition.
- (d) The associative prefix in conjunction with nouns and adjectives.
- (e) The locative particles pa/ku/mu in conjunction with nouns.

- (f) The infinitive concord ku- in conjunction with the verb and reflexive infinitive before the verb.
- (g) Kinship terms used with possessive pronoun stems should be written conjunctively.

2. "The following should be written DISJUNCTIVELY":

- (a) Subjectival and Objectival Concords, Auxiliary Verbs.
- (b) All conjunctives.
- (c) All adverbs.
- (d) All forms of negative.
- (e) All forms of interrogative.
- (f) Na/no when combining two sentences.

C. MORPHOLOGY

Morphology has been briefly mentioned in 1 B 4)c) as part of the necessary information that a dictionary should provide. In this study of the form of words we need to consider:

- 1) Reduplication
- 2) Derivative Word-forms
- 3) Singularisation and Pluralisation,
- 4) Affixation
- 5) Verbal Extensions
- 6) Concords
- 7) Verbal Tenses

1) Reduplication:

Reduplication is a particular feature of Mbukushu. It occurs particularly in adverbs, e.g. wanguwangu = quickly, quickly; idiomatic expressions, e.g. kashimbushimbu = a short cut; and in the Reduplicative Variant Form of Verbs, e.g. -púmurapúmura = strike again and again.

2) Derivative Word-Forms:

- a. When the noun of the person is derived from a verb, it usually takes the form mu + RAD + i. (RAD = radix, or verb root).

e.g. muraghuri = the one who commands.

Another form of the noun of the person is muka + -RAD + a,

e.g. muka kuraghura, which is synonymous with muraghuri.

- b. When the noun of the thing is derived from a verb, it usually takes the form thi/yi + RAD + a. Yi- is often preferred, but sometimes thi- should be used,

e.g. yirughāna = work; thirughāna = task.

- c. When the noun of the place is derived from a verb, it usually takes the form ma + RAD + ero,

e.g. mavumbekero = place of burial.

Abstract nouns are formed in the same way,

e.g. mathighero = excuse.

- d. When adjectives are derived from nouns, they usually take the form ghu + noun stem + i,

e.g. difúpa = jealousy / ghufúpi = 2.jealous(1.short).

(The derivative verb is -fúpa = be jealous).

- e. Some nouns and adjectives have identical forms. The adjectives only change their prefixes to agree with the nouns that they qualify.

e.g. ghunyányami = n.wisdom/a.wise/munu ghomunyányami = a wise person.

ghundondoro = n.skill/a.skilful/munu ghomundondoro = a skilful person.

Some nouns and adjectives are identical in form, and the adjectives do not change,

e.g. ngcámu = n.strength/a.strong.

- f. The derivation of verbs from adjectives and nouns is referred to under the Neuter and Potential Verbal Endings, numbers 16 and 17 in the Semantic Table in the Introduction to the appended dictionary.

3) Singularisation and Pluralisation

- a. Singularisation: There are two groups in classes 1 and 3 which have no plural; the first is the largest. It includes the names of countries and continents and place-names; certain seasons and times as kúfu = winter; peghúndha = to-morrow; certain natural phenomena, notably mvúra = rain; nyama = meat. The group in class 3 is miscellaneous and small; but it includes such common words as muvero = east; mutwekátji = midday; moyo = life.
- b. Pluralisation: Pluralisation is found in two classes, 6 and 10. Class 6 has not only the locative plural and liquids, but nouns derived from verbs, which the Hambukushu usually prefer to use in the plural form. Some of these words can be pluralised further using a double prefix mama-, meme-, e.g. makutúmeno / mamakutúmeno = closet. There is a small miscellaneous group in class 10 which cannot be further pluralised. This contains two important words:- ndhara = hunger; ngcámu = strength. But there is a very large miscellaneous group in class 10, which, while having a plural form, have also the plural 6(10). These include some things that are cultural or manufactured, some abstract ideas, plants and parts of the body, and slopes.

4) Affixation

a. Prefixes:

- i) Noun-Class Prefixes: Several points need to be noticed about Noun-Class Prefixes in Mbukushu:-

- aa) It is important to realise that prefixation is by no means determinative of noun-class. Classification of noun-classes is not straightforward.

The nasals in particular are most confusing. These belong usually to classes 9 and 10. Yet class 9 does not appear to exist by itself; class 10, while itself plural in form, has a plural 6(10).

Nyárá = hand, belongs to that class, but has an irregular plural, mayára; yet nyama = meat is class 1a with no plural at all; and nyime = lion, belongs to class 1a(9), with a double plural 2(9),10.

Again, mvi=grey hair is class 10 with no plural, but mvúra = rain is 1a with no plural;

mvu = hippo, like nyime, belongs to class 1a(9)/2(9),10; while mvashe = giraffe belongs to class 1a(9)/2(9),6(9).

The decisive factor in the classification of noun-classes is concordance; namely that the subjective concord, combined with the demonstrative pronoun, indicates most clearly the class to which a noun belongs. So it has been necessary to compile a Table of Mbukushu Noun-Classes with Prefixes and Examples, in addition to a Table of Class Prefixes, Concords, Possessive Stems and Emphatic Pronouns.

- bb) The plural to class 1 is normally that of class 2, which is prefixed by ha-, not ba-. So when Batswana refer to the Hambukushu as 'Mambukushu', they are degrading them to class 6.

But there are four variations to Class 1 which have to be grouped separately:-

1a/2, with varying prefixation or none, for names, relations, people of position, and peculiar people.

1a(9)/2(9),6(9), which has double plural, .2(9) is usually for a small group of two to five; 6(9) for many.

This is a large class of animals and birds, which also includes six types of people, as various as a policeman and healer, soldier and farmer, secretary and savage.

1a(9)/2(9),10 also has double plural, and is made up of big game, domestic animals, and even some insects.

1a(9)/6(9) is a large class of words derived from other languages placed here perhaps for phonetic reasons; it also includes some fish, plants and small creatures.

- cc) There is a small, miscellaneous group in class 3, which instead of the usual plural 10(4) have the plural 6 (3).
- dd) There appears to be no separate class 9 in the language, but there is a very large miscellaneous pluralised group in class 10, with plural 6 (10). There are three remarkable exceptions to this plural rule:-
 ndhirá/mayirá = way; ndhugho/mayugho = hut;
 nyára/mayára = hand.
- ee) The writer has only found two examples so far of the small group 15a/6 found in many Bantu languages.

ii) Diminutive and Augmentative Noun Prefixes:³⁰

- aa) The prefix ka-, class 12, can denote the diminutive of a noun with the prefix thi-, class 7,
 e.g. kanu/thinu = thing.
- bb) The prefix thi- can denote the diminutive of a noun with the prefix mu-. class 3,
 e.g. thimuku/muku = mouse.
- cc) The prefix di-, class 5, can denote the diminutive of a noun in class 1,
 e.g. dikúru dyoghuyero = a foolish old man / mukúru = old man.

iii) The prefix Muka- (see also 2)a,above, on page 20).

- aa) When muka- prefixes a noun, it denotes ownership,
 e.g. mukangombé = cattle-owner;
 mukadípya = owner of a field.
- bb) Muka literally means 'person'; its plural 'haka' means 'people',
 e.g. hakadighumbo = the people of the village.
- cc) But muka/haka are invariably found not by themselves, but prefixing nouns and verbs. (See 2)a. above, on page 20).

iv) The Compound Prefixation of Nouns does not occur in Mbukushu, as it does, for example, in Shona.

v) Infixation of Verbs. The Reciprocal and Reflexive Variant Forms of certain verbs³¹ have an infix ku- between the infinitive ku-, and the verbal radix + a,
e.g. kukughamba = to speak to each other;
kukuyogha = to wash oneself.

It is noteworthy that this reflexive variant form applies not only to people but to other living creatures;
e.g. to cast off its skin, of a snake = kukuyununa muyunungudhi.

vi) Prefixation of Verbs. Some verbs begin with a triple and even a quadruple ku-. As a high tone accent falls on one of these, they have been entered in full in the appended dictionary.

b. Suffixes:

i) Suffixation of Nouns is confined to the diminutive -ana, which may be added to nouns of any class,
e.g. mungáwana/mungághu = boy; mbwághana /mbwá = dog.

ii) Suffixation of Verbs. Single, double and even compound suffixation of the verbal root form is an outstanding characteristic of the Mbukushu language. Sixteen verbal extensions and two composite forms are classified in the Linguistic Table in the Introduction to the appended dictionary. Twenty are listed in the Semantic Table, exclusive of Variant Forms and Verbal Endings. In the Linguistic Table six extensions are apparently peculiar to Mbukushu, seven in the Semantic Table.

The Linguistic Table is based on the classification of the 1973 seminar of the Department of African Languages in the University of Cape Town.³² This is based on the Common or Ur-Bantu consonants of the extensions. The Mbukushu classification differs in the following respect from the U.C.T. seminar's table, of ten extensions.

- aa) The T or Contactive extension may exist; but, if so, it is rare.
- bb) The Y extension has two forms- $*k + ya = th$;
 $*r + ya = dh$.
- cc) The R extension replaces the L extension in Mbukushu.
- dd) The iTH, R, M and N extensions have intensive forms, involving the doubling of the basic consonant.
- ee) The extensions which are apparently peculiar to Mbukushu are:-
 11 -eh-; 12 v with -o/-u-; 13 -any-; 14 -wen-/-wer-; 15 -agh-;
 16 -otok-/, -uruk- / - utuk- / -iririk-.
- ff) Two composite forms 9/11 - angan-, 4/11 - akany- are listed, which correspond to the Extensive and Associative Composite Forms listed in the U.C.T. Seminar's table.

The semantic implications of the two tables of Verbal Extensions in the Introduction to the appended dictionary are considered in the final section of this thesis.

The extensions listed in the Semantic Table will now be compared grammatically with the extensions of seven other African languages which have been investigated by linguists:-

Kikuyu(Kik); Ila(Ila); Bobangi(Bob); Tswana(Tsw);
 Lozi(Lozi); Kwangari(Kw); and, Shona(Sh).

The sources for this comparison are:-³³

1. T.G. Benson's "Kikuyu - English Dictionary"
2. Smith & Dale's "Ila-Speaking Peoples of N. Rhodesia"
3. John Whitehead's "Bobangi Dictionary and Grammar"
4. Prof D.T. Cole's "Introduction to Tswana Grammar"
5. A. Jalla's "Lozi Dictionary"
6. Prof E.O.J. Westphal's "Kwangari - Index of
Lexical Types"
7. Fr M. Hannam's "Standard Shona Dictionary"

5) Verbal Extensions:COMPARATIVE ANALYSIS OF VERBAL EXTENSIONS

EXTENSION	MBUKUSHU	OTHER LANGUAGES
1. Passive	-iwa/-wa	-iwa/-wa. (Kw, -w-, but rare; Sh, -wa/-ewa)
2. Causative (a)	-edha	cp -edza, Sh.
	-eha	
	-etha	cp -esa, Kw, Sh.
(b)	-idha	
	-itha	cp -ithia, Kik; -isa, Bob, Tsw, Kw, Sh.
	-utha	
Locational Causative (c)	-edha	
3. Stative	-ama	-ama, Kik, Ila, Kw, Sh.
	-ana	
	-ara	-arara, Sh (extended stative).
4. Causative (a)	-eka	-eka, Ila, Kw.
(b)	-oka	
	-uka	-uka, Ila; -ula, Ila.
5. (a) Applied	-ena	-ena, Kw; -ina, Kw.
	-era	-era, Kw; -ura, Kw.
		cp -ela, Bob; -ila, Ila.
	-ura	
(b) Prepositional	-ana	
	-ena	
	-era	cp -ela, Bob; -ila, Ila.
	-ura	
(c) Locational	-ana	
	-ara	
	-ena	-ena, Kw; -ina, Kw.
	-era	-era, Kw; -ira, Kw, Sh.
		cp -ela, etsa, Tsw.
	-ona	
	-una	

EXTENSION	MBUKUSHU	OTHER LANGUAGES
6. Reciprocal(1)	-ana -dhana	-ana, Kik, Ila, Bob, Tsw, Lozi, Sh.
VARIANT FORM.		
7a, Reciprocal(2)	kuku-	cp i-, Kik, Lozi; di-, Ila.
b, Reflexive	kuku-	cp i-, Lozi; di-, Ila.
EXTENSION		
8. Reversive	NO RULE	N.B.: Reversives are noted in Kik, Ila, Tsw, Lozi, Sh.
9. Continual	-anga	-anga, Kik, Lozi.
VARIANT FORM.		
10. REDUPLICATIVE double verb stem.		N.B.: noted in Ila, Kw.
EXTENSION.		
11a, Repetitive	-aghara -aghera -aghura	-ag-, Kw; -aula, Ila.
b, Extensive Repetitive	-ora -ura	cp -aura, Sh.
12. Extensive Continual	-dhoka	cp -aka, Tsw; -auk-, Kw.
13. Continuative	-amena, -anena -arara, -enena. -erera, -umena	cp -ulula, Ila; -erera, -urura, Sh.
14a, Intensive	-amama, -arara -erera	-erera/-irira, Sh, Kik; -eseza, Lozi.
b, Emphatic	-ithitha -umuna, -ununa -uvura	-isisa, Lozi; -isha, Ila; -isa, Sh. -orora/-urura, Kik.
15. Perfective, or Completive	-erera -enena -umuna, -ununa -urura -orora	-erera, Kw; -irira, Kw. cp -elela, Tsw; -ilila, Ila. -enen-/-inin-, Kw. -urura, Kw. -orora, Kw.

EXTENSION	MBUKUSHU	OTHER LANGUAGES
VERBAL ENDING		
16. NEUTER and	-pa	-ega, Tsw; -oka/-uka, Kik; -id-, Kw.
17. POTENTIAL	-pa /-eka	-ega, Tsw; -eka/-ika, Sh, Kik, Ila.
(Extensions 18 to 24 are probably peculiar to Mbukushu).		
18. Associative	-anya	
19. Subjunctive	-ara	
20. Specified	-dhama /-dhana/-dhara/ -dhera / -dhora / -thana / -thara	
21. Decisive	-ura	
22. Rotative	-iririka / -otoka / -uruka / -utuka	
23. Purposive	-wena / -wera	
24. Conclusive	-dhoka.	

6) CONCORDS.

a. Subjectival Concordes

- i) Basic subjectival concords of the first and second persons singular and plural have, as a rule, three forms, one full, two contracted.

The choice of these three forms seems to depend on assonance, and the verb with which they are used:

e.g. nina tambura = I receive;
ni di pano (copulative = I am here;
na rughana = I work.

A full list of concords is tabulated in the Introduction to the appended dictionary.³⁴

- ii) Past subjectival concords of the first and second persons singular and plural have two forms; their use likewise depends on the sound and the verb with which they are used:

e.g. 'tu yéndire' = we went;
'twa monine' = we saw.

But the third persons singular and plural have only one form, 'gha' and 'ha' respectively.

- iii) In basic subjectival noun class concords, it may be noted in the above mentioned Table³⁵ that noun classes 1a,1 and 6 have the same form 'ghana'; 3 and 14 have the same form 'ghuna'; 13 has the same form as the full form of the first person plural, 'tuna'.

b. Objectival Concords.

- i) The objectival concords of the third person singular and the second person plural are the same - 'mu'. "To distinguish between them an acute accent should be written on the syllable which precedes the objectival concord of the second person plural,
e.g. murume ghaná mu mono = the man has seen you.
murume ghana mu mono = the man has seen him".³⁶
- ii) The first person singular and plural are the same as the first form of the past subjectival concord.
- iii) The second person singular is 'ku', cp 'ghu', being the first form of the past subjectival concord.
- iv) The third person plural is 'wa' cp 'ha', being the form of the past subjectival concord.

c. Adjectival Concords.

Noun Classes 1a,1,3,6 and 14 have the same adjectival concord 'gho'.

4 and 10 have the same adjectival concord 'dho'.

2, with its class prefix 'ha', has the adjectival concord 'ho'.

13, with its class prefix tu-/tw-, has the adjectival concord 'to'.

7) VERBAL TENSES.³⁷

(SC = Subjectival Concord; RAD = radix, verb root; Inf = Infinitive).

TENSE	FORMULA	EXAMPLE
1. <u>Present.</u>	SC na ku RAD a(i,o)	The boy herds cattle = mungaghu ghana kuditha ngombe.
(a) Simple (What happens at the moment)		
(b) Progressive	INF SC na INF	The boy is herding cattle = mungaghu kuditha ghana kuditha ngombe.
(c) Immediate Past	SC na RAD a(i,o)	The boy has been herding cattle(to-day); mungaghu ghana ditha ngombe
2. <u>Future.</u>		
(a) Immediate	[^] nanyi SC RAD e	The boy will herd cattle (to-day) = mungaghu [^] nanyi gha dithe ngombe.
(b) Progressive (from to-morrow onwards)	[^] nanyi SC ku RAD e	The boy will herd cattle = mungaghu [^] nanyi gha kudithe ngombe.
(c) Unspecified	mbo SC na RAD a	The boy will herd cattle = mungaghu mbo ghana ditha ngombe.
(d) Conditional (depending on future event)	SC RAD e	When I go away, the boy will herd cattle = ghopa nina yende, mungaghu gha dithe ngombe.
3. <u>Perfect</u> (yesterday, last night, or day before)	nga(SC) RAD a(i,o,u) (SC 'gha' omitted after 'nga').	The boy has herded cattle= mungaghu nga (gha) dithi ngombe.
<u>Past</u> (before the day before yesterday)	SC A RAD ire/ine	The boy herded cattle = mungaghu gha dithire ngombe.

TENSE	FORMULA	EXAMPLE
4. <u>Negative.</u>		
Present	kadi/mbadi SC na INF	The boy is not herding cattle = mungaghu mbadi ghana kuditha ngombe.
Future	kadi/mbadi sho SC RAD e	The boy will not herd cattle = mungaghu mbadi sho gha dithe ngombe.
Perfect	kadi/mbadi nga(SC)RADa(i,o,u)	The boy has not herded cattle = mungaghu mbadi nga dithi ngombe.
Past	kadi/mbadi SCa RAD ire/ine	The boy did not herd cattle = mungaghu mbadi gha dithire ngombe.

5. Relative. Relative clauses are formed by the Relative Pronouns listed in the Table of Class Prefixes in the Introduction to the Dictionary, with Indicative forms of the verb.

e.g. The boy herds cattle which his father owns =
mungaghu ghana ditha ngombe dhodhi gha muna wihe.

Indirect Relative:

(the cattle) which he herds = (ngombe) dhodhi ghana ditha.
the cattle which he herds are straying = ngombe dhodhi ghana ditha
kuteringana dhina kuteringana.

6. Conditional. Conditional clauses are formed by ngo/ngeshi with Indicative Verb forms. The various conditional possibilities are set out in the dictionary under entry 'IF'.

- (a) The present conditional in its simplest form is introduced by ngeshi; a more complicated form has 'ngo' governing the conditional clause, followed by 'ngo' with the main clause.
- (b) The simple future conditional is introduced by 'ngeshi(ngo)'; more complicated forms have 'ngeshi' or 'ngeshi ngo' followed by [^]nanyi.
- (c) When the negative is implied, 'ngeshi/ngo' are followed by 'ngo [^]nanyi'. When a past conditional negative is implied in a conditional clause, 'ngo' is followed by 'ngo'.

7. Participial.

Progressive	SC ko/ka INF + pos.form.	He is herding there = gha ka kuditha.
Negative		He is not herding there = mbadi gha ka kuditha.

8. Subjunctive. The subjunctive is expressed by 'eshi' = that, so that, with SC RAD e; in the negative form kadi/mbadi are interposed between 'eshi' and SC.

9. Imperative. The imperative is expressed by the formula SC RAD e.
e.g. let him herd cattle = mu dithe ngombe.

The negative is formed by changing the final vowel 'e' to 'a'.
e.g. let him not herd cattle = mu ditha ngombe.

10. Copulative. The Copulative may be formed in two ways:-

- (a) 'ne' linking SC with descriptive noun,
e.g. ni ne munu = I am a person.
- (b) 'di' linking SC with locative,
e.g. ni di pano = I am here.

3. SEMANTIC DISCRIMINATION.

A. CONFUSION OF WORDS.

When visitors to foreign countries try to speak the language of the people, they invariably make mistakes. The furious reaction of the French taxi-driver to being called 'cochon' is proverbial. A Mumbukushu village doctor (ngángá) would hardly be pleased if he was called 'nānga' (guinea-fowl), especially as 'yikorwa yonānga' means 'small-pox'!

Besides syllabic confusion of similar words, it is easy to use the right word, but to accent it in the wrong place. The Archbishop of Canterbury would hardly care to be addressed as primāte (that is, member of the highest order of mammals) instead of primate. The African village doctor (ngángá) must not be called ngānga, which means 'a kind of reed used for making doorway hangings'. Again, if you ordered, 'shīke ngóma', in Mbukushu, a man would wonder how he was to make cream in a snuff-box; whereas what you meant to say was shíke ngomá, meaning 'beat the drum'!

The most common source of confusion is to use words of similar meaning in the source language, but of different application in the target language. The offender will often protest in surprise: "But I looked it up in the dictionary!" Perhaps he lacked care or intelligence in consulting the dictionary. Or the dictionary may not have been clearly arranged, or have given inadequate information. Supposing I want to say in Mbukushu, "the man runs"; and the dictionary gives me three words without explanation: -dhondoka, -hātaghura, -davisha. I am not to know why my audience will laugh if I say 'murume ghana davisha', or why someone will feel insulted if I say, 'murume gha hātaghura'. In the first instance I am saying, 'the man runs like a hippo'; in the second, 'he runs like a baboon'!

Eugene Nida³⁸ lists ten common uses of the English verb 'run' in four different sets of meanings. The compiler has listed thirty common uses of the verb 'run', which require no less than twenty-seven different Mbukushu verbs. His lexical entry 'RUN' covers two full pages, with five main divisions and sixteen sub-divisions. The arrangement had to

be clearly thought out, and to provide the necessary information for the correct use of each Mbukushu word. The compilation of a dictionary is an exercise in semantic discrimination.

B. SEMANTIC IMPLICATIONS OF METHOD USED
TO GATHER LEXICAL INFORMATION.

- (a) It may be asked why the entry RUN is so involved. The Concise Oxford Dictionary shows that RUN is used with a large number of adverbs and prepositions, and has a number of idiomatic uses. A selected number of these glosses appear in the appended dictionary. But a number of Mbukushu glosses are also found in the first two sections. People and animals do not run in the same way. Entry is made of eight different ways of how people run, of nine different ways in which they run fast. (Three of these are idiomatic Mbukushu expressions). Entry is made of six different ways in which animals run and birds on the ground. Besides the baboon and hippo which have been already mentioned, monkeys and pigs, wildebeest, ostriches and birds on the ground all run in different ways. Each has a different Mbukushu word to describe their way of running.

All this reflects the acute observation of the Hambukushu people. This is illustrated further under G (4) 'Criterial Semantic Features'.

- (b) Inquiry into the different uses of the verb RUN induced a 'feed-back' of Mbukushu glosses into this dictionary entry. This occurred only in the first two sections of the entry, RUN.

But in the case of the entry DISAPPEAR, the Mbukushu feed-back was so great that it virtually became a 'take-over'. This is seen most clearly when the form of the Entry is outlined diagrammatically:-

--clouds { Mb (1) clouds from sky
 { Mb (2) rain-clouds
 (1)Nature --darkness { Mb (1) darkness at dawn
 { Mb (2) mist and vapour
 --sun below horizon
 --fade, of flowers
 DISAPPEAR -- (2) of Person -- { Mb (1) abscond
 { Mb (2) seen one moment;
 gone the next
 { Mb (3) gradually disappear
 { Mb (4) disappear, of person,
 when suddenly meets
 wild animal
 --of object in distance- (Mb (1) idiomatic expression
 (3) of Things -- of object
 through forgetfulness- (Mb (2) id. expression -
 of object cooking,
 cp APRIL.
 --of object, carried
 away by current-- (Mb KUDYANGEDHA
 -- (red. of stem of Mb word = 1., of hole;
 (2. fill 3; 3. point (2) 2).

N.B.: (1) Under (3) Thing : to disappear, 'of object through forgetfulness,' Mb(Mbukushu) (2), the idiomatic expression PERE means to put an object on the fire and forget about it. Then, when one remembers it, no trace of it is to be found.

cp APRIL means that the compiler was reminded of the significance of the Mbukushu word for 'April', THINARUNGUNA. This means that when one roasts mealies in this month of the year, it does not matter if the food gets burnt, because there is so much food available.

N.B.: (2) (3) THING, disappear of 'object carried away by current' - KUDYANGEDHA.

The mention of this word led the informant to mention the reduplicated form of the word KUDYADYANGEDHA and its multiple meaning. The primary meaning:

- i) is to DISAPPEAR of a hole as it is completely filled in, with the secondary meaning,
 - ii) to be found under entry FILL 3; and its tertiary meaning
 - iii) , under POINT (2) 2.
- (c) The entry DISAPPEAR ends with a multiple meaning in the Target-Language. Multiple meanings can be as many as four for any given T-L word; in homographic pairs the number can be doubled. An outstanding example of this is the word -SHINGA / -SHINGA:-

-SHINGA:

- 1. DRIVE 3, (a) drive animals forward from a place, syn -HAGHA.
(b) drive animals fast, syn.-HAGHA.
- 2. CHARGE(2)2 give strict orders.
- 3.. DETER discourage person from doing, by forcibly restraining them.

-SHINGA:

- 1. REBUKE 1 rebuke people, e.g. for thoughtlessness;
or for doing something
wrong, syn.-SHWENEKA.
- 2. STOP 3 stop children playing mischievously.
- 3. HINDER 2 (a) detain person from entering;
(b) stand in another person's way.
- 4. EMBALM preserve a corpse from decay with spices.

C. APPRECIATION OF THE TARGET LANGUAGE.

Word for word equivalence in lexical entries is not enough. This could lead to an undue subordination of the target language to the source language as the speech of a living people. It will reflect their interests, so that some entries will be much fuller and richer than an entry in an English dictionary. A people who measure time by the movements of the sun develop a rich vocabulary to describe these movements, as entries DAWN,

DAY and SUN clearly show. Beer-brewing and porridge, cattle and milking, fishing and trapping, work and sleep are interests which provide much material for lexical entries.

An unsophisticated river people think differently to those who belong to a highly developed modern society. They draw no distinction between 'face' and 'forehead'; the same word 'rupára' does duty for both. The 'temples' are simply 'the sides of the face'. They have no simple way of describing 'the palm' of the hand. 'Nyára' means 1.hand,2.palm. 'Dikándeke' means 1.thumb,2.palm. 'Rukudhi' means 'palm' only when it is used with the verb '-ngcambura', meaning 'to slap with the palm of the hand'. 'Rukudhi' cannot be used by itself.

It might be said that words like 'forehead, temples, palm' are terms developed by a more sophisticated anatomy. On the other hand, the Hambukushu express themselves better sometimes than educated people, and laugh at some English idiomatic expressions. They do not say 'the tap runs', but 'water goes out of the tap'; they do not say, 'her eyes ran with tears', but 'her eyes kept on leaking tears'. Some of their own idiomatic expressions are canny. Instead of the English idiom 'he turned a blind eye', they say, 'he caused the eye to jump'.

D. EQUIVALENCE.

A dictionary must do justice to the qualities of the target language, but it must proceed from the base of equivalence, as Zgusta³⁹ points out in his "Manual of Lexicography". The entry should give, whenever possible, the word for word equivalence between the word in the S-L and the word in the T-L, "an equivalent ready for insertion in a sentence", e.g. ghukúru = 1.old;2.great,large.

But there are different concepts and connotations of 'old'. Some are explanatory, e.g. old = worn out by long use = thidjovodjovo; others are descriptive, e.g. of people who have lived long = kukurupara.

E. POLYSEMY.

It will have been noticed that 'ghukúru' (in D above), and 'nyára, dikándeke' (in C above) have two meanings respectively. Many words have two, three, or even four meanings in Mbukushu, as '-shinga' (in B above). Zgusta calls this Polysemy.⁴⁰

A bilingual dictionary has to express this in the S-L, as well as in the T-L. So, in the appended dictionary, the same English word may have several entries which are numbered in brackets after the entry word. For example, LIGHT has five entries:-

- (1) n. brightness in which one can see.
- (2) n. light in colour; opp. to dark.
- (3) vt & i. 1.burn.2.enable to see.
- (4) a. of little weight, not heavy.
- (5) vt & i. alight from,upon.

At the same time, multiple meanings of Mbukushu words are entered in the principal entries to facilitate easy cross-reference. The words in brackets denote the entries where the other meanings may be found rather than the actual meanings. The number 1 is put against the dominant sense; the next common meaning may be numbered 2 and so on.

An interesting example of this is afforded by the verb -PÍNGA, and its Reciprocal Variant Form, -PÍNGADHANA, whose suffix may be peculiar to Mbukushu. The meaning of these words may be tabulated as follows:-

MBUKUSHU WORD	MULTIPLE MEANINGS	ENTRY OF MEANING
-PÍNGA	1. take another's place in work	REPLACE
	2. lawfully take another's property	INHERIT
-PÍNGADHANA	1. interchange of two people on a job	ALTERNATE
	2. fail to meet, because coming by different ways	MEET
	3. cross, of messages, letters	CROSS (2)

Besides the dominant sense of polysemous words,⁴¹ there is the transferred sense and the specialised sense.⁴²

The transferred sense is used by all speakers of the language; it is numbered 2, in contrast to the dominant sense,

1. e.g. MUGHURO = 1.price;2.business. cp THINYUNYI = bird;
2. DINYUNYI = aeroplane (lit. 'great bird').

The specialised sense is only used by certain groups of people; e.g. KUTWI = 1.ear;2.page, of a book. (This is only used by literate Hambukushu).

F. HOMOGRAPHS.

There are a number of Mbukushu pairs of words which Zgusta describes as Homographs.⁴³ In these "the written forms are identical but the pronunciation is different". Two pairs were given in A. above:-
 NGOMA = snuff-box/NGOMÁ = drum; -SHIKA = make cream/-SHIKA = beat drum.
 Other examples are DÍKO = tribe/DIKÓ = long distance;
 THITÁPA = gift/THITĀPA = feast.

G. SYNONYMS.

Zgusta defines 'Synonyms'⁴⁴ as "words with different forms but identical meaning". He points out that absolute synonyms, in which all the meanings that the words can bear are identical, are very rare. Most Synonyms are 'Near-Synonyms'; they are "different in at least one of the three basic components of meaning".

- (1) Some have the same designation and connotation but a different application: e.g. there are three words for 'back yard' in Mbukushu, two of which have secondary meanings. They may be tabulated as follows:-

S-L	GLOSS	T-L	SECOND MEANING
BACK YARD	-of common man	1. MARIVERA	(2. eaves)
	-of headman	1. MUKUNDA	(2. district)
	-of chief	MAROMBE	

These three words may apply to a difference of status, or to a difference of function, in the use to which the yards are put, which are different in each case.

- (2) Some near-synonyms differ in connotation: e.g. 'prostitute' would be translated as 'munu ghoruhonda' = an adulterous person. It could also be translated as 'thinu vene'. But this is a term of contempt. The literal meaning is 'only a thing'; and the term could equally describe a 'worthless fellow'.
- (3) Some near-synonyms differ in designation: They may be numerous and the differences between them very slight. They form semantic clusters; cross-referencing has been used in the appended dictionary to link such groups together.
- (4) Criterial Semantic Features: Besides the entry of near-synonyms, a particular feature of verbal entries are the number of variations in the doing of an action, and of things used in the doing.
- For example, twenty different ways of 'carrying' are listed in the appended dictionary, and eleven things that are carried. There are several pages on different ways of going; the same phenomenon may be found under words like 'break, cut, speak, talk, push and pull'. Zgusta describes these as Criterial Semantic Features.⁴⁵
- (5) Glosses: While word for word equivalence forms the base of a lexical entry, definite glosses are needed to delimit the significant meaning of the word in the T-L, to show in which way it applies.

For example, the word for word equivalent of STAND is KWIMANA. In the double-page entry under STAND, the word -RUMBWACHARA is glossed as 'stand in the darkness for a long time', thus delimiting its meaning.

- (6) Examples: Glosses are somewhat abstract in description, but short, apposite sentences or phrases can illustrate the meaning of words in a more concrete way.

e.g. DO 3, w.prep. do with = concern. -TENDA no. e.g. this paper has to do with the accounts = mbapira dhi dha roghera kutenda nomambapira ghomanyinga.

e.g. DIVIDE 6, pass. be divided against, of people. KUKUYAKUNUTHA.

e.g. a household divided against itself = hakadirapa ho ha kukuyakunutha hathinda.

4. VERBAL EXTENSIONS.

In 2 C 4) b ii, the Linguistic Table of Verbal Extensions was considered in relation to common or Ur-Bantu consonants.

Its semantic significance is derived from a classification of the vowels - in that 'u/o are reversive extensions, 'a' stative or static, and i/e directive, outgoing or externalising", according to the U.C.T. 1973 Seminar.

In 2 C 5), a grammatical analysis was made of Mbukushu verbal extensions listed in the Semantic Table as compared with those of seven other languages.

Now that comparison has to be taken a stage further, by considering the semantic implications of these verbal extensions. (Although this is really a part of 3. SEMANTIC DISCRIMINATION, it requires a section of its own).

The subject may be divided into five parts:-

- A. Verbal Extensions common to other African languages.
- B. The Neuter and Potential Verbal Endings.
- C. Verbal Extensions that may be peculiar to Mbukushu.
- D. Verb Forms with an Extension ending but no root form.
- E. Double and Compound Extensions.

A. COMMON VERBAL EXTENSIONS.

There are six verbal extensions common among African languages:- the Passive, Causative, Stative, Applied or Prepositional, Reciprocal and Reversive.

To these we may add a second group of four extensions, which are found among one or more of the seven languages that have been compared with those in Mbukushu:-

Frequentative or Habitual, Repetitive, Intensive, and Perfective or Comulative.

These two groups will now be treated separately; the extensions are numbered as they are tabulated in the Grammatical Analysis in 2 C 5) and Semantic Table of Verbal Extensions that appears in the Introduction to the appended dictionary. The suffixes have been compared with those of seven other languages in the Grammatical Analysis; now each extension requires definition and examples.

FIRST GROUP

1. PASSIVE. Definition(Def.): action done to the subject of the verbal concord.

e.g. -tápa = give / -tápiwa = be given.

kwirā = lose one's way / kwirwā = be lost.

N.B.: The Passive is not usual in Mbukushu. A Passive sentence in English would be turned round into the Active in translation.

2. CAUSATIVE. Def: "Action caused by the object, or action by the object or another object".⁴⁶ Two suffixes peculiar to Mbukushu are:-

-eha, e.g. -háka = love / -hákeha = attract love.

-utha, e.g. -húka = return / -hútha = 1. give, pay, send back;
2. reply.

N.B.: The Causative extension has been divided into three parts: the Causative, the Locational Causative, and the Causative Stative(4).

LOCATIONAL CAUSATIVE. Def: the subject is caused to go to a place for an event to occur.

e.g. kúshwa = go to a place where one receives an unexpected gift.

-shwēdha = cause to go to a place where one dies unexpectedly.

N.B.: This form of the Causative may be peculiar to Mbukushu.

3. STATIVE. Def: "being in a certain position".⁴⁷

The common suffix is -ama; -ana is peculiar to Mbukushu.

e.g. -théta = twist / -thétana = twist spirally, of a kudu's horns.

4. CAUSATIVE STATIVE. Def: causing people/things to be in a certain state.

e.g. -eka. -péta = bend / -péteka = cause to be bent.

-oka. -tjora = break / -tjoka = cause to be broken.

-uka. -yákununa = separate / -yákunuka = cause to become separated.

N.B.: Smith & Dale note that it is "different from the passive, because the action is not referred to the agent; it refers to the condition simply".⁴⁸

5. APPLIED or PREPOSITIONAL. This extension has been divided into three:-

(a) Applied, (b) Prepositional, (c) Locational Applied.

(a) Applied: Def: action done on behalf of others or oneself.

-ena e.g. -rughāna = work / -rughanēna = work for another.

-era e.g. -tenda = do / -tendera = serve another.

(b) Prepositional: Def: action directed towards or away from another person, place, object.

-ana e.g. -ragha = send message / -raghana = send message by special messenger.

-era e.g. kwitha = call / kwithera = appeal to.

-ura e.g. -púma = stamp foot / -púmura = strike person, animal.

(c) Locational Applied: Def: action occurring at a place.

Four suffixes appear to be peculiar to Mbukushu:-

-ana e.g. -hóya = drip / -hóyangana = fall in light
drops, of rain.

-ara e.g. -mona = see / -monara = become visible, of
sun after eclipse.

-ona e.g. -pona = roast / -ponona = re-roast meat not
cooked enough.

-una e.g. -kúna = sow / -kúnuna = sow again.

6. RECIPROCAL (1). N.B.: The Reciprocal and Reflexive Variant Forms have semantic kinship with the Reciprocal Extension, so they are placed directly after it.

Def: mutual collective action.

-ana e.g. kukukóngá = collect in crowd / kukukóngana = go
together, of crowd.

-dhana e.g. -nunga = join / -nungadhana = decide, as a group,
to do.

N.B.: Six of the seven languages have the suffix -ana;
only Mbukushu has the suffix -dhana.

VARIANT FORMS.

7a RECIPROCAL (2) Def: mutual action by two to five people towards each other.

kuku- e.g. -ghamba = speak / kukughamba = speak with
each other.

e.g. -gwarura = dig in nails when fighting
/ kukugwarura = dig nails
into each other.

7b REFLEXIVE VARIANT FORM Def: doing things to or of oneself.

kuku- e.g. -yogha = wash / kukuyogha = wash oneself.

EXTENSIONS continued.

8. REVERSIVE. Def: "the action of a simple stem reversed or undone".⁴⁹

This is an extension involving pairs of words.

Kikuyu, Ila, Setswana, Lozi and Shona have the reversive extension.

After examining a good number of Mbukushu reversive pairs of verbs, the conclusion has been reached that no rule as to their formation can be made in Mbukushu.

Prof Cole and Fr Hannam give rules governing the formation of the reversive extension in Tswana and Shona respectively. But Fr Hannam gives two examples which do not appear to be true reversive pairs of verbs:-

-anura Revers.ext of R containing 'a':

e.g. -kaka = straighten,tighten,stretch / -kakanura = unfasten.

-unura Revers.ext of R containing 'u':

e.g. -tuta = carry,of transport / -tutunura = offload.

Surely the true reversive of 'unfasten' is 'fasten', and 'load' of 'offload'.

SECOND GROUP.

9. CONTINUAL (often called Frequentative or Habitual).

Def: keep on doing something for a period, or regularly.

-anga e.g. -runga = interrupt / -runga = keep on interrupting.

e.g. -y'enda = go / -y'endanga = keep on going, go daily.

VARIANT FORM

10. REDUPLICATIVE, involving the doubling of the verbal stem.

(This is included here, because of its semantic kinship to the 9th and 11th extensions).

Def: action done again and again.

e.g. -p'umura = strike / -p'umurap'umura = strike again and again.

N.B.: The Reduplicative Variant Form occurs also in Ila,

Lozi and Kwangari. Prof Westphal gives two Kwangari examples, one of which is identical with the Mbukushu word; the other is the same, except for the difference of one consonant.

e.g. -monamona = see often (identical);

e.g. -limalima = cultivate often, cp Mbukushu, -dímadíma.

EXTENSIONS continued.

11a REPETITIVE. Def: repetition of the action for a short time.

Ila, Lozi and Kwangari share this extension with Mbukushu. One Ila example is close to the Mbukushu word:-

-ula e.g. -amba = say (as in Mbuk) / -ambaula = keep on saying

(-ghambaghura in Mbukushu).

The Kwangari example is identical with the Mbukushu word:

-aghur- e.g. -teta = chop / -tetaghura = chop up, chop to pieces.

11b EXTENSIVE REPETITIVE. Def: "action projected into space".⁵⁰

This only occurs in Shona and Mbukushu. Fr Hannam calls it the "Extensive extension"; he gives as an example:-

-aura e.g. -tanha = pluck fruit, vegetables, leaves / -tanhaura = pluck groundnuts.

Perhaps a better example could be found, as the root verb also appears to describe "action projected into space".

A clearer example can be given in Mbukushu:-

-ora e.g. -koka = pull / -kokora = pluck fruit from tree.

12. EXTENSIVE CONTINUAL. Def: action continues to happen for a time.

Prof Cole in his "Introduction to Tswana Grammar" calls this the "Extensive extension". (cp Fr Hannam's extension of the same name quoted in 11b above). He defines this as "the action of the simple stem carried out extensively, intensively forcefully, sometimes repeatedly".⁵¹

(This is close in meaning to 14, the Intensive Extension listed below). Prof Cole gives as examples:- remeka = hack to pieces; -botsaka = question extensively. Prof Westphal's example from Kwangari is -putuka = bruise / -putauka = become bruised all over.

In contrast, the Mbukushu suffix is -dhoka:-

e.g. kwandura = make noise of one slap / kwandadhoka =
continue to make noise of slapping.

13. CONTINUATIVE. Def: action continues to happen indefinitely.

This and the next two extensions go closely together. They all have a double suffixation, described in the Linguistic Table as an Intensive Form of the M, R or N extensions. Context will generally determine to which of this group of three extensions a particular verb-form belongs. All seven languages except Bobangi have either Intensive or Perfective (Completive) extensions. It has been felt necessary to distinguish this "Continuative" extension from "the Continual" extension of no. 9. This category has parallels only in Ila and Shona, and the suffixation is different. Mbukushu has six forms; as these are unparalleled in either Ila or Shona, an example of each is given.

- amena e.g. -thígha = leave / -thíghamena = lie facing
the sun.
- anena e.g. -thíma = smoke / -thímanena = smoulder.
- arara e.g. -kámbeka = put in high place / -kámbarara =
float on surface of river.
- enena e.g. -yuma = ,of mole, push up earth from beneath
the surface / -yumenena = swarm,
e.g. of flies, maggots.
- erera e.g. -yota = warm oneself by fire / -yoterera =
warm oneself in sun.
- umena e.g. -púnga = blow, of wind / -púngumena = sweep
away objects near river bank
-of current.

14a INTENSIVE. Def: "do forcibly, heartily, lengthily".⁵²

This extension is found in Ila, Kikuyu, Lozi and Shona.

Kikuyu, Shona and Mbukushu have one suffix in common: -erera; otherwise the suffixation varies in all the languages mentioned.

The two suffixes peculiar to Mbukushu are:-

-amama e.g. -nyíka = lie very ill / -nyíkamama = tell tiresome person to sit down.

-arara e.g. -tandara = lie stiff, as dead animal / -tandarara = sit with straight outstretched legs.

14b EMPHATIC INTENSIVE. Def: emphasis on intensity of action done.

The suffixation -isisa in Lozi and Shona is close to the Mbukushu -ithitha. In addition, Mbukushu has three suffixes of its own.

-umuna e.g. -ghanda = curse a person / -ghandumuna = 1. kill animal by poison, weapon;
2. roll person on ground.

-ununa e.g. -randa = follow / -randununa = follow and slaughter.

-uvura e.g. -ranga = hinder in work by talk / -ranguvura = speak so fast as to be unintelligible.

15. PERFECTIVE or COMPLETIVE. Def: the carrying of the action to completion.

This extension is found in Ila, Tswana, Kwangari and Mbukushu.

Prof Westphal gives four examples in Kwangari, three of which are identical with those in Mbukushu; the remaining one differs only in one repeated vowel.

-monenena = see perfectly; -rongerera = unpack;

-pirurura = turn a thing round the way that it was facing;

-firirira = be completely dead. (cp Mbuk. -fererera).

But Mbukushu has two more suffixes of its own:-

-ununa e.g. -dhima = die out, of fire / -dhimununa = put off time of starting journey.

-urura e.g. -tenda = do / -tendurura = undo work done and start again.

B. NEUTER and POTENTIAL VERBAL ENDINGS (16,17).

Kikuyu, Ila, Setswana, Kwangari and Shona have Neuter and/or Potential Extensions. Neuter is the more usual term, but it may be best to divide them, as Prof Cole and Fr Hannam give contrasting definitions. Prof Cole defines the Neuter extension as when "the Subject enters into or is in some state of condition, without indicating the agent of the action, the thing which brings about that state".⁵³ He gives as an example, -roba = break / -robega = become broken, be breakable. (It may be noted that 'become broken' is semantically Neuter; 'be breakable' is semantically Potential).

Fr Hannam says that "the Neuter or Potential extension indicates intransitive states, actions easily done, or pleasant to do, or that get or become done".⁵⁴ The examples that he gives are semantically Potential:

-ika e.g. -nzwa = 1.perceive, 2.understand / -nzwika = be audible.
-eka e.g. -gona = be able for / -goneka = be possible.

(This second example is practically the same as the Mbukushu kona/koneka).

Smith & Dale's examples from Ila are semantically Potential; Kikuyu has both, for Benson speaks of -ika/-eka as Stative Potential suffixes; -uka/-oka as Neuter. Prof Westphal gives one Kwangari example which is semantically Neuter: -id- e.g. -zwida = fill up / -zura = become full.

It will be noted, that with the exception of Kwangari, the suffixation in the languages quoted is the same as the Causative Extension(4). Mbukushu has a different suffix, -pa for both Neuter and Potential Extensions.

16. NEUTER. Def: begin to become in a certain state.

-pa e.g. -rema = paralyse / -remupa = become burdened,
with duties.

17. POTENTIAL. Def: having the capacity to do.

-pa e.g. -ranga = stop work to talk / -rangapa = 1.be very
late in starting work;
2.read and write well.

The number of extended verb-forms in each group is small. But there are a large number of verb-forms with the ending -pa, which are derived from adjectives or nouns. That is why these two groups have been described as verbal endings rather than extensions. The verb-forms derived from adjectives or nouns are either semantically Neuter or Potential.

e.g. 16. NEUTER -pa ghumbíru,a = small / -mbírupa =
become small.

17. POTENTIAL -pa ngcámu,a/n = strong, strength /
-ngcámupa = have power to do, be
able to do.

C. VERBAL EXTENSIONS THAT MAY BE PECULIAR TO MBUKUSHU.

18. ASSOCIATIVE. Def: (a) doing things together.

-anya e.g. -háka = like / -hákanya = of children, snatch
remains of food from common dish.

(b) dealing with things, animals together.

-anya e.g. -vunga = mix / -vunganya = mix together:
1. two herds of cattle;
2. two kinds of meat;
3. two kinds of food, e.g. beans,
porridge.

19. SUBJECTIVE. Def: action affecting the feelings.

-ara e.g. -yúva = hear, obey / -yúvara = 1. relate, tell what is
true to others; 2. inspire trust;
3. of darkness, that may be felt.

-mwagha = scatter / -mwaghara = abash (lit. 'scatter
in body').

(This group is not large; at this stage it may be described as a provisional category, requiring further investigation).

20. SPECIFIED. Def: specified form of general action.

This is a large and interesting group, with eight forms of suffixation.

- dhama -nyíka = lie very ill / -nyíkadhama = lie at the point of death.
- dhana -nyanda = suffer / -nyandadhana = unable to sleep, of sufferer.
- dhara -gháyara = think / -gháyadhara = 1.be puzzled as to which road to take; 2.calculate.
- dhera -hánga = replace person in job / -hángadhera = replace borrowed object that has been lost by another.
- dhora -ponga = assemble together in a place / -pongodhora = assemble together, of village elders, to hear complaint of one person against another.
- dhura -kwípura = question / kwípudhura = be curious, inquisitive.
- thana -túka = curse, blaspheme / -túkathana = 1.curse person continuously; 2.desecrate holy place.
- thara -nyanda = suffer / -nyandathara = lie flat from exhaustion.

21. DECISIVE. Def: expressing strong action.

- ura -ragha = send message by passer-by / -raghura = command a servant.
- puta = remove tree bark before adzing / -putura = strip all the trees in a field or garden of leaves.

(Like 19, this is a small group, requiring further investigation).

22. ROTATIVE. Def: action of ongoing, roundabout kind.

This is a small but interesting group with four suffixes.

-iririka kú[´]pwa=come to an end / -pwí[´]ririka = take a long
time to complete a job.

-otoka -ghonyona = stretch / -ghonyotoka = 1.untwist;
2.stretch out in all
directions.

-uruka -dhí[´]nga = be around in a circle / -dhí[´]nguruka = go
round once in a circle.

-utuka -thí[´]ma = smoke / -thí[´]mutuka = rise up in rings
of smoke.

23. PURPOSIVE. Def: action of purpose directed towards people, things,
places. This is a large group; the usual suffix is -wera,
but -wena also occurs.

-wena -harumuna = find bush food growing plentifully
under soil near one's hut /
-harumwena = put things found in the ground into
a receptacle.

-wera -tongora = tell / -tongwera = tell to someone.
-pangura = judge / -pangwera = condemn to death.

24. CONCLUSIVE. Def: action brought to a conclusive state.

There are quite a number of verb-forms in this group, which
has one suffix: -dheka.

-dheka -thí[´]ndeka = push / -thí[´]ndadheka = push right out,
excommunicate.
-pé[´]ta = bend / -pé[´]tadheka = bend into ridges,
corrugate.

D. VERB-FORMS, with an EXTENSION ENDING BUT NO ROOT.

There are many Mbukushu verbs which have extension endings but no deriva-
tive verbal roots. In these cases, attempts to discover a root have been
met with the answer:- "Di ne diywi pithadyo" = "this is a word on its own".

Whether these words ever had roots, which died out of use in previous generations, one can only conjecture. It can be fairly said however that the possible semantic implication of the extension ending ought to be considered. For example, -yúkuka has no verbal root; its extension ending is Causative Stative(4b); it means "to startle game out of cover, causing them to run".

In these cases, the number of the extension is entered in brackets after the Mbukushu Verb-Form in lexical entries in the appended dictionary.

N.B.: -korwa = be ill, be sick has a Passive extension ending, but no Active verbal root. But it is in a Passive form in English.

E. DOUBLE and COMPOUND EXTENSIONS.

The combination of two verbal extensions is common in Mbukushu:

e.g. -thíghameka means "to make a small child sleep on its mother's lap". This verb-form has a combination of the Stative and Causative extensions.

-ama draws attention to the position of sleeping;
 -eka to the fact that the child has been caused to sleep,
 probably by the mother rocking the child gently on her
 knees.

An interesting example of double extension is the progressive extension of meaning of -runga, as the verbal root is extended.

-runga = interrupt a conversation once;
 -runga = keep on interrupting;
 -rungaedha = interrupt in such a way that the conversation
 breaks down.

Compound extensions of three occur; four would be quite possible.

For example, -pwedhagera = "puff and pant after running hard".

This is built up from kupwa = come to an end; pwedha = cause to come to an end(2a); =pwedhanga=keep on coming to an end(2a,9), and so finally we get -pwedhagera, -era being the Locative Causative(5c), drawing attention to the place where the puffing and panting occurs, namely the lungs.

Verbal extensions have been considered fully, but the writer does not pretend that such treatment is in any way final. As Benson pointed out, "It would be extremely unwise to claim that any treatment of verbal extensions was exhaustive".⁵⁵

CONCLUSION.

As was stated at the beginning of this thesis, "the contribution of linguistics to the understanding of words is through lexical information, grammatical analysis, and semantic discrimination". The language chosen for illustration has been little studied hitherto. This thesis should have shown that it repays study, as being the language of a living, and of an interesting people. As its literature is minimal, and as many of its people are illiterate, one is concerned basically with a spoken language that should be treated as a whole. As Prof Westphal has said, "Language is a totality; it is an auditory phenomenon".⁵⁶ And Zgusta, for all his careful semantic categorisation in his "Manual of Lexicography", is concerned to warn against trying to pigeon-hole words too exactly.

The writer has been well aware of this danger. He has been conscious, for example, in discussing verbal extensions, that he has been treading a road of fine distinctions. He has had to remind himself that in dealing with the spoken language of a largely illiterate people, the validity of his statements must be provisional rather than final.

He is also aware that the compilation of a dictionary is the work of a lifetime; and, that even if one had a lifetime for the task, some words would still not be recorded. As that pioneer lexicographer, Dr Samuel Johnson declared, "No dictionary of a living tongue can ever be perfect, since while it is hastening to publication, some words are budding and some are falling away".⁵⁷

LIST OF REFERENCES.

Page:

- | | | |
|----|----|--|
| 1 | 1 | Dr Samuel Johnson, Preface to "Dictionary of the English Language", 1775. |
| 2 | 2 | Isaac Frank, "Standard Dictionary of the English Language", 1913. |
| | 3 | Householder and Saporta, "Problems in Lexicology", p 26 (Indiana University, 1975). |
| | 4 | op.cit. p 26. |
| | 5 | op.cit. p 82. |
| 3 | 6 | op.cit. p 153. |
| 4 | 7 | Concise Oxford Dictionary, Preface, First Edition, 1911. |
| | 8 | op.cit. Preface, Second Edition, 1929. |
| 5 | 9 | "Mbukushu - Grammatical and Arithmetical Terminology" - Department of Education, South West Africa, 1973. |
| 6 | 10 | Fr Hannam, S.J., "Standard Shona Dictionary", Introduction, 1974 edition. |
| 9 | 11 | T.G. Benson, "Century of Bantu Lexicography", African Language Studies, V, 1964. |
| | 12 | John Whitehead, "Bobangi Dictionary and Grammar", 1899. |
| | 13 | Mabille & Dieterlen, "Southern Sotho-English Dictionary", Introduction, 1950. |
| 11 | 14 | C.G. Black, "South African Languages", 1862-9, p 498. |
| | 15 | R.N. Cust, "Language Map of Africa", 1883. |
| | 16 | C.N. Doke, "Modern Grammatical, Phonetical and Lexicographical Studies since 1860", International African Institute, 1945. |
| | 17 | M. Guthrie, "Classification of Bantu Languages", Oxford University Press, (OUP), 1948, p 53. |
| | 18 | M.A. Bryan, "Bantu Languages of Africa", OUP, 1959, p 60. |
| | 19 | Schapera and Van der Merwe, "Notes on Noun Classes of some Bantu Languages in Ngamiland", University of Cape Town, 1942. |
| | 20 | E.O.J. Westphal, "Kwangari - Index of Lexical Types", 1958. |

LIST OF REFERENCES (continued)

Page:

- 12 21 Appended "English-Mbukushu Dictionary", Introduction Notes 8.
 22 op.cit. Introduction Notes 9.
 23 op.cit. Introduction Notes 10.
 24 Article, "The Languages of the Western Province of Zambia, Journal Vol. 1 No. 1 of the Language Association of East Africa, 1970.
- 13 25 Dr Thomas Larsen, "Ecological Adaptation of the Hambukushu, a Bantu tribe in Ngamiland", 1962, pp 21 ff.
- 16 26 quoted by permission from "Mbukushu Orthography no. 1" - Department of Education, South West Africa, 1968.
 27 op.cit. pp 11-27. (All quotations are in inverted commas).
- 17 28 "English-Mbukushu Dictionary", Introduction, "Pronunciation of Mbukushu Orthography".
- 18 29 op.cit. quoting from pp 37-45 of "Mbukushu Orthography", cited under 26 above.
- 23 30 op.cit. Introduction Note 2.
- 24 31 op.cit. Introduction Note 5 (ii).
 32 "The verbal extensions in Southern Bantu Languages: a descriptive and comparative classification", by E.O.J. Westphal and others, University of London, 1974.
- 25 33 T.G. Benson, "Kikuyu-English Dictionary".
 Smith & Dale, "Ila-Speaking Peoples of Northern Rhodesia", Macmillan, 1920.
 John Whitehead, "Bobangi Dictionary and Grammar", 1899.
 Prof D.T. Cole, "Introduction to Tswana Grammar", Longman's Green, 1959.
 A. Jalla, "Lozi Dictionary", Paris Evangelical Missionary Society.
 Prof E.O.J. Westphal, "Kwangari-Index of Lexical Types", 1958.
 Fr M. Hannam, S.J., "Standard Shona Dictionary", Third Edition, 1974.

LIST OF REFERENCES (continued)

Page:

- 28 34 "English-Mbukushu Dictionary", Introduction Table of Class Prefixes, Predicative and Qualificative Concorde.
- 29 35 op.cit. Introduction Table of Concorde.
- 36 "Mbukushu Orthography", cited under 26 above, p 27.
- 30 37 "English-Mbukushu Dictionary", "Table of Verb Forms" in Introduction.
- 33 38 Eugene Nida, "Theory and Practice of Translation", United Bible Societies, 1969, pp 59-60.
- 37 39 A. Zgusta, "Manual of Lexicography", p 312.
- 38 40 op.cit. p 60.
- 39 41 op.cit. p 64.
- 42 op.cit. p 61.
- 43 op.cit. p 79.
- 44 op.cit. p 89.
- 40 45 op.cit. p 91.
- 42 46 Hannam, "Standard Shona Dictionary", cited in 33 above.
- 43 47 Smith & Dale, "Ila-Speaking Peoples", cited in 33 above.
- 48 op.cit.
- 45 49 Cole, "Introduction to Tswana Grammar", cited in 33 above.
- 46 50 Hannam, op.cit.
- 51 Cole, op.cit.
- 48 52 Smith & Dale, op.cit.
- 49 53 Cole, op.cit.
- 54 Hannam, op.cit.
- 54 55 Benson, op.cit. cited in 33 above.
- 56 Westphal, op.cit. cited in 33 above.
- 57 S. Johnson, op.cit. cited in 1 above.

ENGLISH-THIMBUKUSHU DICTIONARY

INTRODUCTION

<u>Contents:</u>	<u>Page:</u>
Preface	1
Introductory Notes	2
Pronunciation of Mbukushu Orthography	6
Rules of Word Division in Mbukushu	7
Table of Mbukushu Noun Classes with Notes	9
Table of Class Prefixes, Predicative and Qualificative Concords, Possessive Stems and Emphatic Pronouns	12
Table of Verb Forms	16
Table of Verbal Extensions classified Linguistically	17
Table of Verbal Extensions classified Semantically	19
List of Abbreviations	23

PREFACE

1. The outline pattern of this dictionary has been based on the Concise Oxford Dictionary (OUP 1934). But entries and glosses have been selective. Glosses quoted are marked by the abbreviation C.O.D. Many other glosses would only be found in a dictionary of an African language.

2. Basic Arrangement of Entries: This dictionary is arranged in a three column format for clarity. In the first column will be found: English entry word - Abbreviation denoting part of speech - Gloss. In the second column will be found: Mbukushu word with lexical tone. In the third column may be found: a sentence or phrase illustrating the meaning of the Mbukushu word; or an explanatory note on the gloss; or the continuation of the Mbukushu entry, if several words are needed to express the meaning of the English word.
 N.B. If these are not needed, a gloss + Mbukushu word may appear in this column.

3. Additional Information found in many Entries:
 - a. A literal translation of the Mbukushu may appear in the first or third column.
 - b. Cross-references may appear in the first or third column.
 - c. Irregular Mbukushu words may be preceded by the abbreviation 'irr'.
 - d. An abbreviation of the part of speech of the Mbukushu word will precede it if it differs from the part of speech of the English word.
 - e. Mbukushu noun entries are followed by the numbers of their noun-classes as tabulated in the Introduction.
 - f. Mbukushu verbal extensions are followed by their number in the Linguistic and Semantic Tables, both of which are found in the Introduction. The root of the extension (R) may come immediately after it, or in the third column.
 - g. Multiple meanings of words may be found in either the first or third columns. They are indicated by a number before the Mbukushu entry word, and are followed by the entry references where the other meanings may be found. The dominant meaning is marked 1; the secondary meaning by 2, etc.
 - h. Near-Synonyms (syn) of the Mbukushu entry word may appear in the first or third columns; homographs (hom) and Antonyms (ant) usually in the third column.

4. Orthography: The orthography of this dictionary is in accordance with "Mbukushu Orthography no. 1" issued by the Department of Education, S.W.A., 1968. Rules of pronunciation are quoted from pp 9-27 of that booklet by permission. Rules for Word Division are also summarised from pp 37-43.
5. Technical Terms: A selection of technical terms included in this dictionary are quoted from "Mbukushu- Grammatical and Arithmetical Terminology List" (Department of Education, S.W.A., 1973). These are acknowledged in each case by the abbreviation M.T.
6. The purpose of this dictionary is objective; it is concerned with the recording of usage. As this is the first to appear in the language, the compiler has tried to make it both clear in outline and comprehensive in scope. It is offered in the hope that others will be able to build on its foundation, to expand and extend, and to amend and revise the work that he has begun.

INTRODUCTORY NOTES

1. NOUNS

- (a) Classes 1a(9)/2(9),6(9) and 1a(9)/2(9),10 have a dual plural. The first plural, 2(9), is for a small group of two to five; the second plural, 6(9) or 10, is for numbers over five. These classes contain six types of people, most of the animals and birds, and even a few insects.
- (b) This dual plural is also found in class 5/6 for grain, berries and seeds, finger-nails and claws. There are a few other examples of the dual plural in other classes, mainly for animals and birds.
- (c) There is a Table of Mbukushu Noun Classes in the Introduction. This is followed by Notes on the classification of nouns. Such classification depends on concordance rather than prefixation. Even so nouns classify in no neat divisions. The content of classes overlap, and the summaries given by no means exhaust their contents.
- (d) Singularisation occurs in geographical and place names as Afrika=Africa; with certain seasons and times, such as kufu=winter, and peghundha=tomorrow or yesterday; and in certain natural phenomena, notably mvura=rain.

- (e) Pluralisation in the language is extensive. Not only is there the locative plural of class 6, but also nouns derived from verbs are usually used in the plural, as in classes 6 and 8. Further, there are at least two hundred miscellaneous words in class 10/6(10).

2. DIMINUTIVES AND THEIR OPPOSITES

- (a) pfx ka- denotes the diminutive of nouns with pfx thi- in class 7,
e.g. kanu/thinu=thing; kakote/thikote=basket.
- (b) pfx thi- denotes the diminutive of nouns in class 3,
e.g. thimuku/muku=mouse.
- (c) pfd di- denotes the diminutive of nouns in class 1,
e.g. dikúru ghoghuyero=a foolish old man/mukúru=elder, old man.
- (d) sffx -ana also gives a diminutive form for nouns of any class,
e.g. mungáwana/mungaghu=boy; mbwághana/mbwá=dog.

3. ADJECTIVES

- (a) adjectives are not numerous in Mbukushu; much of their work is done by verbs.
- (b) But some verbs are formed from adjectives (and a few from nouns). They have the verbal ending -pa; see Linguistic Table of Verbal Extensions 1, and the Semantic Table of Verbal Extensions 16, 17. These numbers will be found after such verb forms in lexical entries, in brackets.

4. ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS

- (a) Adverbs in English often form part of the verb in Mbukushu. Notable exceptions are 'backward, forward, between', and usually 'above, below, beneath'.
- (b) Prepositions in English are usually expressed in Mbukushu. Sometimes they form part of the verb, especially in the Prepositional Extension 5b, which implies motion towards or away from a person, object, or place. (This is the number in the Semantic Table of Verbal Extensions. In the Linguistic Table, extensions with the vowels i/e are "directive, outgoing, externalising" - see "Verbal Extensions in Southern Bantu languages", p 215, by Prof. Westphal and others, University of Cape Town).

5. VERBS

- (a) The significance of numbers after entries of Mbukushu verbs is explained in 3.f. of the Preface and 3.(b) of these notes. Besides the entry of numbers 16, 17 in brackets explained in 3.(b) of these notes, other numbers also appear in brackets. These indicate the extension ending of verbs which do not have derivative verb roots. This ending may have a bearing on the meaning of the verb entered, e.g. -yukuka=startle game out of cover and cause them to run.
- (b) The convention of using a hyphen before the Mbukushu verbal entries instead of the prefix ku- has been followed. But ku- appears in cases of elision between the prefix and the verb, when it begins with a vowel, e.g. ku- + imana=kwimana=stand. It has also been found necessary to make certain exceptions:-
- i) When the high tone falls upon the prefix ku-, it has been written, e.g. kufa=die.
 - ii) In the Semantic Table of Verbal Extensions and Variant Forms, the Reciprocal and Reflexive Variant Forms, no. 7, have an infix ku- between the infinitive ku- and the verbal radix + a. Examples are given in the Table.
 - iii) Some verbs begin with a triple and even a quadruple ku-; these are entered in full as it is easier to pronounce them if this is done.
- (c) Two Tables of Verbal Extensions are given in the Introduction -
- i) A Linguistic Table, based on the 1973 classification of the Department of African Languages in the University of Cape Town. (See 4.(b) above).
 - ii) A Semantic Table.
- Numbers from both tables follow Mbukushu Verbal Extension entries. Mbukushu is rich in such extensions; double and even compound extensions occur, to which attention is drawn at the end of the Semantic Table.
- (d) Sometimes the last vowel but one or penultimate vowel of a verb is doubled for emphasis, e.g. -tērera=listen/imp. terēere=listen! The effect of doubling the vowel is to double the length of the sound; 'terere' would only indicate the normal stress in the imperative.

- (e) Sometimes the Passive in English becomes 'ne + R + a' in Mbukushu - see entry DRENCH.

Sometimes the Passive in English is expressed in Mbukushu by R + a, e.g. -swavitha=disappoint/passive -swava.

See also entries ASTONISH, TIRE.

- (f) Irregular Verbs include kwiya'=come; -mona=see; kwitha'=call.

Nouns with Irregular Plurals include -

thirúmbu	(class 7)=little bird;	plural - ghurúmbu	(class 14).
theko	(class 12)=court case;	plural - matheko	(class 6).
kapúku	(class 12)=ant;	plural - ghupúku	(class 14). -
katjama	(class 12)=water-melon;	plural - makatjama	(class 6(12)).

6. USE OF HYPHEN

- (a) The use of the hyphen before Mbukushu verb entries is mentioned in 5.(b).
- (b) A hyphen is sometimes used in long compounds, and is always used in the compound form of numerals. (See "Mbukushu Orthography", p 47).
- (c) A hyphen is not used with reduplicative verb stems as in Shona.

7. LEXICAL TONE

- (a) In this dictionary, lexical tone is the tone pattern of the word in isolation. It is not the tone pattern of the word at the end of a statement, as in Fr. Hannam's Shona Dictionary (see Intro. VII, para's 3-5).
- (b) The exception to the above rule is when the Mbukushu entry is longer than a single word. (As is well known, the tone pattern of words in African languages can vary according to the position of the word in the sentence).
- (c) The Mbukushu word or words in lexical entries are marked by high tone accents, or by a horizontal mark over a vowel when a syllable is prominent, or appears to have a slight stress. (The reasons for this are a matter for further investigation).
- (d) The vowels usually carry the tone.
- (e) 'm' and 'n' as single consonants, or nasalised or compounded, also sometimes act as depressors, creating a rising tone phenomenon, e.g. n̄y-a-t̄ji=buffalo; mwána=child. (These features of 'm' and 'n' are shown in the relevant entries).

8. DIALECTICAL VARIATIONS

(a) The form of a word may vary according to local dialect:

e.g. tjifuma/tjuhuma=sugar cane.

(b) Sometimes different Mbukushu words are used for the same English meaning in different localities. See entry SUGAR-CANE.

These have been entered with an abbreviation indicating the locality of the usage of the word:-

Ang=Angola; Ets=Etsha Settlement, Ngamiland; Ng=Ngamiland;
Shak=Shakawe, N. Ngamiland; SWA=South-West Africa.

9. DERIVATIVE WORDS

Words derived from another language are entered in brackets with an abbreviation indicating the source;

Afr.=Afrikaans; E.=English; Port.=Portuguese;
Sets.=Setswana.

The majority of these are from Setswana.

10. CURRENT WORDS FROM OTHER LANGUAGES

Some words from other languages are found in circulation with Mbukushu words of the same meaning. These are entered in brackets, with an abbreviation indicating the source:

Gc=Gceriku; Her=Herero; Kw=Kwangadi; Ndj=Ndjamba.

11. PROVERBS

About two dozen proverbs have been included in this dictionary as samples of idiomatic expressions. Some of these are current in other African languages.

THE SOUNDS AND LETTERS OF MBUKUSHU

1. VOWELS

front			back	
close	i [i]	u [u]		kudima 'to cultivate'
				fumu 'chief'
mid	e [e]	o [o]		tate 'father'
				kuhokoka 'to appear'
open	a [a]			kurara 'to sleep'

2. CONSONANTS

Consonants may combine with -w-/-y- and with a nasal (N). The potentiality for combination is shown in each case. As there is only one set of affricates and as these may in some pronunciations come close to palatal plosives (different from -ty-, etc.), the Plosives and Affricates are shown together. There are Labial (bi-labial and denti-labial), dental (and inter-dental) alveolar, palatal (and pre-palatal), velar and laryngeal or glottal sounds. The click borrowings from neighbouring Tshu-Khwe languages (in particular perhaps Xukhwe) form a special category. The following then are the phonetic categories of sound in which no attempt has been made to set out the phonological derivations. The author has dealt with Mbukushu alone and has not made it his task to state the relationship of Mbukushu with other Bantu languages.

	LABIAL LABIO-DEN	DENTAL INTER-DEN	ALVEOLAR	PALATAL PRE-PAL	VELAR GLOTTAL	CLICK
PLOSIVE AND AFFRICATE	p [p] +w/y kupinduka b [b] +w/y dibu +N mb [mb] +w/y mburo	t̥ [t̥] kutandha nd̥ [nd̥] (cf. ndh)	t [t] +w/y thitondo d [d] +w/y kudira nd [nd] +w/y ndema	tj [tʃ] +w/. kutjora dj [dʒ] +w/. kudjata ndj [ndʒ] +w/. ndjato	k [k] +w/y shoko g [g] +w/. kugunda ng [ŋg] +w/. ngombe	c [] kaci gc [g] gco ngc [ŋg] ngcamu
FRICATIVES	f [f] +w/. kufu v [v] +./y kovora +N mv [mv] +./. mvu	th [θ] +w/. thinyunyi dh [ɖ] +./. rudhi ndh [nɖ] +w/. ndhira	y [j] (cf. y) mayira ndh [nʃ] (cf. ndh) ndhira	sh [ʃ] +w/. shushwa gh [ɣ] +./. dighumbo	h [h] +./. hanuke nh [ɲ] +w/. manhwe	
NASAL CONTIN.	m [m] +w/y kumona		n [n] +w/y munu	ny [ɲ] (cf. n+y) nyara	ɲ [ɲ] +w/. ɲando	nc [ɲ] ncinci
ROLLED CONTIN.		r [r] +./. kureta				
SEMIVOWELS	w [w] +./. woma		y [j] +./. mayira			

FOREIGN SOUNDS: The sounds s [s] as in posa 'post', z [z] as in haZulu 'the Zulu people', j [j] as in Josefa 'Joseph', and nk [ŋk] as in nkirishe 'church', also occur but do not form part of the native Mbukushu phonology.

RULES OF WORD DIVISION IN MBUKUSHU (summarised from Mbukushu Orthography pp 37-43).

1. The following should be written CONJUNCTIVELY:

(a) All particles and formatives:-

- i) Na/no with nouns, e.g. nanyime=with the lion;
nongombe=with the cattle.
with proper names, e.g. naDisho=with Disho.
with kinship terms, e.g. name natate=Father and I.
with absolute pronouns, e.g. naye/na aye=and he.
with possessive pronouns, e.g. nodyoye/no-dya + oye=with yours.
with demonstratives, e.g. noyu=and this.
with adjectives, e.g. ghukenu noghukihu=white and black.
 - ii) Possessive concords with nouns, e.g. the chief's sheep
=ndjwi dhafumu.
my cattle=ngombe dchange
 - iii) Pa- (according to), e.g. according to the law=paveta.
 - iv) Associative prefix with nouns, e.g. the goat which is a ram
=nombo ghothikungwe.
with adjectives, e.g. the fierce lion
=nyime ghomupata.
 - v) Locative particles pa/ku/mu with nouns, e.g. on top of the hut
=pandhugho;
at the river=kurware;
in the river=murware.
kwa/mwa with personal names, kinship terms,
e.g. to Disho=kwaDisho; you, my fathers=mwatate.
also with demonstratives, adjectives, possessive pronouns.
 - vi) Infinitive concord ku- with verb in sentences - not in lexical entries.
N.B. When ku- is used with the objectival concord, both are written conjunctively with the verb stem,
e.g. kumumona=to see him.
Ku- is also joined with the reflexive formative ku- and the verb stem, e.g. kukuyogha=to wash myself.
- (b) Kinship terms which are used with possessive pronoun stems are written conjunctively, e.g. wihetu=our father;
mwanange=my child.

2. The following should be written DISJUNCTIVELY:
 - a. Subjectival and Objectival Concords, Auxiliary Verbs.
 - b. All conjunctions and adverbs.
 - c. All demonstratives in relative sentences.
 - d. All forms of the negative and interrogative.
 - e. When na/no combines two sentences, it should be written disjunctively.

TABLE OF MBUKUSHU NOUN-CLASSES

	<u>C Stems</u>	<u>V-stems</u>	<u>i-stems</u>	<u>EXAMPLE</u>
1a	Ø-			Fumu yu gha di pano=this chief is here
2	ha-			Hafumu wa ha di pano
1a/.	n-			Mvura yu gha di wuwa=this rain is good
1a(9)-	n-			Ndwedho yu gha di pano bull
2(9),6(9)	ha(n)-.ma(n)-			Handwedho wa, Mandwedho gha
1a(9)-	n-/mu-			Nyime yu gha di pano lion
2(9),10	ha(n)-,n-			Hanyime wa, Nyime dhi
1a(9)	n-			Tjihuma yu gha di ghutowi sugar cane
6(9)	ma(n)-			Matjihuma gha gha di ghutowi
1	mu-	mw-		Murume yu gha di pano man
2	ha-	h-		Harume wa ha di pano
3/.	mu-/mo-	mw-		Muvero ghu ghu di kuya east
3	mu-	mw-		Muraka ghu gha di pano kraal
6	ma-			Maraka gha gha di pano
3		mw-		Mwerekero ghu ghu di ghuremu burden
6(3)	ma(mw)-			Mamwerekero gha gha di ghuremu
3	mu-	mw-		Mupepo ghu ghu di ngcamu wind
10(4)	mi-			Mipepo dhi dhi di ngcamu
5	di-	dy-		Diko di di di pano tribe
6	ma-		me-	Mako gha gha di pano
./6	ma-		me-	Matendapithero gha gha di pano watering-place
./6/6/(6)	mama-		meme-	Makutumeno gha/mamakutumeno closet
7	thi-	th-	the-	Thitondo thi thi di pano tree
8	yi-	y-	te-	Yitondo yi yi di pano
10	n-/Ø-			Mbapira dhi dhi di pano paper
6/(10)	ma(n)-			Mambapira gha gha di pano
./10	n-/Ø-			Ndhara dhi ne dhiyi hunger
11	ru-	rw-		Rware ru ru di pano river
6(11)	ma(ru)-	ma(rw)-		Marware gha gha di pano
12	ka-	k-	ke-	Kamo ka ka di pano axe

<u>CLASS</u>	<u>C Stems</u>	<u>V-stems</u>	<u>i-stems</u>	<u>EXAMPLE</u>
13	tu-	tw-	twe-	Twamo tu tu di pano
14	ghu-	w-		Ghuwanga ghu ghu di wuwa medicine
6(14)	ma(ghu)-	ma(w)-		Maghuwanga gha gha di wuwa
15a	ku-/n-			Kutwi kombapira ku di ghukenu page (book)
6	ma-			Matwi ghombapira gha di ghukenu
15/.	ku-			Kutjiritha ka ku di ghuyi abduction
16	pa-			Pana kumu haguva=the people arrive here.
17	ku-			Kuna yendi haguva=there go the people.
18.	mu-			Muna tungu haguva mumayugho= the people dwell in huts.

NOTES

- 1a/2 Names, relations. People of position; peculiar people.
- 1a/- Place-names. Days, months, seasons. Rain, meat.
- 1a(9)/ Animals, birds (8 large animals have plural 2(9),3(9)).
- 2(9),6(9) 6 types of people-policeman, healer, soldier, farmer, secretary, savage.
- 1a(9)/2(9),10. Big game, domestic animals, insects.
- 1a(9)/6(9) Derived words placed here for phonetic reasons.
Fish, plants, small creatures.
- 1/2 Personal
- 3/. Miscellaneous
- 3/6 Miscellaneous
- 3/6(3) Miscellaneous
- 3/10(4) Natural phenomena, trees (with 14).
Parts, of body, instruments, abstract ideas.
- 5/6 Things that are together - collections, bundles, heaps, fruits, liquids, masses. Parts of body, birds.
- ./6/6(6) Locative plural, places. Alternate plural to 8, of nouns derived from verbs. Liquids.
- 7/8 Things cultural or manufactured. Nouns derived from verbs. Abstract ideas.

- 10/6(10) Things cultural or manufactured. Abstract ideas.
Plants. Parts of body. Slopes. (3 exceptions:-
ndhira/mayira=way. Ndhugho/mayugho=house. Nyara/mayara=hand).
- ./10 Miscellaneous.
- 11/6(11) Long, thin, small, intermittent, disconnected, prolonged,
extensive but spare. Abstract ideas. (4 exceptions with
plural 11/6).
- 12/13 Diminutives. Small creatures. Manufactured things.
- 14/6(14) Trees (with 3). Essences. Small things and creatures.
(7 exceptions with plural 14/6).
- 15a/6 Page of book, click.
- 15 Infinitives.
- 16,17,18 Locatives.

TABLE OF CLASS PREFIXES, PREDICATIVE and QUALIFICATIVE CONCORDS.

PERSON	CLASS PREFIX	PREDICATIVE CONCORDS			QUALIFICATIVE	
		BASIC Sc(Present)	PAST Sc	OBJ.	ADJ.	
1PSg		Nina,ni,na	Ni,na	Ni		
1PPl		Tuna,tu,twa	Tu,twa	Tu		
2Psg		Ghuna,ghu,wa	Ghu,wa	Ku		
2Ppl		Muna,mu,mwa	Mu,mwa	Mu		
3Psg		Ghana, gha	Gha	Mu		
3PPl		Hana, ha.	Ha	Wa		
NOUN	C- V- i-					
CLASSES	Stems st. st.					
1a	Ø-	Ghana, gha	Gha	Mu	Gho	mu
2	ha;	Hana, ha	Ha	Wa	Ho	ha
1a/.	n-	Ghana, gha	Gha	Mu	Gho	mu
1a(9)-	n-	Ghana, gha	Gha	Mu	Gho	mu
2(9),	ha(n)-	Hana, ha	Ha	Wa	Ho	ha
6(9)	ma(n)-	Ghana, gha	Gha	Gha	Gho	ma
1a(9)	n-/mu-	Ghana, gha	Gha	Mu	Gho	mu
2(9),	ha(n)-	Hana, ha	Ha	Wa	Ho	ha
10	n-	Dhina,dha,dhi	Dha	Dhi	Dho	dhi
1a(9)	n-	Ghana, gha	Gha	Mu	Gho	mu
6(9)	na(n)-	Ghana, gha	Gha	Gha	Gho	ma
1	mu- mw-	Ghana, gha	Gha	Mu	Gho	mu
2	ha- h-	Hana, ha	Ha	Wa	Ho	ha
3/.	mu-/mo- mw-	Ghuna,ghu,gha	Gha	Gha	Gho	ghu
3	mu- mw-	Ghuna,ghu,gha	Gha	Gha	Gho	ghu
6	ma-	Ghana, gha	Gha	Gha	Gho	ma
3	mw-	Ghuna,ghu,gha	Gha	Gha	Gho	ghu
6(3)	ma(mw)-	Ghana, gha	Gha	Gha	Gho	ma
3	mu- mw-	Ghuna,ghu,gha	Gha	Gha	Gho	ghu
10(4)	mi-	Dhina,dha,dhi	Dha	Dhi	Dho	dhi
5	di- dy-	Dina,dya, di	Dya	Di	Dyo	di
6	ma- me-	Ghana, gha	Gha	Gha	Gho	ma
./6	ma- me-	Ghana, gha	Gha	Gha	Gho	ma
./6(6)	ma(ma)- me(me)-	Ghana, gha	Gha	Gha	Gho	ma
7	thi th- the-	Thina,tha,thi	Tha	Thi	Tho	thi
8	yi- y- ye-	Yina,ya, yi	Ya	Yi	Yo	yi

QUALIFICATIVE CONCORDS, POSSESSIVE STEMS and EMPHATIC PRONOUNS.

QUALIFICATIVE

DEM. PRONOUNS	REL	POSS.	POSS. STEMS	EMPHATIC PRONOUNS	PERSON.
		Wa-	-(a)nge	Yame, Hame, Ame, Me	1Psg
		Wa-	-(e)tu	Yatwe, Hatwe, Atwe, Twe	1PPl
		Wa-	-(o)ye	Yowe, Howe, Owe, We	2Psg
		Wa-	-(e)nu	Yamwe, Hamwe, Amwe, Mwe	2PPl
		Wa-	-(e)ndi	Ghaye Aye, Ye	3Psg
		Wa-	- wo	Hawo, Awo, Wo	3PPl

NOUN

CLASSES

Yu, ya	ghoyu gha	Wa-	-(e)ndi	1a
Wa, waya	ghawa ha	Wa-	- wo	2
Yu, ya	ghoyu gha	Wa-	-(e)ndi	1a/.
Yu, ya	ghoyu gha	Wa-	-(e)ndi	1a(9)
Wa, waya	ghawa ha	Wa-	- wo	2(9),
Gha, ghaya	ghogha gha	Gha-	-gho	6(9)
Yu, ya	ghoyu gha	Wa-	-(e)ndi	1a(9)
Wa, waya	ghawa ha	Wa-	- wo	2(9),
Dhi, dhiya	ghodhi dha	Dha-	-dho	10
Yu, ya	ghoyu gha	Wa-	-(e)ndi	1a(9)
Gha, ghaya	ghogha gha	Gha-	-gho	6(9)
Yu, ya	ghoyu gha	Wa-	-(e)ndi	1
Wa, waya	ghawa ha	Wa-	- wo	2
Gho, ghoya	ghoghu gha	Wa-	-gho	3/.
Gho, ghoya	ghoghu gha	Wa-	-gho	3
Gha, ghaya	ghogha gha	Gha-	-gho	6
Gho, ghoya	ghoghu gha	Wa-	-gho	3
Gha, ghaya	ghogha gha	Gha	-gho	6(3)
Gho, ghoya	ghoghu gha	Wa-	-gho	3
Dhi, dhiya	ghodhi dha	Dha	-dho	10(4)
Di, diya	ghodi dya	Dya-	-dyo	5
Gha, ghaya	ghogha gha	Gha-	-gho	6
Gha, ghaya	ghogha gha	Gha-	-gho	./6
Gha, ghaya	ghogha gha	Gha-	-gho	6(6)
thi, thiya	ghothi tha	Tha-	-tho	7
yi, yiya	ghoyi ya	Ya-	-yo	8

TABLE OF CLASS PREFIXES, PREDICATIVE and QUALIFICATIVE CONCORDS (continued)

NOUN	CLASS	PREDICATIVE CONCORDS			QUALIFICATIVE
CLASSES	PREFIX	BASIC	sc(Present)	PAST sc	OBJ. ADJ.
	C- v- i-				
	stems st. st.				
10	n- / ϕ -	Dhina,dha,dhi	Dha	Dhi	Dho dhi
6(10)	ma(n)-	Ghana,gha	Gha	Gha	Gho ma
./10	n-	Dhina,dha,dhi	Dha	Dhi	Dho dhi
11	ru; rw-	Runa,rwa,ru	Rwa	Ru	Ro ru
6(11)	ma(ru)-ma(rw)-	Ghana,gha	Gha	Gha	Gho ma
12	ka- k- ke-	Kana,ka	Ka	Ka	Ko ka
13	tu- tw- twe-	Tuna,twa,tu	Twa	tu	To tu
14	ghu- w-	Ghuna,ghu,gha	Gha	Ghu	Gho ghu
6(14)	ma(ghu)- ma(w)-	Ghana, gha	Gha	Gha	Gho ma
15a	ku-/n-	Kuna,ka,ku	Ka	Ka	Ko ku
6	ma-	Ghana,gha	Gha	Gha	Gho ma
15/.	ku-	Kuna,ku	Ka	Ka	Ko ku
16	pa-	Pana,pa	Pa		
17	ku-	Kuna,ku	Kwa		
18	mu-	Muna,mu	Mwa		

QUALIFICATIVE CONCORDS, POSSESSIVE STEMS and EMPHATIC PRONOUNS (continued)

QUALIFICATIVE

DEM. PRONOUNS	REL.	POSS.	POSS. STEMS	EMPHATIC PRONOUNS	NOUN CLASSES
Dhi,diya	ghodhi dha	Dha-	-dho		10
Gha,ghaya	ghogha gha	Gha-	-gho		6(10)
Dhi,dhiya	ghodhi dha	Dha-	-dho		./10
Ru,ruya	ghoru rwa	Rwa-	-ro		11
Gha,ghaya	ghogha gha	Gha-	-gho		6(11)
Ka,kaya	ghoka ka	Kwa-/ka-	-ko		12
Tu,tuya	ghotu twa	Twa-/tu-	-to		13
Gho,ghoya	ghoghu gha	Gha-	-gho		14
Gha,ghaya	ghogha gha	Gha-	-gho		6(14)
Ka,kaya	ghoku ka	Kwa-	-ko		15a
Gha,ghaya	ghogha gha	Gha-	-gho		6
Ka,kaya	ghoku ka	Kwa-	-ko		15/.
papo		Pa-	-po		16
kwako		Kwa-	-ko		17
mwamo		Mwa-	-mo		18

TABLE OF VERB FORMS

	INDICATIVE / INDEPENDENT	
<u>PRESENT:</u>	POSITIVE	SC na ku RAD a(i,o)
	PAST(to-day)	SC na RAD a(i,o)
	PROGRESSIVE	INF sc na INF.
	NEGATIVE	kadi/mbadi SC na INF
<u>FUTURE:</u>	POSITIVE	[^] nanyi SC RAD e
	PROGRESSIVE	[^] nanyi SC ku RAD e
	UNSPECIFIED	mbo SC na RAD a
	CONDITIONAL	SC RAD e
	NEGATIVE	kadi/mbadi sho SC RAD e
<u>PERFECT</u>	POSITIVE	nga (SC) RAD a(i,o,u)
	NEGATIVE	kadi/mbadi nga (SC) RAD a(i,o,u)
<u>PAST</u>	POSITIVE	*SC a RAD -ire (-ine)
	NEGATIVE	kadi/mbadi SCa RAD -ire (-ine)
		*ni + a =na
		di + a =dya
		thi + a =tha etc.
<u>RELATIVE</u>	REL. pronouns + IND. forms above.	
	DIRECT REL. - see TABLE of CLASS PREFIXES (Qualificative Concords)	
	INDIRECT REL.- see below.	
<u>CONDITIONAL</u>	- ngo/ngeshi + IND. forms above.	
<u>PARTICIPIAL</u>	PROGRESSIVE - SC ko/ka INF + pos. form	
	NEGATIVE kadi/mbadi SC ko/ka INF + neg. form	
	(N.B.: No difference in form according to tense).	
<u>SUBJUNCTIVE</u>	POSITIVE	eshi SC RAD e
	NEGATIVE	eshi kadi/mbadi SC RAD e
<u>IMPERATIVE</u>	POSITIVE	*SC RAD e
	NEGATIVE	*SC RAD a
	(N.B.: SC omitted for 2nd person singular, unless emphatic particle 'we' is used).	
<u>COPULATIVES</u>		
i)	Particle 'ne' linking SC with Descriptive Noun, e.g. Ni ne munu= I am a person.	
ii)	Particle 'di' linking SC with Locative, e.g. Ni di pano=I am here.	
INDIRECT REL. (see above) = both Subject and Object in Relative Clause:-		
e.g. whom I receive=ghoyu nina tambura.		
e.g. the man whom I receive is ploughing=munu ghoyu nina tambura kudima ghana kudima.		

TABLE OF VERBAL EXTENSIONS CLASSIFIED LINGUISTICALLY

(Based on the classification of the 1973 seminar of the
Department of African Languages in the University of Cape Town).

- | | | | | | | |
|-----|--------------------|------------------------------|--|------------------|-------------------|---|
| 1. | *P | *-pa | -*p | - ext | Denominative | -mbírupa=become small (cf ghumbíru=small)
-rangapa=1. start work late (cf -ranga= stop work
2. read & write well.
to talk) |
| 2. | ^a t | -ata | -aT | ext. | Contactive | |
| 3. | u
uk
u | -eka
-oka
-uka | | K ext. | Causative | -péteka=cause to be bent, cf -péta=bend
-tjoka=cause to be broken, cf -tjora=break
-yákunuka=cause separation, cf -yakununa= separate. |
| 4. | -ith | -itha | ([*] ik-ya= | -itha); iTH ext. | Causative | -monitha=cause to see, cf -mona=see |
| | | -ithith- | | | Intensive form | -yúvithitha=understand, cf -yúvitha= completely understand |
| 5. | *y | *-ya | ([*] k + ya = th)
([*] r + ya = dh) | *Y ext. | | -hútha=1. give back cf -húka=return.
2. reply. |
| 6. | u
u r
u
u | -ara
-era
-ona
-una | | | R ext. | -monara=become visible, cf -mona=see.
-kwithera=appeal to, cf kwitha=call
-ponona=re-roast, cf -pona=roast
-kúnuna=sow again, cf -kúna=sow |
| | | -arar- | | | Intensive form. | -tandarara=sit with cf -tandara= outstretched legs lie stiff. |
| | | -erer- | | | | -yoterera=warm oneself, cf -yota= in sun warm oneself |
| | | -oror- | | | | -rongorora=unpack, cf -rongora=pack |
| | | -urur- | | | | -pirurura=turn a thing cf -pirura= right round turn |
| 7. | *-w, | -iw | | W ext. | Passive | kwirwa=be lost cf kwira=lose one's way
-tápiwa=be given cf -tápa=give |
| 8. | -am | | | M ext | Positional Static | -pétama=be bent cf -péta=bend |
| | -amam | | | | Intensive form | -nyíkamama=tell cf.-nyíka=lie v.ill. a person to sit. |
| 9. | - ^a n | | | N ext | | -thétana=be twisted cf -théta=twist spirally |
| | -anen- | | | | Intensive form | -thímanena=smoulder cf -thíma=smoke |
| 10. | -ng | | | Ng ext. | | -yéndanga=keep on cf -yénda=go going, |

FURTHER EXTENSIONS APPARENTLY PECULIAR TO MBUKUSHU

- | | | |
|--|--|------------------|
| 11. -eh | -hákeha=attract love, | cf -háka=love |
| 12. -o v
-u | -ranguvura=speak so fast,
that not understood | cf -ranga=hinder |
| 13. -any | -vunganya=mix together, | cf -vunga=mix |
| 14. -wena/-wera | -tongwera=tell to | cf -tongora=tell |
| 15. -agh- | -tétaghura=chop to
pieces, | cf -téta=chop |
| 16. -otoka /-uruka / -utuka.
/ -iririka | -thímutuka=rise up
in rings | cf -thíma=smoke |

COMPOSITE

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|--|---------------------------|
| 9/11 -angan - | Extensive | -dirangana=cry out to
one another | cf -dira=cry |
| 4/11 -akany- | Associative | -thíndarakanya=crowd
together in small
space | cr -thínda=press
hard. |

* Common Bantu form

TABLE OF VERBAL EXTENSIONS AND VARIANT FORMS.

<u>EXTENSION</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>EXAMPLE</u>	<u>REFERENCE</u>
1. PASSIVE	Action done to subj.	-iwa -tápiwa -wa kwirwā	GIVE 1 LOSE 3
2. CAUSATIVE	a) Causing action by obj.	-edha -neghedha -eha -hákeha -etha -kóngwetha	SIGN 4 LOVEABLE ASSEMBLE
	b) Causing action by obj., or action by obj. on another obj.	-idha -tjidha -itha -monitha -utha -hútha	CHASE 2 SEE 3 i. RETURN 1; ii. REPLY 1
LOCATIONAL	c) obj. caused to go to place for event to occur	-edha -shwédha	GO to a place
3. STATIVE	being in certain position	-ama -pétama -ana -thétana -ara -thíghara	BEND (2) 1 TWIST 2 REMAIN 2
4. CAUSATIVE	cause people, things (a) to be in a certain state (b)	-eka -péteka -oka -tjóká -uka -yákunuka	BEND (2) 1 BREAK 1 SEPARATE 5
5(a) APPLIED	action done on behalf of others or oneself	-ena -rughanena -era -tendera -ura -pémura	WORK 3 SERVE 1 CHANCE 1
(b) PREPOSITIONAL	action directed towards or away from	-ana -raghana -ena -shwenena -era kwíthera -ura -púmura	MESSAGE PROTEST (1) 2 APPEAL (1) 2 STRIKE 1
(c) LOCATIONAL APPLIED	action occurring at a place	-ana -hóyangana -ara -monara -ena -ndandamena -era -fera -ona -ponona -una -kúnuna	DRIBBLE 2 VISIBLE RAIN (1) 3 DIE 1 ROAST SOW
6. RECIPROCAL (1)	mutual collective action (MBUKUSHU only)	-ana kukukóngana -dhana -nungadhana	CROWD (2) 1 DECIDE 4
<u>VARIANT FORM.</u>			
7(a) RECIPROCAL (2)	mutual action by two to five people towards each other	kuku- kukughamba kukugwarura	SPEAK with each other SCRATCH (1) 2
(b) REFLEXIVE	doing things to or of oneself	kuku- kukuyogha	WASH 1

<u>EXTENSION</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>EXAMPLE</u>	<u>REFERENCE</u>
8. REVERSIVE	Action of one verb reversed or undone by another	No rule can be given in Mbukushu; reversives do not always have the same root.	
9. CONTINUAL (FREQUENTATIVE, HABITUAL)	To keep on doing something for a period, or regularly	-anga -runga -yéndanga	INTERRUPT 1 GO v. extt.
<u>VARIANT FORM.</u>			
10. REDUPLICATIVE	Action repeated again and again; verbal stem doubled	-púmurapúma -yédayéda	STRIKE 1 GO v. extt.
<u>EXTENSION</u>			
11(a) REPETITIVE	Repetition of action for a short time	-aghara -rumbwaghara -aghera -túraghera -aghura -yéndaghura -aghuka=-aghura + -uka(4b)-double ext.	STAND (1) 1 ALIGHT (1) 2 GO v. extt.
(b) EXTENSIVE REPETITIVE	Action projected into space	-ora -kokora -ura -vúkura	PICK (2) 2 PULL 3
12. EXTENSIVE CONTINUAL	Action continues to happen for a time	-dhoka kwandadhoka (sffx peculiar to MBUKUSHU)	SLAP 3
13. CONTINUATIVE	Action continues to happen indefinitely	-amena -thíghamena -anena -thímanena -arara -kámbarara -enena -yumenena -erera -yoterera -umena -púngumena	LIE (3) 1 SMOULDER FLOAT (2) 1 SWARM (2) WARM (2) 1 SWEEP 3
14(a) INTENSIVE	Action done with force, enthusiasm, or at some length	-amama -nyíkamama -arara -tandarara -erera -thígherera	SIT 5 SIT 1 EXCUSE (1) 3
(b) EMPHATIC	Emphasising intensity of action done	-ithitha -yúvithitha -umuna -ghandumuna -ununa -randununa -uvura -ranguvura	UNDERSTAND 1 i. KILL 2; ii. ROLL (2) MASSACRE SPEAK fast

<u>EXTENSION</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>EXAMPLE</u>		<u>REFERENCE</u>
15. PERFECTIVE	Carrying of action to completion	-erera	-hurerera	END (2) 2
		-umuna	-pwerumuna	THREAD (2)
		-ununa	-dhimununa	POSTPONE
		-urura	-tendurura	UNDO 3
		-enena	-monenena	SEE
		-orora	-rongorora	UNPACK

VERBAL ENDING

16. NEUTER	Begin to become in a certain state	-pa	-remupa	BURDEN (2)
------------	---------------------------------------	-----	---------	------------

N.B.: Many verbs have neuter form but no verbal RAD.

Verbs formed from adjectives

e.g. ghutenda=cold	-pa	-tendapa	COLD (1)
--------------------	-----	----------	----------

VERBAL ENDING

17. POTENTIAL, or QUALIFICATIVE	Having the capacity to do N.B.: Many verbs have potential form but no verbal RAD.	-pa	-rangapa	WORK 5
------------------------------------	--	-----	----------	--------

Verbs formed from adjectives,

e.g. ngcamu=strong	-pa	-ngcamupa	ABLE (2)
--------------------	-----	-----------	----------

EXTENSION (EXTENSIONS 18-24 may be peculiar to MBUKUSHU)

18. ASSOCIATIVE	Doing things together Dealing with things together	-anya	-hákanya	FOOD 3
		-anya	-vunganya	MIX 2
19. SUBJECTIVE	Action affecting feelings (rare)	-ara	-mwaghara muyirama	ABASH 1
20. SPECIFIED	Specified form of general action	-dhama	-nyíkadhama	SICK
		-dhana	-nyandadhana	SLEEP (2) 3
		-dhara	-gháyadhara	PUZZLE (2) 3
		-dhera	-hángadhera	REPLACE 2
		-dhora	-pongodhora	COLLECT 1
		-dhura	kwípudhura	CURIOUS 2
		-thana	-túkathana	CURSE (2) 1
		-thara	-nyandathara	EXHAUST 2

<u>EXTENSION</u>	<u>DESCRIPTION</u>	<u>EXAMPLE</u>		<u>REFERENCE</u>
21. DECISIVE	Expressing strong action (rare)	-ura	-raghura -putura	COMMAND (1) 1 STRIP (1) 2
22. ROTATIVE	Action of ongoing, roundabout kind	-iririka -otoka -uruka -utuka	-pwiririka -ghonyotoka -dhínguruka -thímútuka	WORK 4 STRETCH 4 CIRCLE (2) 2 SMOKE 1
23. PURPOSIVE	Action of purpose directed towards people, places, things	-wena -wera	-harumwena -tongwera -pangwera	PUT 3 TELL 1 JUDGE (2) 1
24. CONCLUSIVE	Action pushed to a conclusive state.	-dheka	-thíndadheka -pétadheka	PUSH 1 BEND (2) 1

N.B. 1.: Sometimes a Verbal Extension has no meaningful extension with the Verbal Root - see ROLL (2) 2, -ghandumuna.

N.B. 2.: Double and even Compound Extensions are common in Mbukushu. Two or even three extensions may form a double or compound sffx to the root verb. The entry INTERRUPT shows an interesting example of a Double Extension;
a Compound Extension -pwedhangerá, is found under the entry BREATHE.

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

(See also Preface 4,5; Intro. Notes 8,9,10).

a.	adjective	dem	demonstrative	ind	indicative
aa	adjectives	deriv	derivative	incl	included
abrv	abbreviation	dim	diminutive	indef	indefinite
abs	absolute	dir	direct	indir	indirect
ac	adjectival concord			inf	infinitive
acc	according	e.g.	for example	int	interrogative
act	active	emph	emphatic	irr	irregular
ad	adoptive word from another language	esp	especially		
adv	adverb	etc	et cetera	kuku-	Class 15 pfx and reflexive ifx. These prefixes are always shown in order to avoid confusion or un- certainty. In all other cases, the Cl. 15 pfx (when it is not tone- bearing) is omitted.
aff	affirmative	ex	example		
alw	always	exc	except		
ant	antonym	excl	exclamation		
arch	archaic	expl	explain etc		
arith	arithmetic	expr	express etc		
ass	associated	ext	extension		
att	attributive	f	from		
aug	augmentative	fig	figurative	lit.	literally
aux	auxiliary	fm	form	loc	locative
		foll	the following		
beg	beginning	for	foreign	med	medicine
bibl	biblical	form	formative	met	metaphor
		frequ	frequent	mng	meaning
c	concord	fut	future	mus	musical
cl	class				
cmpd	compound	gen	general	N	new (of orthography)
cogn	cognate	geom	geometry	n	noun
coll	colloquial			nn	nouns
comm	common	hom	homograph	no	number
comp	comparative	-	hyphen	np	noun phrase
cond	conditional			NT	New Testament
conj	conjunction	i	intransitive		
constr	construction	ideo	ideophone	O	old (of orthography)
contd	continued	id	idiom etc.	obj	object
cop	copulative	i.e.	that is	obs	obsolete
corr	corresponding	ifx	infix	oc	objectival concord
cp	compare	imp	imperative	occ	occasional
				opp	opposite
				ord	ordinary
				orig	origin
				OT	Old Testament

LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS (continued)

part	participle	sfx	suffix	^u vwl	this sign is occasionally used for unaccented vowels to differentiate words of a certain similarity with.
partic	particular	sg	singular		
pass	passive	simp	simple, simply		
perf	perfect	somet	sometimes		
pers	person	spec	special	w	
pfx	prefix	st	stem		
phr	phrase	subj	subject; subjunctive	-	
phrr	phrases				
pl	plural, place	subst	substantive		
poet	poetical	sup	superlative		
pop	popular	syll	syllable		Also in exx, standard abbreviations are given for Biblical references.
pos	positive	syn	synonym		
poss	possessive				
pp	past, present participle	t	transitive		
pr	pronounced	thr	through		
prec	(the)preceding word	transl	translation		
pred	predicate	usu	usually; usual		
prep	preposition				
pres	present	v	verb		
prob	probable	vv	verbs		
pron	pronoun	var	various		
prop	proper	vbl	verbal		
prov	proverb	vc	verbal concord		
		vwl	vowel		
R	verbal root	v̇wl	high tone over vowel in syllable		
RAD	radix, verbal root				
red	reduplicated	v̇wl	depression after nasal, or fall after rising tone		
ref	reference				
rel	relative	'syll	sign that first syllable is prominent in a disyllabic word		
repet	repetitive		in which both syllables carry high tone		
repr	representative				
rev	reversive	syll'	sign that second syllable is prominent in a disyllabic word in which both syllables carry high tone		
S	subject				
sc	subjectival concord				
sent	sentence	v̄wl	sign that a certain low syllable is prominent where all the syllables of a word carry low tone.		
sequ	sequence				

ENGLISH - MBUKUSHU DICTIONARY

A

AARDWOLF n

striped brown wolf, feeding pakatjégho la(9)
on termites 12(9), 6(9)

ABANDCN vt

1. give up into another's -thigha (r)
control: see GIVE up, -thighera 6-5b
SURRENDER
2. give into - a passion, kutápera r 6-7 5b
habit: see YIELD 2
give up a person to wrong -tðvoha
doing
3. give up, leave behind -thigha
possessions

give up- plans see kutápa r7

give up - evil ways -thigha

4. forsake - things -thigha

forsake, desert - wife -yákunuka 3-4b
(lit. 'cause to separate
with')

The soldiers abandoned the village to the enemy=
hamashorondati hana thigherire dighumbo hafiore.

He abandoned himself to drink = ghana kutapera
ghutahwa.

They abandoned him to his wicked ways = hana
mu kutovoha kumayira ghomayi.

When the lion attacked, he abandoned his things
and ran - was ghopa nyime ghana mu rokokiŕe, gha
thighire yimuna yendi ghana tjiri.

He has abandoned his plans = nga kutapa maghano ghendi.

The people have abandoned their evil customs =
haguva ha thighire mihingo dhawo dhodhiyi
The sailors have abandoned ship = havughi ngaha
thighi thimiva.

Her husband has abandoned her = mundambo wendi
gha yakunukire nendi .

ABASE vt

1. fig. bring down - people
see DEGRADE (lit. 'bring -twāra pamuve
down to ground')

2. humiliate -tūnditha 4-2b
(lit. 'cause pride to
come low') muhūngapi kūshi
pass. be abased -shwāhuka 3-4b
3. humble oneself kughombateritha
see HUMBLE (2)2 7,5a,2b r.1264
(r. -ghūmba)

God will abase the mighty in their pride =
Nyambi fanyi gha kutware kushi hatanavu
mudihuna dyawo.

He that exalteth himself shall be abased =
ghoyu ghana kutanura fianyi gha kutundithe
muhungapi kushi.

or muka kukúkuteka thinda mbo ghana shwahuka.
David abased himself before the Lord = Dafide
gha kughombaterithire paghutho dhaFumu

ABASH vt

1. put a person out;
disturb calm
- mwāghara muyirama
6-19

cp. CONFUSE (lit. scatter
in body)

2. put to shame (-mwagna, r)
cp CONFOUND 2 -wana nohonyi
SHAME 3

The revealing of their plot abashed them =
kukuhokora muthitungura thawo no kunwaghara
muyirema.

You will abash your enemies when they see you with
the chief = fanyī wa kuwane nobonyi hafiorewyo
ghopa ha ku mone nafumu

ABATE vi		
1. become less	-tēpuka 4b	The storm has abated = kakundukundu kana tepuka.
cp LESSEN		
2. calm down - of anger	-hūrera 5b	His anger has abated = ghupata wendi ghuna hurera.
cp CALM v (lit. 'come to an end')	(-hura, r)	
ABBREVIATE vt		
shorten - write part of word for whole - speech	-Fúpipitha 4-2b	The chief abbreviated his speech to a few words =
cp ABRUPT; see SHORT 2	-fúpipitha 4-2b (-fúpa, r)	fumu ghana fupipitha thighamba thendi kumaywi ghomapu.
ABBREVIATION n (noun of verb above)		
tech. M.T.	mafúpipithero -6	
(lit. word that is shortened)	fando dhothifúpipitha 10/6	
ABDOMEN n		
belly, including stomach, bowels.	dipumba 5/6	N.B. a running stomach = kupamba
anat. (i.e. lower part of body)		
ABDUCT vt		
kidnap, remove person by force	-tjiritha 4-2b (-tjira-r)	The man abducted the girl from her father's yard = murume gha tjirithire mushengeteya kudirapa dyawihe.
ABET vt		
help - criminal	-yáka	He abetted the thief in his escape = gha yakire mwidhi eshigha nyetuke.
ABHOR vt		
dislike, hate greatly	-nyénga thikuma	God abhors evil = Nyambi ghana kuny engathikuma ghuyi.
see HATE (2)1		
ABHORRENT		
a. disgusting, hateful	-nyéngitha 4-2b	His behaviour is abhorrant to me = dikuto
or	-pinduka yinyénga	dyendi dina ni di nyengitha. (lit. arousing hate)
ABIDE vi		
1. stay with people	-kára	"Abide with us for it is towards evening" (Luke 24:29)
see STAY		"Kare kukwetu yoyishi tamba runguro."
remain - with people		
see REMAIN		
2. dwell (lit. inhabit, dwell)	-thighara 6-5c	"Where are you abiding? (John 1:39) = kupi wa kukara?"
see DWELL (lit. inhabit)	-kára	
3. (with 'by') remain faithful to	-tunga	
	-thighara munyima	I will abide by the rules = fanyi ni thighare veta
	6-5c	munyima
	(lit. remain afterwards)	
4. put up with person's behaviour (lit. 'stand')	kwimana	The people cannot abide his rudeness = haguva mbadi wa ne kwimana dikuto dyendi dyodiya.
ABIDING		
a. permanent, lasting.	-kárerera	"Here we have no abiding city" (Heb. 13:14) =
see PERMANENT	(-kára, r)	"Kuno kadi twa kara nodighumbo dyodikuru dyo kukarerera."
ABLE		
a.1 clever, having the brains	ghutāri	He is an able boy in his school work = mungaghu ghomutari muyirughana yoshure
see CLEVER, SKILFUL		
skilful, in body	ghundondoro	He is an able carpenter = muyuwi gho mundondoro
2. has the means of doing	-kona	He is able to go now to Maun = gha kona kuyenda keho kuMaun
has the power to do	-ngcamupa 1-(17)	The chief is able to give the order = fumu ghana ngcamupa kutenda veta.
see CAN (2)		
3. qualified, esp. in law	-pita yitatuva	The doctor is able to do the operation = nganga gha pitire yitatuva kupayura
see QUALIFY (lit. 'pass examinations')		

ABLUTION n ceremonial washing	yyiŋgha shika kenge thithimwetedha (lit.'to wash accord- ing to tradition')	The Jews did not eat without doing their ablutions first = Ha-Juta mbadi hana di hoku badi hana kuyogha shika kenge thithimwetedha pamutango
ABODE n dwelling see DWELLING	makáro -/6	He took up his abode in that village = ghana tendi makaro ghendi mudighumbo diya.
ABOLISH vt do away with established things.	-mānitha 4-2b (-māna,r)	The new chief abolished the custom = fumu ghomupya gha manithire muhingo.
ABORTION n 1. miscarriage of birth 2. pregnancy stopped by operation or perform -(lit.Killed the pregnancy)	-Hōndha 15 -páyura kwimeka ghurēmu 15 -págha ghurēmu	Her pregnancy ended in an abortion = ghuremu wendi ghuma pu yoyishi ghana hondho. The doctor performed an abortion upon her (lit. 'operated to stop her pregnancy') = nganga gha mu payurire kwimeka ghuremu The doctor performed an abortion = nganga gha paghire ghuremu
ABOUND vi 1. (orig.) overflow, of liquid, vessel cp. OVERFLOW 2. plentiful, be - of corn. kwīmana 3. be rich in 4. be infested with see INFEST, SWARM	-nótoka 3-4b -kára noghushwi -yūmenena 99-13 (-yūma,r)	The barrel abounded with beer = ditenga dina notoka nomarovu. The fields are abounding with corn = mapya ghanemana tumbi. Botswana abounds with minerals = Botswana gha kara noghushwi noyishwaghitha yomikoti. The huts are abounding with ants = mayuwa ghana yumēnena ghunhwa.
ABOUT adv. 1. all around prep. 2. all around from central point 3. be concerned with 4. concerning to do with	-dhinga -thētaghuka 15/3- 11,4b -rughāna pā	Lions were about my path = nyime dha dhingire ndhira dhange. I looked all about me = nina thetaghukire kokahe. "I must be about my Father's business" (Luke 2:49) = "na roghera kurughana yitanda yatate" I came about that donkey = nineyera pathidongi thiya
ABOVE prep. over - see OVER in heaven - see HEAVEN	pawīru dho mudiwīru	
ABREAST adv. on a level with others, facing same way	kukuháta	The soldiers walked four abreast = hamashorondati hana yendera pamuwe hana kukuhata mughuneghawa
ABROAD adv. 1. in different directions 2. all over the place 3. in another country	-mwāgha (scatter abroad) -yárayara (spread abroad) r 10 muditúnga dimwéya	The cattle are scattered abroad = ngombe dhina kumwagha. The news has spread abroad = mbudhi dha yarayarighe. He has gone abroad = gha hungerire kuditunga dimweya
ABRUPT a. hasty, short in speech see SHORT (2) cp ABBREVIATE	-fūpipitha 4-2b	He was abrupt when he spoke to me = gha fupipithire ghopa gha ghambire nange.
ABSCISS n. pus, with swelling see BOIL (1)	thirūnda 7/8	An abscess formed on the tooth = thironda thina tughamana padiyegho

ABSCOND vi		
go away quietly -	kwómba	The storekeeper absconded with all the money =
to avoid detection		mughurithi ghanomba nomanyinga ghomaheya
be missing when wanted for		
questioning	-nyétuka	- see ESCAPE 1.
ABSENCE		
n.1. being away from a	-	His absence was not noticed (lit. they did not
place		know that he was not there) = mbadi ngaha
2. give leave of - to	-kūrura	dimuka eshi mbadiko kuya.
employee		
take leave of - a person	-shimba thithigherera	
see LEAVE (lit. take leave		
to go)	tho kuyēnda	
ABSENT		
a. being away from a	-	He is absent from the camp = mbadiko ka kamba.
place.		PROVERB: "If the honey-badger dies, honey grows
		by the way. It is left behind in its place" =
		"If the master is away, the people will do what
		they like" = "Kufa kwashanda kumena wiki
		mundhira. Ngambi kemo eshi dyango dyanyima."
ABSOLUTION n.		
1. formal release from	yishútura -/8	The judge gave him absolution from the sentence=
sentence, obligation	yo thitetera	mupanguri gha tongorire eshi gha shuture
	ndhango	muthitetera ndhango.
2. declaration of for-		
giveness of sins	yitōngora	The priest pronounced the absolution of his sins =
	thigherera -8	muruti gha tongorire eshi gha thigherere
	mahārwerō	maharwero ghenēi.
ABSORB vt		
1. swallow up- of small	-mīna	The big tribe has absorbed the smaller tribes =
by large. see SWALLOW		Diko dyodikuru dya minine mako ghomambiru
		thikuma
2. hold attention com-	-shōngomena	The people were absorbed by what he said = haguva
pletely. see ATTENTION	pōpahe	ha shongomenine popahe maywi gho gha gha ghambire
3. soak up, suck up	-hāta	see SOAK 1
liquid		
ABSTAIN vi		
1. keep oneself away from	kwīmeke 3-4a	He abstained from voting at the meeting = ghemekire
		kughayara mumbongerero.
2. refrain from strong		
drink	kwīmana	He abstained from strong drink = ghemanine
		muwara ghoghupata.
ABUNDANCE n		
1. plenty.	wīngi (lit. much, a)	There is an abundance of corn in the fields =
		mapya ghanemana mwengi.
2. wealth	wīngi (lit. much, a)	Botswana has an abundance of cattle = Botswana
see ABOUND, PLENTY		dya ikara nongombe dhodhingi
ABUSE vt		
(1) 1. misuse, put to bad use	-tēnditha noghūyi	He has abused his position to make money for
	4 - 2b	himself = gha tendithire noghuyi mōmano
	10. (-tēnda, r)	ghendi kuwana manyinga pithēndi
2. revile, hurl abuse,	-shōrera 6-(5b)	The passers by abused him (Mark 15:29) = "Ha-rupita
ridicule		ndhira ha mu shererire."
revile = curse	-kūya	"The robbers abused him" (Mark 15:32) =
		"Hedhi ha mu kuyire"
ABUSE n		
(2) 1. misuse	thitēnditha thothfiyi	
	7/8	
2. reviling	yishōrera -/8	
	makdya -/6	

- ABYSS n.
great deep, gorge ghudhūngi ghoghukūru
14/6 (14) "Darkness was over the face of the abyss" (Gen1;2)
see DEEP ditōndo 5/6 = "makokore gha karire pawiru dho ghudhungi
ghoghukuru "
- ACCENT n. gr.
mark of high pitch, m.t.
or stress on a syllable madhūndekero /6
- ACCEPT vt
1. consent to receive -tāwa The chief accepts your gifts = fumu ghana
gift, offer tawa kutambura thitapathoye
2. believe -tāwa I accept what you say = nina tawa ghoyi wa ghamba
3. agree to undertake work -tāwa He accepts the post at the school = ghana tawa
kutenda yirughana mushure.
4. take responsibility -tāwa The storekeeper accepted his cheque = mughurithi
for, agree to meet gha tawire kambapira kwendi komanyinga
see AGREE
- ACCEPTABLE a
1. worth accepting -tāwa The terms you offer are acceptable to me =
mayindha ghayirughana gho gha muna tapa
nina gha tawa.
2. pleasing (lit. 'sweet') -tōwara (a.ghutōwi) This gift is very acceptable = thitapa thi nina
thi towara.
3. welcome -tāmbura You have made yourself acceptable here =
(lit. 'receive') ngaghu ku tenditha ghothinda ku kutambura pano
- ACCESS n
1. approach mahēnyeneno /6 They made an access road to the villages =
see APPROACH (2) ndhirá dho ha tendire ndhira dho kuhenyena ku pepi
kuhenyena 10/6 nomaghumbo.
2. right to approach - kōna kuhenyena The councillors have the right of access to the
a person vi -kōna kuhenyena chief = haka kashumba ha kona kuhenyena
kukwendi fumu.
- ACCIDENT n.
1. unexpected happening ghúte 14/6 (14) I met him by accident - na hanganine nendi
see CHANCE (1) noghute
2. mishap thimiyātuka 7/8 He has met with a serious accident = nga wana
vi. have an - -myātuka nothimiyatuka thothiyi
- ACCLAIM vt
1. applaud loudly, with -hūmwerera 66-14 The people acclaimed the hunters as they returned =
voice haguva ha humwererire hashani hopa hana na
see APPLAUD with hands -kānderera 66-14 kumu kudighumbo.
2. hail - as winner, -kúgha The tribe acclaimed him chief = Diko dina mu
saviour kughu eshi fumu.
- ACCLAMATION n.
shout of applause kahūmuhūmu 12/13 They received the news with acclamation =
ha tamburire mbudhi nokahumuhumu
- ACCOMMODATE vt
1. oblige. -yáka I will accommodate you by letting you use this
land = fanyí na ku yake kukuthighera dipya
di ghu di rughanithe
2. receive as guest in -tāmbura He accommodated the doctor when he came = gha
house. see LODGE tamburire nganga mundhugho dhendi ghopa
gha neyire
- ACCOMMODATION n.
see LODGINGS

ACCOMPANY vt

- | | | |
|---|-------------------|--|
| 1. go a short way with departing guest
see GO with | -thindekedha 5-2a | "Abraham accompanied them to start them on their way" (Gen.18;16) = "Abraham gha wa thindekedhire kuwamonitha mundhira dhawo." |
| 2. go with a person to a place | -túra | He accompanied you to Gomare = gha ku turire noye kuGomare. |
| 3. attend chief | -táta | The councillor accompanied the chief to the village = muka kashumba gha katatire fumu kudighumbo. |
| 4. make animal go with others. | -pákerera 66-13 | He made the black ox accompany the other cattle = gha pakererire hove. Woviru nongombe dhimwe. |

ACCOMPLICE n

- | | | |
|---|--------------|--|
| (junior) partner in crime
(lit. 'supporter') | muváteri 1/2 | The police arrested him as the thief's accomplice = hamaporithi ha mukwatire yoyishi muvateri ghomwidhi. |
|---|--------------|--|

ACCOMPLISH vt

- | | | |
|---|--------------------------------------|--|
| 1. fulfil, realise, effect
see ACHIEVE | -kōna -tēnda
(lit. be able to do) | He has accomplished his purpose = gha konine kutenda yighayara yendi |
| 2. perform do
see PERFORM | -tēnda | He has accomplished what you asked him = gha tendire thinu ghothi wa mu kumberire. |
| 3. complete | -māna | He has accomplished the whole task = gha manine yirughana yoyihe. |
| 4. finish
see FINISH 2 | -manitha 4-2b | They accomplished their task in five days = ha manithire yirughana ya wo mumayuwa ghokwoko |

ACCORD n.

- | | | |
|--|---|---|
| 1. with one -, consent
w.phrr see AGREE | kukuyúva wahéya
(lit. understanding each other, all) | With one accord they got up and went = kukuywa waheya ha pindukire ha yende |
| 2. of ones' own -, assent | ghothinda
(lit. of oneself) | "The gate opened to them of its own accord." (Acts 12.10) = "rubati royikuvo ha ru yandhurukire rwa thinda" |

ACCORDING adv

- | | | |
|----------------------------|-------------|--|
| 1. to, in proportion to | mú | I will pay him according to the work that he has done = fanyí na mu fute muyirughana ghoyi gha tendire. |
| 2. in accordance with | shika kenge | "He rose again according to the Scriptures" = "Gha vumbekire karo shika kenge Rukwaro ro Kupongoka" |
| 3. -to, on the evidence of | shika kenge | According to Makoya, you were in the yard at that time = shika kenge maywi gha Mukoya, wa kakarire mudirapa muravedhe ruya |

ACCOUNT xi

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| (1) 1. regard as, consider to be. see CONSIDER 2 | -gháyara eshi(that) | "We account him worthy of death" (Mark 14;64)
Tuna ghayara eshi gha roghera kufa" |
| 2. for, give reckoning of money | -tōngwera 14-23
(lit. declare it) | "Give an account of your stewardship" (Lukel6.2)
="Ghu ni tongwere yirughana yoye |
| 3. explain the cause of, -for. see ANSWER (2) 6 | -dimukitha 4-2b
(lit. cause to know) | How do you account for your absence last night?
=ngepi ghuna tu dimukitha eshi mbadi nga ghu kara kuno ghuthiku peghundha ? |

ACCOUNT n.

- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| (2) 1. reckoning of money | mbapira 10/6
(10) | Keep an account of the money you spend = tjange mbapira dhomanyinga eshi wa fute. |
| record of goods bought in store | mukúdi
3/10(4) | Buy on account = ghuranga mumukúdi |
| goods given out on - | mukúdikúdi 3/10(4) | |
| 2. report of happening, person's description. | thithimwetedha
(syn. mbúdhí, 7/8 in this sense) | "Many writers have drawn up an account of the events. (Luke 1;1) = "Natjangi hohengi ha tendire yithimwetedha yoyikarapa." |

ACCOUNT (cont)

3. with prep on - of, for . the sake of	pakatji, mukátji kó	I did this on account of you = na thi tendire pakatji koye.
on no -, not at all see SAKE	mu kupira muráandu	"On no account are you to take my son back there." (Gen.24;6) = "Mu kupira murandu wa kuhuthera mwanange munyima ko."
ACCURATE a. exactly right.	thoshēmwa pópahe (lit. 'true right completely')	His accounts are accurate = kutjanga kwendi komambapira dhomanyinga gha rogha popahe
ACCURSED a. lying under a curse see CURSE n - person	thikúto thinéngena mu 7/8 (lit. 'a curse enters into') múka thikúto 1/2	"Accursed shall be the ground on your account" (Gen.3;17) = "Thikuto thirengana mumuye mukatji koye."
ACCUSATION n. charge of an offence	thínu thomuráandu 7/8 marúnderero /6	"What accusation bring you against this man?" (John 18.29) = "Thinu munye thomurandu ghothi muna mu retera ghoyu munu?" "Over his head was written his accusation" (Math.27;37) = "Kuwiru dhomutwi wendi ha mu tjangera marunderero ghendi."
ACCUSE vt 1. charge with offence	-rúndera 6-5b	"The high priests accused him of many things." (Mark 15:3) = "Haruti hohakuru ha mu runderire yoyingi thikuma."
2. find fault see FAULT 3	-héta	They watched him closely that they might accuse him = ha mu kengakengire wangu ha mu hete.
3. blame	-ghámbera 6-5b	He accused me of causing things to go wrong = gha ni ghamberire eshi na tendire yinu yi yende ghuyi.
ACCUSED n. person charged person blamed	murúndethi syn murúnderi 1/2 mughámberi 1/2	Person faulted MUHÉTI 1/2 Defendant in case MUTHÉKI
ACCUSER n. person making charge person finding fault person bringing case against another. plaintiff	muka kurúndera 1 muka kuhéta 1 múka kuthékitha 1	
ACCUSTOM vt. usu. pass used to doing a thing, arch. be wont to do	-twáyera	"He was accustomed to go into the Synagogue on the Sabbath Day" (Luke 4.16) = "Gha twayerire kwingena muSabata muSinagoge."
ACHE vi. suffer continuous pain	-rēnga	I have toothache = diyegho dyange dina kurenga.
ACHIEVE vt. 1. accomplish, carry out see ACCOMPLISH 2. acquire, get. 3. attain an object see ATTAIN 1	-kóna-tēnda -wána -kwáterera 66-15 mayénditho	He has achieved his purpose = gha konine kutenda yighayara yendi. He achieved recognition for his work = gha wanine kundandama koyirughana yendi. You have achieved success in your work = wa kwatererire mayenditho muyirughana yoye
ACID a. sour	ghuháhu	This fruit has an acid taste = dighumi dya kara nomuyereko gho ghuhahu.

ACKNOWLEDGE vt.

1. admit to be true
see ADMIT, RECOGNISE -mōna eshi
ghoshēmwa
2. own person as someone -tāwa
3. recognise person's
authority -tāwa
4. express appreciation of -kúgha
5. declare to have received
- eg. letter -tōngora

I acknowledge the truth of your words. =
nina mono eshi maywi ghoye gho gha ghuna
kutongora ghoshemwa
The man acknowledged the stranger as his son. =
mukafumu gha tawire eshi mugenda ne mwanendi
The people acknowledged him as their chief =
haguva ha mu tawire eshi fumuawo
The chief acknowledged his service to the
tribe = fumu gha kughire yinu ghoyi gha
tenderire diko

I acknowledge receiving your message = nina
kutongora eshi nina tambura thiraghathoye

ACQUAINT vt.

1. make person aware of -tōngwera 14-23
2. familiarise oneself -tōngora ghothinda
3. know personally about -dīmuka

I acquainted him with the truth = na mu tongwerire
yoshemwa
I acquainted myself with what had happened =
na tongorire nothinda noyinu ghoyi ya karire
I am acquainted with him = kudimuka na ku mu
dimuka

ACQUAINTANCE n.

- person whom one knows mundámbo 1/2

ACQUIESCE vi.

1. agree without saying so -rōndonona 99-15
2. -in, accept decision -tāwa

Saul acquiesced in Stephen's death = Saulus
gha rondononire thiwana muyifa yaStefanus
He acquiesced in the council's decision =
gha tawire mbanguro dhongotha

ACQUIRE vi

1. gain for oneself -mōna
2. come into possession of -mūna
3. win a reputation -wāna

He acquired money by catching and selling fish =
gha monine manyinga no kukwata thi no ku thi
ghuritha
He has acquired a field = nga munu dipya
You have acquired a good reputation = wa
wanine dikuto dyodiwa

ACQUISITION n

1. act of acquiring thi tēnda tho thimūna
7/8
2. thing acquired thimūna 7/8

ACQUIT vt.

- declare person innocent
of crime -ghátura 6-(21)

The judge acquitted him of the crime = mupanguri
gha mu ghaturire murandu

ACQUITTAL n.

- freedom from charge by
court maghátwero /6

ACRE n.

- piece of tilled or enclosed
land thírwa

ACROSS adv.

1. forming a cross at
right angles kumbádi dho
2. (come) into contact
with. w.v. -hángana nó
3. (run) from side to side, kudhámbo dhú
4. on the other side of kudhámbo diya

There is a boundary line drawn across the road
= ko ghudi muyindhi ghoghu hana fundu kumbadi
dhondhira

We came across a lion = twa hanganine nonyime
He ran across the road = ghana tjiri kudhambo
dhondhira
He is now across the border = ghana kumu koho
kudhambo diya dhomururwani

ACT n.			
(1) 1. deed, thing done	thitenda 7/8		
2. law, decree	veta 10/6 (10)		
ACT vt & i			
(2) 1. take part in play	-temununa 99-14	He acted the part of an old man = gha temununine mukuru.	
(lit. imitate)	-tenda	Ha has acted generously = nga tendi nomutjima dhodhikuru	
2. behave.	-tenda	Will you act as interpreter? = a ghuna tendi yira mupirurindi?	
serve	-tenda		
do a thing, carry it out	-tenda	When I hear from you, I will act = ghopa nina yuvu kukwoye, fanyi na kutende	
ACTIVE			
a. energetic, hardworking	ghutoghoro	He is very active in building the school =	
vi.be-	ghuva =lazy) - toghoro(17)	mutoghoro thikura no kughumba thoshure	
ACTUAL			
a. the very same, real	ghoshemwa	This is the actual man who stole the money =	
		yo murume ghoshemwa ghoyu ngedha manyinga	
ACUTE			
a. 1.sharp - of pain	tjitju	The pain in my side is acute = thishwama mumutara wange ne tjitju.	
2.sharp, keen - of senses	ghutwe	His hearing is acute = mayuvitho ghendi ne ghutwe	
ADAMANT			
a. stubborn in refusing requests	ghunyete mu kushwena	He was adamant in refusing to come = gha karire ghunyete mu kushwena kwiya kuno	
ADAPT vt			
make thing suitable for a purpose	-nungekera 36-4a5a	He adapted his tool to do the job = gha nungekerire thiruganitho thendi eshi gha tende thirugana	
ADD vt			
join one thing to another	-pakerera 66-15	They have added more poles to the roofing of the hut = ngaha pakerera yitondo yinwe yo kughumbitha kondhugho	
see JOIN			
- piece by piece,	-nungekera 36-4a 5c	They have added the poles piece by piece = ngaha nungekera yipindhi yoyitondo	
join one thing to another (-nunga,r=join)			
-to length, increase length-wedherera 66-14		Add another yard to the length of the cloth = wedherere mbandwa dhinwe kughure ghodyo dikehe	
(2=administer syn -nungura 6-5c			
vi.-up,-together figures in arithmetic	-paka p8 m.t.	Add up this sum = pakere thivarero thi	
-that, state further	-ninga karo	He added that he would send the money soon = ghana ningi karo eshi tamba gha kutumithe manyinga	
ADDER n			
poisonous snake			
- night -	mudhi 3/10 (4)		
slow moving, swift			
striking -			
puff-	thipidi 7/8		
ADDICT vt but usu.pass.			
given over to,enslaved to	-shwahura	He is addicted to drink = mutahwa gha kushwahura	
be in the habit of	3. -hura(2 faithful)	He is addicted to frequenting the drink-shop =	
1. fruit 4)		gha hora kughatwayera kumanweno.	

- ADDITION** n.
the counting up of figures. *matārerero* -/6 a M T yipākapo, 8
phr in-to, as well as *peghūru dho* He stole money in addition to food =
prep. *ngedhi manyinga pēghuru dhoyidya.*
- ADDRESS** vt.
(1) 1. speak to (with) *-ghāmba no* The headman addressed the people of the village
= *nduraghumbo gha ghambire nawaguva hodighumbo.*
2.-letter, write destination
on cover *-tjānga* (write name
and village of person who
will receive letter) Just let me address this letter = *ni thighe*
ni tjange dina nodighumbo dyomunu ghoyu gha
ka tambure mbapira dhi.
- ADDRESS**
(2) n. destination written on
letter cover *aderēshi*
(E) 1a (9)/6(9)
- ADEPT**
a. skillful in a particular
way. *ghundōndoro* He is adept at thatching = *ghundondoro gho kupamera*
- ADEQUATE**
a. sufficient, enough *-yērana* There is adequate binding to finish the roof =
see ENOUGH *ko thidi ngothi dhodhingi dho kuyerana kumanitha*
kupamera
- ADHIRE** vi
stick fast to -substance *-kākatera* 26- The dressing is still adhering to the wound =
see **CLEAVE**, **STICK** *thihina ne shime tha kakaterera pathitombo*
fig. stick fast to -
teaching, opinion of person-*tānara* "They were adhering to the apostles' teaching"
(Acts 2;42) = *ha tanarire muyihonga yawapostoli*
- ADHERENCE** n.
place where substance sticks *makākaterero* -/6
- ADHERENT** n.
one who sticks to group, person, teaching *muka kutānara* 1/2
- ADJACENT**
a. lying near, touching, adjoining. *kukuhāta no* His field is adjacent to mine = *dipya dyendi*
dya kukukata nodipya dyange
- ADJECTIVE** n.gr.
word belonging to and describing noun *mt-*
fāndodīnashīngononi 10/6 (10)
- ADJOURN** vt.
1. put off meeting or break
it off to resume later *kwīmeka* 3-4a The chief adjourned the meeting till the
following day = *fumu ghemekire mbongarero*
kate diyuwa dyo kuranda ko.
vi 2. change place of meeting *-yēnda* (lit.go)ku Let us adjourn to the other village and meet
there = *tu yende ku dighumbo dimwe eshi tu kuhangane*
porotji kuya
- ADJUDICATE** vt(vi)
judge-competition, claims, and give views. *-pāngura* He asked him to adjudicate the school choirs =
see **JUDGE** (2) 1 *gha mu kumberire ku kupangura makonga gho*
hakakwimba homashure
- ADJURE** vt
charge on oath - *-kwēdhera* 6-5b "I adjure you by the living God to tell us"
to do, say *(Math. 26;63) = "Na ku kwedhera popa Nyambi*
see **OATH**. 1, **SWEAR** 1 *ghomuyumi ghu tu tongware"*

- ADJUST vt.**
 1. put in order, arrange. -rúramitha 4-2b They have adjusted the goods on the shelves
 see ARRANGE at the store = ngaha ruramitha yitere payikungu
 yomitambo muthitora.
 2. adapt to a purpose -nūngekera You will adjust your lessons to fit the syllabus
 36-4a5a of instructions = fianyi mu nungekere yikuhonga
 ye nu kurughana nothiyedhekera thothikuhonga
- ADMINISTER vt**
 1. manage affairs -yénditha 4-2b He administered the resettlement of the people
 = gna yéndithire kughumbaghumba karo waguva.
 2. dispense justice 1.-wēdherera 66-13 The magistrate administers the law = mupanguri
 (2.=add, increase) ghana wedherera veta.
- ADMINISTRATION n.**
 1. management of affairs mayénditho gho
 yirughana -6
 2. dispensing of justice mawēdhero veta -6
- ADMINISTRATOR n.**
 1. one who manages affairs. muyéndithéri 1/2
 2. one who dispenses justice muwēdheri 1/2
- ADMIRABLE a.**
 1. surprisingly good -rōghera He has become quite admirable at growing
 (op káteha = lit. millet = gha rogherire thikuma kumenitha
 express pleasure at what a person is doing -sets) mahangu.
 2. excellent, surpassing others -pfterera 66-15 She is an admirable teacher = mitiri gho kupiterera.
- ADMIRATION n.**
 looking at with pleasure yishámberera /8
- ADMIRE vt**
 express admiration of -shámberera 66-14 He secretly admires the chief's daughter = ghana
 shamberera thikuma noghudhindo mwana fumu.
- ADMISSION n. of ADMIT**
 1. being admitted to a group matáwedhero -6 They have applied for an admission to the
 society = ngaha kumbira matawedhero kuma -
 kuwaneno.
 2. acknowledgment of guilt mashwághithero
 gho muránda 6
- ADMIT vt**
 1. allow entrance to group place -táwedha 5-2a He admitted the stranger into the house =
 (-tawa, r) gha tawedhire mugenda mundhugho dhendi
 vi. 2. acknowledge, accept as true -mōna ashi I admit the truth of your words = nina mono
 ghoshémwa eshi maywi ghoye gho gha ghuna kutongora
 see ACKNOWLEDGE ghoshemwa
- ADMONISH vt**
 1. urge person to do -thíneneka I strictly admonished him to repay the money
 = na mu thinenekire eshi gha fute manyinga
 see URGE munyima
 2. warn-of a thing -thónyena I admonished him of the consequences of his folly
 (-thonya, r) = na mu thonyenine mu ghoyi ghoghuyero wendi.
 see WARN 1. (take person aside and -)
- ADMONITION n. of ADMONISH**
 1. urging thithíneneka 7/8
 2. warning thithónyena 7/8
 3. rebuke. thishínga 7/8 see Lecture 2, REBUKE 1

ADOLESCENT n.

when girl becomes a woman -hōrama (2.crack(2)2)3

syn. 2 -pētama, 3(1-bend). (Sound made by old women at the time) tukádikádi 13. see PUBERTY

ADOPT vt

1. take as relation eg. -ccn-shimba
2. choose to accept as one's own -tōrora

I am adopting this child as my son = nina kushimba mwanuke yu shika mwanange.
the council adopted the councillor's plan = ngotha dha tororire thiyereka tho muka ngotha.

ADOPTION n. of ADOPT

1. - of son, thishimba 7/8
2. choice, thitorora 7/8

ADORE vt.

1. respect and love much. see RESPECT (2)2 (r.-fūmana=famous)
2. worship as God see BLESS

fūmadheka 3-24
no-hāka thikūma
-kōtamena 9-5b

This man adored his mother = mukafumu yu gha fūmadhekire no gha hakire thikuma nyina

"When they saw the young child...., they fell down and adored him." (Math. 2:11)
= "hopa ha monine mwanuke...ha tongamenine no kumukotamena."

ADORATION n.

worship - of God makōtameno -6

ADORN vt.

1. beautify oneself with ornaments

kukutēnda wūwa
(ref 7)

She adorned herself with a necklace and bangles

- dress oneself smartly

kukuyēnga (ref.7)

She adorned her daughter for her wedding = gha tendire mwanendi wuwa wenga wendi.

2. - another
- dress another smartly

-tēnda/ wūwa
-yēngitha 4-2b

ADULT n.

grow up, mature person mukuru 1/2

UDULTERATE vt.

- lower quality by mixing, eg. milk with water
- cp. DILUTE (lit. 'increase')

-kūritha 4-2b

This milk which you are selling has been adulterated = manhwē: gha gho gha ghuna kughuritha ngaha kuritha nomeyu.

ADULTERER n. (or ADULTERESS)

one who has committed adultery muhōnderi 1/2

ADULTERY n.

- act of married person sleeping with one of other sex. ruhōnda 11/6(11)
- child of - mwāna gho ruhōnda 1/2
- vi. to commit - -hōndapa 1-(17)

ADVANCE (1)

- vt. 1. - promote person to office.
2. - pay money before due.
- vi. 3. move forward.

-yēyura munu
kwanano
-fūta manyanga
ghōkubadi ruwēdhe
-yēnda kughūtho

(lit. 'lift up')

4. fig. -in wisdom and favour

-wēdherera 66-13

They advanced against the enemy = ha yendire kughutho kwawafire
"Jesus advanced in wisdom and favour with God and man" (Luke 2:52) = "Jesus gha wedhererire mughunyananyi nomuyitowara naNyambi nomunu."

- ADVANCE (2) n.
moving forward, progress yiyenda yo
kughútho /8
- ADVANTAGE n
1. better position,
superiority. -pítera (-pita,r) Perched in the tree, he had the advantage of seeing
his enemy approach = kokunyotama pamute
ghothitondo, gha pite, rire ñore wendi yoyi
gha konine kumumona ghana kumu.
2. take -, get better of
a person unfairly -wána thínu He is trying to take advantage of your kindness
thimwe = ghana kuyereka kuwana thinu thimwe kukwoye
(lit. 'get something') yoyi ghowe n̄ wuwa mutjima.
- ADVENTURE n. (1)
1. risk, danger ghuréma 14/6 (14)
2. bold undertaking thiyéreka 7/8
- ADVENTURE vt. (2)
1. -life, ran risk -
see RISK
2. dare to undertake kuyéreka They adventured into lion country = ha yerekire
mumuthitu gho ghu gha karire nyime.
- ADVERB n.
word qualifying adj., v., or
another adv. ñāndotōngora m.t. 10/6
- ADVERSARY n.
enemy ñāre 10/2
- ADVERSITY n.
condition of misfortune. ghuthighana 14/6 A Christian husband and wife stick together in
se SORROW 1 (14) prosperity and adversity = murume gho kuyeka
nomunduwendi wa ha ha-kristi hana kukakatera
pofotji mumaruvedhe ghofiyaghudhi noghuthighana
- ADVICE n.
counsel thivúrukitha 7/8
- ADVISE vt.
offer counsel to -vúrukitha 4-2b I advise you to leave him alone = nina ku vurukitha
see COUNSEL; cp DIRECT 2 (-vúruka,r) oshi ghu mu thighe pithendi
- ADVOCATE n.
one who pleads for another, mughāmboreri 1/2 We have an Advocate, Jesus, who intercedes
or one who speaks for a for us before God = twa kara naMughāmboreri,
proposal mughāmboreri 1/2 Jesusi, ghoyu gha tu kanderera paghutho
dhaNyambi
- ADZE n. (1)
tool for cutting surface diyāyo 5(pl. irr.)
of wood māyo 6)
small mutendére 3/10(4)
- ADZE vt. (2)
cut with adze -yāwa
strip bark when begin to -pūta see STRIP (1) 3
- AERODROME n.
ground for aeroplanes rupāre 11/6 (11) airstrip - kapāre 12/13
- AEROPLANE n.
flying machine dinyānyī
(lit. large bird) 5/6
berūni
(Swa, Shak) la(9)/6(9)
shākawānda la(9)/6(9)
- jet -

AFAR adv. from, at a distance	ko kayenda	"The tax-gatherer stood afar off" (Lukel8;13) = "Muka kuteritha ghemanine ko kayenda."
AFFAIR n. 1. thing to be done 2. concern, matter pl.3. matters of common concern (=-causing talk);(causing argument)	thirughana 7/8 thitenda 7/8 dimbwambwa 5/6 dikanyi-Sets 5/6	I will see this affair through = fanyi na kumaneene thirughana thi. That is my affair, not yours. = thitenda thiya ne thange, mbadi thoye. They discussed their family affairs = ha ghambire dimbwambwa dyodirapa dyawo.
AFFECT vt. (1) 1. play a part, showing unnatural behaviour 2. pretend to feel	-nenda kukuyuva 7	His way of walking was very affected = ndhira dhendi dho kuyenda pa muveghana nenda thikuma He affects sympathy for the rich widow = kura kukuyuva ghana kukuyuva nomudithi ghoghushwi
AFFECT vt. (2) 1. attack - as disease 2. stirred in feelings ('lit. there came out tears')	-kwata -shwagha maruhodhi ('lit. there came out tears')	No-one here has been affected by the disease = mbadiko munu pano ghoyu thina kwata thikorwa thi. When she saw her son again, she was visibly affected = ghopa gha monine mwanendi karo, gha shwaghire maruhodhi.
AFFECTATION n. unnatural behaviour	runenditho 11/6 (11)	
AFFECTION n. love	ruhakitho 11/6(11)	
AFFECTIONATE a. loving	-haka	
AFFINITY n. relations fellow-member of tribe fellow-feeling, mutual liking. vi	hapa 1/2 murume ghodiko 1/2 kukuhaka 7	
AFFIRM vt confirm	-tawa thikuma	He affirmed the truth of the woman's words = gha tawire thikuma shemwa ghomaywi ghomukadhi
AFFIRMATIVE n. answering yes. gr. positive, indicative tense	kemo (or 'EE') positifi -mt (E) 1a(9)/6(9) muhingotánara -mt 3/10(4)	He answered in the affirmative = gha huthire eshi kemo.
AFFIX (1)vt. press stamp on envelope add signature to paper	-kwatitha 2b -tjanga dina nomunwe	
AFFIX (2) n.gr. addition to word to alter meaning	thinunga -mt. 7/8	
AFFLICT vt. cause distress, pain to another wilfully pass. cause suffering, of disease	-dhinga -yuvitha tjitju 4-2b	They afflicted the slaves with whips = ha dhingire hapika nomatjupa He is afflicted with a dangerous disease = thikorwa thothingama kuyuvitha thina kuyuvitha tjitju.

AFFLICTION n. distress, misery, pain	yidhinga /8 tjiftju 10/6(10)	
AFFLUENT a. wealthy	1. kúshwa (2. go to place)	see RICH 1
AFFORD vt. 1. (with can) be rich enough -to do- 2.(of things) yield supply of	--kára no ghúshwi (lit. has the wealth) kwimena 9-5c (kwima,r)	He can afford to pay the full price = gha kara noghushwi ghoyi ghana kufuta mughuro ghoghube These trees will afford us much fruit = yitondo yi fanyai yi twimena yima yoyingi
AFFRAY. n. fighting, causing breach of peace riot = public disorder	yfta(fighting) /8 thihárafu anyitha thawagúva 7/8	
AFFRONT vt. 1. insult publicly see INSULT 2. offend another's self respect.	-túka -shédha	You have affronted our visitor = ngaghu tuku mugenda wetu He has affronted this young woman by his behaviour = nga shedhi mustengeteya yu mu kupira dikuto
AFLOAT adv. floating on surface of water-kámbarara	66-13	
AFOOT adv. stirring, moving about	nomapádhí	The whole camp was now affoot = hakaruyendo hahéya ha karire kého nomapadhi ghawo.
AFRAID pred. a. alarmed, frightened see ALARM, FRIGHTEN faint of heart	-yápitha (lit. cause to fear.) -tjimapal (16)	When they saw him they were afraid = ghopa ha mu monine, ha yapithire. "It is I, be not afraid." (Mark.6;50) = "Yame; mu tjimape.
AFRESH adv. anew, making fresh start see ANEW	ghoghúpya	
AFRICA n. SOUTH name of country	Áfrika ghoghucúma Suíd-Áfrika (Afr.)	la/-
AFTER prep. 1. (movement) -behind adv. - in pursuit of 2. (time) -follow after a person - next in turn - a lapse of time 3. (abstract)-in imitation of in spite of what happened -'after', as part of verb cong. 4. 'after' in time	munyima dho munyima dho munyima dho munyima dho munyima dho mú munyima munyima	She came directly after him = gheneya munyima dhendi. Run after him ! tjire munyima dhendi ! Enter! I will come after you = wingene! fanyai niye munyima dhoye After you with the soap! = munyima dhoye nomurora! After three months he returned home = munyima dho tughonda tuhata, gha hukire kudighumbo. "After this manner, pray."(Luke 11;2) = "Mundhira dhi mu raperere." After all, what does it matter? = munyima dhoyinu yoyihe ghoyi muna ka ghamba, ngepi yina kara ? Look after him = mu kengerere. She died after he went = ghana pu munyima ghana yendi.

R.C. WYNN.

AFTERBIRTH n. membrane covering foetus in womb.	thikūru 7/8 (of person) rūmba 11/6(11) (of animal)	(hom. thikūru = great w.n.cl. 7)
AFTERNOON n. period between two and three o'clock see DAY 2 syn. to start journey in -	thitēngeyūwa 7 thitēnguko 7 -fiowa	Just after midday = mwīru 3 In the afternoon = pathitēnguko. syn. pahōpu
AGAIN adv. once more, another time -and-, repeatedly now and-, occasionally back-, i.e. to first position	kāro kāro nokāro muruvēdhe noruvēdhe -hūthera kāro	Do it again = thi tende karo (lit. 'from time to time') "Put it back again" (i.e. hand inside cloak) Ex.4;7 = "thi huthere mo karo."
AGAINST prep. in opposition of (part of verb) contrary to (part of verb) (mū) sin - God -an object	kwā pā	You cannot fight against God = mbadi muna twetha kukañena Nyambi The wind was against them = mupepo wa shwenenine mumwawo "I have sinned against God" (Luke 15;21) = Na harura kwaNyambi. The ladder is against the wall = ruyegho ne runa yeghamena pamudhidhu.
AGE n. (length of life) be of age adult, mature old - -initiation for girls (generation)-i.e. about thirty years) (A long time) from all ages in all ages this present age	mukūru 1/2 ghukūru 14/ kuhōrama 15 hānahoka 2 -shwāgha kukārekāre pakārekāre muruvēdhe rūno	over age = mukurwana phr. What age is he? = ghadi nomighaka dhingatji ? From all ages until now, God has spoken = kushwagha kukarekare kate ko ruvedhe runo, Nyambi gha ghambire.
AGENDA n. matters for discussion	kōnda 12/13	
AGENT n. person acting for another	mutēndi 1/2	He is acting as my agent in this business = ghana kurughanena yira mutendi wange muthitenda thi.
AGGRAVATE vt. 1. make matters worse 2. irritate	-shēdha -nyēghenya	His visit aggravated the dispute = thihungera thendi tha shedhire fiando. He is a most aggravating person = munu gho kunyeghenya thikuma
AGGRESSIVE a. likes to fight all the time quarrelsome	mārwanāmvo kānwa, or -tōroranga murāndu ghoñānani	(lit. 'always choosing a cause for a quarrel')
AGILE a. moving quickly, nimbly, like monkey.	wāngu, yira shēko	He is very agile; he shot up that tree like a monkey = ghana yendi wanguwangu; nga dhini thitondo thiya yira shoko.
AGITATE vt. 1. move, shake see SHAKE	-nyūngitha 4-2b	The plunge of the hippo agitated the canoe = thidabwama thomvu tha nyungithire wato.

R.C. WYNNE.

AGITATE (cont)

2. disturb a person's feelings -ndũnduma see ALARM (2)2; UPSET 2
 3. stir up trouble see STIR 3,4 -dãdatha The men are agitating for better pay = harume hana kudadatha yitambura thikuma

AGITATION n.

1. shaking red. yinyũganyunga /8
 2.-of feelings mandũndumeneno /6
 3. stirring up of trouble madãdathero /6

AGITATOR n.

- one who stirs up trouble mudãdutheri 1/2

AGO a.

- (alw after n.) past, gone by -bita Ten years ago = mighaka dikumi ha pitire
 A short time ago = ruvedhe rorufupi rwa pitire
 adv. long - see SINCE -kãrekãre (red) He went away long ago = kare gha yendire
 long, long - diũruhũru (red) A very long time ago = karekare pamutango

AGONY n.

- great pain tjĩtju 10/6(10) He was suffering in agony when he died =
 thikũma gha nyandire mutjĩtju thikuma ghopa gha fire.

AGREE vi.

1. accept proposal to do a thing -tãwa I agree to another hut being built = nina tawa eshi ha ghumba ndhugho dhimwe
 see ACCEPT, APPROVE, ASSENT
 2. concur with what a person says; -tãwa I agree that what Dinyama says is true = nina tawa eshi Dinyama ghana kughamba na dhoshemwa
 confirm - see CONFIRM
 3.-get on together -tãwa The men cannot agree together in that village = harume mbadi wa kutawa haheya mudighumbo diya
 4.-in balancing accounts -tãwa The totals of your receipts and payments do not agree = yivarero yo manyinga gho gha ngaghu tambura no gho gha ngaghu futu mbadi yina tawa

AGREEMENT n.

1. mutual understanding thikwãtathana 7/8 We must come to an understanding about the running of the store = twa roghera kukuma kuthikwatathana mu kuyenditha kothitora.
 see UNDERSTANDING
 2. covenant. esp. in Bible between God and Israel thikwãtathana 7/8
 see COVENANT
 3. treaty, - between nations ndhũvadhano 10/6(10)
 4.-concurrence in opinion thitãwa 7/8

AGRICULTURE n.

- cultivation of soil ndjĩmi 10/6(10)

AGROUND adv.

- on the bottom in shallow water pa ghukãdami. Be careful! you may run the canoe aground!
 = kunge! ghu vughe wato paghukandami.

AHEAD adv.

1. in advance kughũtho They have gone ahead of us = ngaha piterera kughutho wetu.
 2. in line with way, followed kughũtho See! there are hippos ahead of us = mone! mvu kughutho wetu.
 3. straight forward kughũtho Go straight ahead; do not deviate = rurame kughutho; wa hambuka

R.C. WYNNE

- AID** (1) vt.
 1. help to do, see **HELP** -yáka They aided him in building the hut = ha mu yakire kughumba ndhugho.
 2. help to recover -yáka This medicine will aid you to get well = ghuwanga ghu fanyi ghu ku yake kupora
- AID** (2) n.
 help thiyáka 7/8 First aid to injured = thiyaka thomutango kwahaka kuremana.
 see **HELP** Financial aid = thiyaka thomanyinga
- AIM** vt. (1)
 1. direct blow (lit. try to hit') -yéreka-pámura He aimed at his chin = yerekire kupumura thindjumu thendi
 2. Point gun at -nóna He aimed at the kuju = gha nongire myu.
 raise gun to shoulder -kukuténeka 7 -From height at object on ground, with bow, gun = dhónóhóneka 3-4a
 to take
 vi.3. form plans -yéreka He is aiming at becoming chief = ghana kuyereka kukara fumu.
- AIM** n. (2)
 1. direction of blow, missile mayéreko /6
 2. design, purpose mayédhekero /6 syn. mt - matámbo, 6 - see **PURPOSE** (1)
- AIR** n. (1)
 1. (atmosphere)-we breathe mufu 3/
 free space overhead diwíru (or 'heaven, sky)
 open- unconfined space dyána 5/6 They went into the open air = ha shwaghire kudyana
 fresh - múnú ghoghutenda The sick man must have fresh air = muka kukorwa gha rogghera kutotha mufu ghoghutenda
 light wind, breeze mupépoghana 3/10
 (4)
- w.v. fill with -, inflate -yáaritha 4-2b He filled the football with air = gha yarithire buru ghokuthita nomufu.
 see **INFLATE**
- fig. 2. airs-affected behaviour**
 behaviour. dikúto dyo He gave himself affected airs = nga kupa dikuto
 see **AFFECT** (1) kunénditha 5/6 dyo kunénditha
 music, air, melody, tune dímbó 5/6
 (pl. mémbó)
- AIR** vt (2)
 clothes, put out to dry -yáneka I am going to air my clothes = fanyi ni yaneka yishupata yange
- AIRSTRIPE** n.
 see **AERODROME**
- AKIN** pred. a.
 1. related by blood gho díko They are akin (lit 'of same tribe') = haka díko
 dyofótji
 2. alike in character kukupítura In character they are akin = mungandji dhawo ha kupitwa mungandji wahoya
- ALACRITY** n.
 cheerful readiness wángu no kutúngitha
 adv. He answered with alacrity to my appeal for help = gha pirurira wangu no kutungitha thikanderera thange eshi ni yake
- ALARM** n. (1)
 see **WARNING** (1)
 warning of danger thithóryena
 thoghuréka 7/8

- ALARM vt. (2)**
 1. rouse to feeling of danger -yáþitha 4-2b The approach of the soldiers alarmed them = kuhenyena kawamashorondati ka wa yapithire.
 see WARN 1,3
 2. disturb, agitate, fill with fear -ndũnduma The coming of the giant alarmed him = kwiya komudhimbi ka ndũndumine
 see AGITATE, DISTURB
 3. startle person, eg. by roar of lion 1.-tũkuka Startle animal out of lair - yũkuka
 (2. dance)
 -, give the alert, eg. thieves nyũnyamitha 4-2b You gave the alarm to the thieves when we could arrest them = ghuna nyanyamitha haka widhi ngo tuna wa kwata
- ALARMIST n.**
 one who raises the alarm for the least cause muyáþithi 1/2
- ALAS int.**
 expressing grief, pity mĩwe !
- ALBINO n.**
 person with white skin, hair, and pink eyes hurt by the light ditũkatũka 5/6 (red) (n.b.) this is unnatural, due to lack of colouring pigmentation)
- ALERT a.**
 watchful, vigilant -kũngerera They kept on the alert for snakes = ha kengererire noka.
 quick, clever, in mind ghutĩari When I question the class, that boy..... has an alert mind = ghopa sho nepure mupato, mungaghu ya gha kara nodighano ghoghutari
 see WATCHFUL, CLEVER
- ALIEN a**
 not one's own, foreign ghugũnda Your ideas are alien to our customs = maghano ghoye gha ne ghuyenda kumihingo dhetu.
 n. foreigner mugũnda 1/2
- ALIENATE vt.**
 make an enemy of kukunyũgitha 4-7,2b You have alienated the villagers by your words. = ngaghu kunyũgitha haka dighumbo nomaywi ghoye
- ALIGHT vi. (1)**
 1. get down from lorry, dismount from horse -shũruka 3-4b
 2. come down to earth from air and settle -tũrera 6-5c
 or -, settle on branch of tree, - in this sense 2. -nyũtama (3) (1. sit 1)
 of big birds -ndjĩngama
 syn. -ngũngama
 continuously -tũraghera 15/6-11 (eg. 1 of flies on eyes; 2. of birds on ground where there is chaff)
- ALIGHT a. (2)**
 see BURN (1) 1
 lit. kindled, of fire -tũmbuka The fire is now alight = mudirowe ne kũga kutumbuka ghuna kutumbuka keho
- ALIGN vt.**
 place, lay in line -hĩtitha 4-2b Align these poles to cut them to the right length = hatithe yitondo yi eshi tu yi tete yi kuyedekere ghure wayo.
- ALIKE pred. a.**
 similar in quality, size, appearance etc. kukupitura 7. These two boys are exactly alike; they must be twins = hangaghu wa hawadi na ha kupitura; shemwa ha roghera eshi ne ho mayovu
 see APPEARANCE, SIMILARITY

ALIVE adv.			
1. living	-ghughumi	"Is the old man still alive?" (Gen 43;7) =	a mukuru shime mughami ndi ?
pred. a. still-and still there	thinarakara		
keep -	-páaritha 4-2b	He kept alive in the desert by eating locusts and wild honey = gha kuparithire muthikaka nodimba nowiki mumuthitu.	
coll. 2. quick and active	-túyura	Look alive ! and pull in the boat! =	tuyure! koke wato kumbambeko
3. swarming with	-yūmenena -		
syn.	pómbereera 66-13	That tree is alive with bees = thitondo	thiya ne thina pomberera muka
a. -with i.e. crawling inside	ghurōndodhi	The meat is alive with maggots = nyama dhi ne	ghurondodhi nomarongwandhi.
cp. CRAWL			
ALL a.			
(with n.)			
1. the entire	ghoghuhēya	He has been working all day = ghana kurughana	diyuwa dyodiheya
2.-the whole (of people)	hahēya -/2	All (men) are agreed = hahēya hana tawa	
(of things)	yoyihēya /8	They lost all = ha yongarithire yoyiheya	
adv. 3. completely, wholly	yoyihēya	She was dressed all in white = nga shupata	yishupata yoyikenu yirama yoyiheye
all right	shēmwa pópahe		
4. that is all (end of instructions)	pōdiyo pópahe		
ALLAY vt			
alleviate - pain, lessen ,	tépura	This medicine will allay the pain=	ghuwanga ghu fanyi ghu kutepure tjitju
relieve			
ALLEGATION n.			
statement (esp. one not proven)	thēko 7/8	There is no evidence to support this	allegation of misconduct = kadiko thine thinegha
		tho kushemwapitha thēko thi thodikuto dyodiya.	
ALLEGE vi			
put forward as argument, excuse	-tōngora	She alleges that she has come from a long distance = ghana tongora eshi ghana ka	shwagha ko kayenda thikuma
ALLEGIANCE n.			
1. duty of people to chief, government. vt.	-rōghera-tāwa	The people owe allegiance to the chief =	haguva hana roghera kutawa fumu.
2. loyalty, oath of- vi	kwēdha-kāra	Ministers have to swear allegiance to the president	= Hatendi hoghufumu ha roghera kwedha kukara
	shēmwa	shemwa kwaMutungi.	
ALLEGORY n.			
subject described in form of similar story	thifāneko 7/8	The story of Adam and Eve is an allegory of	Man's fall from Innocence = ditangu
(lit. 'picture')		dyaAdam naEfa ne thifaneko thoKuwa koMunu	kuGhukenu.
ALLEVIATE vt.			
see ALLAY above			
ALLIANCE n.			
league of mutual understanding between nations.	thikuyāva 7/8	The two tribes made an alliance to help each other if attacked = mako mawadi gha tendire	thikuyuwa kukuyaka hahēya ngeshi ha gha tathere
ALLOCATE vt.			
mark out land in area for person, object	-tōrora	The District Commissioner allocated land for each village = Muraghuri gha tororire ditunga	dighumbo nodighumbo.
see ASSIGN cp. ALLLOT (lit. 'chose')			

R.C. WYNN.

ALLOT vt.

share out by lot (lit. 'give') -tápa
see ASSIGN cp. ALLOCATE

The village council allotted acres of land
to each family = ngotha dhodighumbo dha
tapire yirwa yodipya dirapa nodirapa

ALLOTMENT n.

1. allotted share mápya ghágha
ha tápera /6

Each family cultivated their allotment = dirapa
kehe dino dya dimine mapya ghawo gha gha ha
taperire

2. small plot of land thirwa tho
for cultivation kudima 7/8

ALLOW vt.

1. permit person to do - thígha

I will allow you to use our donkey = fanyi na
ku thighere eshi wa rughanithe thidongi thetu

see PERMIT v.
2. give pocket money -tápa

The father allowed his son three rands' pocket
money at school = wihe gha pire mwanendi marandi
mahatu kurughanitha mushure

see POCKET MONEY
3. permit me to -thígha

Allow me to help you = ni thighé ni ku yake.

ALLUDE vi.

refer indirectly to -nínga

You allude to the missing money = ghuna ningi
manyinga gho kupira

ALLURE vt.

1. tempt -hōngaghura 15/6
(-hōnga,r) - 11
2. charm -shāamberera
thikúma 66-14
(lit. 'please much')

Eve allured Adam into eating the forbidden fruit
= Efa gha hongaghurire Adam eshi gha dye maghumi
gho kudhireka
She allured him with her beauty = gha mu
shambererire thikuma wuwa wendi.

ALLY vt. (1)

make alliance with -tēnda thikuyúva-
no

Israel allied with Egypt against Assyria =
Isaraela gha tendire thikuyuva no Agipito
ku Asiriya

ALLY (2)

country allied with ditūnga dyo
another kukuyúva 5/6

ALMIGHTY a.

all-powerful, esp of ghutānavu ghoghuhēya
God.

ALMOST adv.

very nearly mō mū
(alw. used at beg.
of sentence)

They have almost finished the work =
mo mu ha manithe yirughana.

ALMS n.pl.

gifts to help poor yitápa yawahépwe /8
to give -tápa kwawahépwe

ALONE pred. a.

by oneself - I alone yāme pithānge
person standing - mūna pithēndi
ghantēmana
leave - -thígha
walk about - -yēnda pithēndi
adv., only véne

He alone = yodye pithendi

A tree standing alone = thitondo pithatho thešana

Cut down these trees alone = tete yitondo yiya véne

ALONG adv.

1. over any part of length of, mū

He walked along the road = gha yendire mūna pithatho

prep. 2. to-with a person -yēnda mu.....
nomūna

He went along the road with his friend =
gha yendire mundhira nomūna wendi

R.C. WYNNE.

ALONG (cont)

3. all--all the time muruvédhe rorúhe I have been here all along = ngani kara kuno muruvédhe rorúhe.
4. go-with river stream mû He paddled along with the stream of the river = gha vughire mukapupo korware.
5. alongside, close to side of kumbádi dho He drew in his canoe alongside the river bank = gha vughire wato kumbadi dhodingengera dyorware

ALOOF adv.

- separate, apart, away from others kumbádi dho Why do you stand aloof from the dancers? = nye ghu memanena kumbadi dhawakakukina?
- pred. a. -see HOLD aloof

ALoud adv.

- able to be heard, not whispering kuwíru He stopped whispering and spoke aloud = gha thighire kuhonotera gho gha ghambire kuwíru

ALPHABET n.

- all letters used in writing a language yitjänga-rándathana /8
or álfabëti(e)-mt. la(9)/6(9)

ALREADY adv.

1. beforehand kàre They have already decided to depart = nga ha ghayara kare kuyenda
2. by this time, so early kàre kàre

ALSO adv

- besides, in addition to káro Surely you also are one of them = shemwa nowe gho wawo karo

ALTAR n.

- flat-topped stone or wooden block for offerings to God, esp. O.T. diyámbéro 5/6
- communion table (N.T.) altäre(E) la(9)/6(9)
matámbwero ghosakraménte /6

ALTER vi

1. change in character -pírura He has altered much since I saw him last = nga pírua thikuma ghopa nga ni mu monu ruvedhe ruya kadi kenge.
- vt.2. change position of things -pírura They have altered the position of goods in the store = nga ha pírua mémano ghoyitere muthitora

ALTERNATE vi

- interchange-of two people on a job 1. -píngadhana Let us alternate on this job; you work in the morning, I in the afternoon = tu kupingadhane kutenda thirughana thi; yowe rughane mumathikuthiku, yame nanyi na rughane runguro.

(2.meet 1; 3 cross (2)5)

(R-pinga=take another's place)

ALTERNATIVE n.

- choice of two things thitórora 7/8 You have the alternative of accepting or refusing = wa kara nothitorora tho kutawa endi tho kushwena
- a. see CHOICE

ALTHOUGH conj.

- though, notwithstanding the fact that ngámbe kuna kára He finished first although he began last = gha manithire pamutango ngambi kuna kara gha varekire paguhura
- see THOUGH

ALTOGETHER adv.

- all together, everybody as one hahéya Pull on the rope altogether = mu koke mughodhi mwaheya
Altogether there are a hundred bales in the store = kodi yitunga difere popaheya muthitora

ALWAYS adv.

- at all times kehépa + v.ext9 He is always at home = kehépa mudighumbo ghana karanga

AMALGAMATE vi. unite, of groups	-pákerera 66-15	The village amalgamated because they were small = maghumbo gha pakereerire yoyi gha karire mambiru
AMAZE vt. astonish, fill with wonder see ASTONISH, MARVEL, SURPRISE pass. be astonished, amazed	-tétukitha 4-2b syn. yóvoritha 4-2b -tétuka syn. -yóvora	He amazed everyone with his skill = gha yovorithire keheyu noghundondoro wendi "When they saw the paralysed man stand up, they were amazed" (Mark 2;12) = "hopa ha monine muremi ghana kwimana , ha yovorire"
AMAZEMENT n. astonishment, wonder	thiyóvora syn. thitétuka 7/8	
AMBASSADOR n. country's representative in another state	mughámbereri 1/2	
AMBIGUOUSLY adv. of doubtful meaning, uncertainly see VAGUE	no-dhíra -shémwapitha	He spoke so ambiguously that I did not know what he wanted me to do = nga ghamba no kudhira kushemwapitha kongeno eshi mbadi ngani dimuka ghothi nga shana shoni thi tende
AMBITION n. 1. strong desire to become, do see DESIRE (2) 2. object of strong desire	marúmbero gho ngcámu /6 thínu tho marúmbero gho ngcámu 7/8	He has the ambition to become a builder gha kara nomarumbero ghongcamu eshi gha kukare mughumbi. He has now achieved his ambition = nga kwaterera keho thinu ghothi gha rumberire thikuma
AMBITIOUS a having a strong desire to be	i.d.	He is ambitious to become chief = ghufumu ghana ko' direra. (id. lit. "for the lordship he cries." N.B. same idiom in Sets.)
AMBULANCE n. hospital conveyance	thihaúto thothipángero 7/8	
AMBUSH (1) n. lying in wait, esp. of soldiers	marárero /6	
AMBUSH vi (2) sleep and wait for person for long time. hide and wait at time enemy expected see WAIT lie down and wait hide in-to kill vt. attack from - taking by surprise	-rárera 6-5c kúndera 6-5c or fúumanena 99-5c kúndamena 89-5c -rókokerera, ko-shwágha mumarárero 5b	The guerrillas lay in ambush = haka homuthitu ha rárerire They lay in ambush at the expected time = ha furumanenine muruvédhe ghoru ha wa kengererire. They lay in ambush to kill them = ha ndamenine kuwapagha They ambushed them = ha wa rokokerire ko kushwagha

AMELIORATE vt. improve, make better	-tēnda hásha	The opening of the store has ameliorated the people's lot = kuyandhuruka kothitora nga kutendi hasha moyo ghowaguva
AMEN int. so be it	ámēn. (lit) kukáre kēmo	
AMENABLE a. responsive. -	-pírura	You will find him amenable to any reasonable proposal = fiányi mu mu wane eshi gha pirure kuthiyedhckeritho thimwe thoghunongo.
AMEND vt. 1. give up bad ways. see ABANDON	-hōmbitha 4-2b	Amend your ways and be wise = mu shombithe mayira ghenu ghomayi mwa kara ghunyananyi.
vi. arch. 2. Get better in health vt. 3. correct written error see CORRECT	-kára hásha -rōghitha 4-2b	"At what hour did he begin to amend?" (John 4:52) A ruvedhe munye nga vareka kukara hasha? You must amend those figures before I can accept your accounts = wa kona kuroghitha yivarero yi ghoku badi na tawa mambapira ghamanyinga ghoye.
AMENDS npl. compensation, reparation see COMPENSATE	-húthera	You must make amends for allowing my cattle to stray = wa roghera kuhuthera yoyishi ngaghu thighi ngombe dhange dha yongare.
AMID, AMIDST prep. in the middle of	or mukátji kó pakátji kó	
AMISS adv. wrongly. esp. take - see OFFENCE	-páta (be angry) (-péna-Sets)	He has taken what you said amiss = ghana kupata yoyi ghothi ngaghu ghamba (lit 'he is angry because of what you said')
AMMUNITION n. bullets for guns gunpowder	maghōnga ghoghūta/6 muthiri, 3/ syn. funda /10	
AMONG, AMONGST prep. 1. within a great mass see MIDST 2. in comparison with	pakátji kó ku	"Blessed art thou among woman" (Luke 1:28) = "wa fighera pakatji kawambuyama." "What are they among so many?" (John 6:9) ="Eyi ne yinye kwawaguyahohengi?"
AMOUNT (1) vi total, add up to see TOTAL	-pákerera 66-15	This sum amounts to twenty-five pounds = thivarero thi ne pa kuthipakerera mapondo makumi mawadi nokwoko
AMOUNT (2) n 1. total of money, sum 2. quantity	thivárero 7/8 a. wingi (lit. 'many')	He can afford to pay the full amount = gha kara noghushwi ghoyi ghana kufuta thivarero thothihe.
AMPLE a. quite enough, plenty	wingi	The supplies in the store are ample for another week = yitere muthitora fiányi ya kukare yingi nomuthivike thimwe

R.C. WYNNE.

AMPUTATE vt. cut off limb	-téta	I will have to amputate your leg to save your life = na roghera kuteta dighuru dyoye mu kuparitha moyo ghoye
AMULET n. charm worn round neck to protect from evil	péku 10/8	see CHARM (1)
AMUSE vt. entertain, enjoy	-yákura	The young people amused themselves by dancing = hanu hohambiru ha kuyakurire eshi ha kine.
AMUSEMENT n. entertainment, enjoyment	mayákwerero /6	(exclamation of -, oh ho !) Hóró !
ANAEMIA lack of blood, pale skin	-yipíra yo manyínga ghomuyiréma /8	(lit. 'lack of blood in the body')
ANATHEMA n. an accursed thing an accursed person see ACCURSED, CURSE	thikúto 7/8 múka thikúto 1/2	
ANCESTOR n. forefather on father's or mother's side spirit of - food set aside for-(pl) part of animal for-elders pole on which headman places offering	mughunyakudya 1 múdhímu 1/2 thiyámbotho 7 thidhíra 7/8 thinyáku 7/8	(pl. Hanyakúdyá)(2) To set aside food for = -tēnekera kumbádi dha wadhímu <u>or</u> -páka muyámbo ghawadhímu
ANCHOR n. log securing boat in river iron hook from stern for mooring boat	thitóndo tho kuwāngera 7/8 thighāngitho 7/8	
ANCIENT a. belonging to times long past very old	kárekáre thikúrukúru	
ANCIENTS npl. men of - times	ha ho kárekáre (1)/2	
AND conj. which connects words, phrases conj. which connects sentences	nó kého	N.B. sentences connected by 'and' in English sometimes lack it in Thimbukushu
ANEW adv. again afresh, making new start see AFRESH	káro gho ghúpya	Let us start anew = tu vareke karo let us start anew (afresh) = tu vareke ghoghupya

R.C. WYNNE.

- ANGEL n.
messenger of God
(lit. mutumi wa nyambi) muṅgeli 1/2
- ANGER (1) n.
fury, rage, strong
displeasure
see APPEASE, CALM ghupáta 14/6(14) Esau cried out in bitter anger against Jacob =
Esawe gha ghandukire noghupata ghoghururu
kwaJakobe
- ANGER (2) vt.
make angry -pátitha 2b He angered him =gha mu patithire
- make very angry, when
person seems to be rogue -shákaritha 2b - as when man to whom you lend denies all knowledge
of thing lent .
- ANGLE (1) n.
space between two lines
meeting in point. dishónga. mt.
5/6
- ANGLE (2) vi.
fish with hook and
bait -róvera
- ANGRY a. vi
furious, enraged, be-with¹ -páta (2.lock) He is angry with him = ghana pata nendi
hence ANGRILY, look-at -kénge no
ghupáta He looked angrily at you = gha kengire noghupata
kukoye
speak-against -ghámaba no
ghupáta They spoke angrily against him = ha ghambire
noghupata kukwendi
get angry, of man with
another's child -ndjōngora
- ANGUISH n.
acute pain of mind vi. -yúmbuka mutjima
or body 3- 4b "A great cry of anguish went up " (Ex12;30)
= "thidiro thothikuru tho kuyumbuka mutjima
ho themanganyine."
- ANIMAL n.
four-footed living
creature thiyáma 7/8 big - diyáma dyoshokúru, 5/6
domestic - thiyáma tho
dighúmbo 7/8
flesh-eating - thishéreka 7/8
grass-eating - thiyama tho
kúnya muhónyi 7/8
- of prey thipóghu 7/8
- ANKLE n.
-bone dīngóngotji 5/6
- ANKLET n.
ornament for ankle thipáma syn.
thiyónge 7/8 (made of copper)
- ANNEX vt.
take possession of another
country -kwátera thimuna
2b.5a After the war, India annexed Goa = munyima
dhowvo, India gha kwaterire Goa thimuna
- ANNIHILATE vt.
wipe out completely,
leaving nothing
see DESTROY, BLOT out. -yipitha pópáhe
1b-2b The Yoruba nearly annihilated the Ibo^s =
mo mu na -Yoruba ha yipithire popáhe ha-Ibo

ANNOUNCE vt.			
1. proclaim	-tōngora	The chief announced his son's betrothal =	fumu gha tongorire kwandekera komwanendi.
see PROCLAIM			
vt. 2. make known a person's coming	vi. -dīmukitha 4-2b	He announced that the President was coming =	gha dimukithire eshi Mutungi kwiya ghana kwiya
ANNOY vt.			
1. get irritated, vex	-nyēghenya	He irritates me with his petty complaints =	gha na nyeghenyine noyitokota yoyimbirumbiru.
2. -joking relative.	2. -hēnda (1=peel)		
3. harass persistently, -person	-shēdhaghura 15/6-17 (r-shēdha)	The children kept on annoying him when he was trying to work =	hanuke ha mu shedhaghurire ghopa gha yerekire kurughana.
meddle with, interfere	-rūnga	They annoyed him so that he had to keep on stopping his work =	ha mu rungire wangu gha rogherire kwimeka kwimeka yirughana yendi
see BOTHER, IRRITATE, PLSTER, TROUBLE, VEX, WORRY.			
ANNOYANCE n.			
1. irritation, vexation	thinyēghenya 7/8		
2. harassment interference	mashēdhaghuro /6 marūngero /6		
ANNUAL a.			
yearly; of each year(lit)	ghomwāka kehēghu		
ANNUALLY adv.			
year by year	mwāka nomwāka		
ANNUL vt.			
1. abolish, repeal a law	-dhingununa 99-15	The Government has annulled the law of hanging for murder =	furumendi nga dhingununa veta dho kureka thipagha
2. declare unlawful, invalid	or -tōngora kovēta	The judge annulled the man's marriage with that woman =	mupanguri gha tongorire wenga ghomurume nomukadhi ya kukara kuveta.
ANJOINT vt.			
1. rub ointment, oil on body	-wētha(lit apply, rub)	see RUB 2	
apply medicine to eyes	-thireka twiho		
see SMAR, -pour out lavishly	-tjimweka	She anointed his head with ointment(Mark 14. 31)	= gha tjimwekire thikuwetha pamutwi wendi
2. -pour oil on head esp. at religious ceremony-baptism, ordination, coronation.	(2=to be a little drunk)	(hom.-tēvera = listen)	
n. 3. "The Lord's anointed"	1. terēra(r.pour)6-5c muterēri waFamu 1/2	"Zadok the priest took the horn of oil and anointed Solomon King."(1Kings 1;39)	=Zadoka muruti gha kwatire runyiya nomaghadhi gho gha tererire Solomoni fumu"
n. an anointed person	muterēri(muwēthi) 1/2	N.B. oil for anointing chiefs extracted from 'mono' (plane-tree)	
ANOINTING n			
act of anointing a person	thiterēro(thiwētho) 7/8		
ANOTHER n.			
a different person	ghumwēya 14	"Are you he that should come or shall we look for another?" (Math 11;3)	= "Yowe yu wa yuka eshi ghana kwiya ndi, endi tu taterere ghumwēya?"

ANT-HILL, ANT-HEAP, n.
mound over ants' nest
low - syn.
clay of -

ANT-HILL n. moistened - earth pipe of -	dyūmbe 5/6 1. dikwina 5/6 (2=hole)	(n.b. this is made into clods to throw at walls and stick to them)
ANTAGONISM n. active opposition (to) (against)	ñānani /10/(6)	There is much antagonism in the village to this proposal = ko thidi ñānani dhodhingi thikuma mudighumbo kuthiyedhekeritho thi.
ANTAGONIST n. opponent adversary, enemy	mukafñānani 1/2 ñōre 1a/2	
ANTELOPE n. deer-like class of animal roan - sable -	mēngo 1a(9)/2(9),3(9) mengo yo mukiku mengo yo mwiru	(pl. mupēngo, iri.) (n.b. brown-grey, horns sweep back in single curve) (n.b. males black, females dark-brown; large, swept back horns)
ANTICIPATE vt. 1. act beforehand to confuse another forestall 2. realise beforehand see PROVIDE for 3. expect to happen see EXPECTATION.	-wānekedha 35-4a, 2a (r.-wāna = find) -kēnga kughutho -kēngerera 66-13	They anticipated the enemy's attack by attacking them first = ha wānekedhire thitathera thawafire gho wa ha rokokire pamutango. You should have anticipated that you would need more grass for the thatching = wa konine kukenga kughutho eshi wa roghera kushana mubonyi ghowingi thikuma gho kupamaritha I anticipated that this would happen = ngani kengerera eshi ñanyi tha kukare
ANTLER n. horn of antelope	runyifa 11/6(11)	see HORN
ANTONYM gr. n. word meaning opposite to another or	ñāndotjaka mt. /10/6 (10) antonime(E) mt. 1a(9)/6(9)	
ANVIL n. blacksmith's block for hammering metal	túrange 13	
ANXIETY n. uneasiness, concern see UNEASINESS, CONCERN(2)3-	mathirerekédho /6	
ANXIOUS a. s. troubled, uneasy see TROUBLE, UNEASY 2. Wanting very much 3. causing worry see WORRY	thirerekedha -shāna thikuma -thirerekedha	"Be not anxious about what you shall eat" (Math 6:25) = Mwa thirerekedha muyi sho mu dye." I am anxious to finish ploughing before the rain comes = nina kushana thikuma eshi na ku manithe kudima zhoku badi mvura ghana roko I have been very anxious about your health = na thirerekedhire thikuma muthipora thoye
ANY a. (with questions) some (in neg. sentence)	ghūmwe ghūmwe	Have you any eggs? = a wa kara nomahonyi ghamwe ndi ? I cannot see any people here = mbadi na mero waguva hamwe jano

ANY (cont)		
pron. anyone, anybody	kehēno	There is not anyone in the house = mbadiko keheno
any person		mundhugho
adv. (with comp) in any way	kehe thino	Is that any better ? = a thiya ne hashashandi ?
ANYHOW adv.		
1. in any way whatever	mundhirá kehe thino	He has done this work just anyhow = nga thi tendi thirughana thi mundhira kehe thino
2. in any case	ngāmbi kēhōne	Anyhow, what does it matter ? = ngambi kehōne, ngepi pa na kara ?
ANYTHING pron.		
thing of any kind	kehe thino	
n. - else	(neg) kehe thino thinu kehēthi thinu	I have not anything to give you = mbadi tho kukupa Is there anything else you want ? = a ko thidi kehethi thinu eshi ghuna kushana ?
ANYWHERE adv.		
in any place	kehe kuno	I cannot find him anywhere = mbadi shoni mu wane kehe kuno
APART adv.		
1. aside from	kumbādi dho	He took him apart from the crowd = gha mu tundithire kumbadi dhombunga.
2. alone (lit. 'by myself')	pithānge	"Let us go apart into a lonely place" (Mark 6;31)
(lit. 'by ourselves')	pithētu	"tu yende pithetu kudyango dyodingungwa"
3. set-aside; reserve for purpose	-tēnekera kumbādi dho	(N.B. this means to set apart food for the ancestors each day)
APIECE adv.		
severally, to each one	ghūmwē noghūmwē	He gave them five pounds apiece = gha wa taperire
see SEVERALLY, EACH		ghumwe noghumwe mapondo kwoko.
APOLOGIZE vi		
make an apology	-kwātera no thikwēra 26-5b	He apologised for his bad behaviour = gha kwaterire nothikwera mudikuto dyendi dyodiyi
APOLOGY n		
1. admitting an offence	thikwēra 7/8	
2. explanation of behaviour	ditādhi 3/6	I owe you an apology for what happened yesterday = ngani ku korota ditadhi ghothi nga thi kara peghundha
APOSTLE n.		
messenger	mutūmi 1/2	
one of twelve chosen by Christ	apóstoli 1a /2	
APOTHECARY n.		
chemist, dispenser	mutāpi ghoghuwānga	(lit. 'giver of medicine')
APPARENT a.		
clear, obvious	ghurédhu kumóna (lit. 'easy to see')	It is apparent to me how he entered the house = ghuredhu kumona eshi ngepi ngenena mundhugho
APPARENTLY adv.		
seemingly	kunínga yira	Apparently this is where he was last night = kuninga yira ghothi ne dyango ghodi nga kara ghuthiku peghundha.

APPEAL vi.(1)

1. appeal to higher authority

-kánderera 66-14
(-kánda, r. lit.-
clasp hands)

He appealed to the chief against the verdict of his village council = nga kanderera fumu kumbanguro dhongotha dhodighumbo dyendi.

2. call witness to confirm words

kwithera 46-5b

I appeal to Makoya to confirm what I have said = nina kwithera Makoya eshi gha tawe ghoyi ngani ghamba

3. make earnest request

-kúmbera
(r-kwítha=call)

I appealed to him for help = ngani mu kumbera eshi ni yake

4. prove attractive to

-di....ku
(lit 'is it...to)

How does this idea appeal to you ? = ngepi thidi thiyedhekera thi kukoye ?

APPEAL n.(2)

- to higher authority

thikánderera 7/8

APPEAR vi

1. become apparent, able to be seen, of sun
see thing for first time

kúva
-yúmuka 3-4b

The sun appeared above the horizon = diyuwa dya vire

"He enquired of them at what time the star appeared" = "nga bapura kukwawo eshi ruvedhe munye ditungwedhi dya yumukire kukwawo"

- see person-in distance, first glimpse syn. túnderera 66-13

At that moment, they saw him appear in the distance = mudiho diya dyoruvédhe, ha mu monine gha tunderere ko kayenda

- 2.-suddenly, causing another to run

-yúkuka

The wounded buffalo appeared suddenly behind me = nyatji ghoyitombo gha yukukire no kudhira kudimuka munyima dhenge.

- see STARTLE 2.
-, of an angel, revealing himself

no-dhíra-dímuka
-hókoka 3-4b

"An angel of the Lord appeared to him in a dream" (Math. 1:20) = "Gha mu hokokire muengeli waNyambi muthirota".

- (r. reveal)
3. formally present oneself,

kukumónitha
refl.4-7,2b

You will have to appear before the magistrate = wa roghera kukumónitha kwamupanguri

- put in appearance, show oneself

4. seem

-nínga yíra

He appears to be ill = kuninga yira ghana kukorwa

APPEARANCE n.

1. act of appearing

thimónara 7

2. similarity in -

yikupítura
muyimónara 8

They look much the same to me in appearance = hana kupitura thikuma muyimónara yawo.

- see ALIKE, SIMILARITY

- id.3. to all appearances, seemingly

-nínga yíra
or(muyimónara
yoyihe)

To all appearances there is peace in the village = kuninga yira ko thidi thiraro mudighumbo (or muyimónara yoyihe ko thidi thiraro mudighumbo)

APPEASE vt.

1. quieten angry person
see CALM, v.

-pwítha ghúpata
4-2b

"I will appease my brother Esau with a present" (Gen. 32:20) = "Nanyi napwithe ghupata wamukurwange Esawe nohitapera".

- become cool after anger

syn.

-huritha 4-2b

- make person not act in anger

-ghóghomoka 3-4b
-thíghaghura
15/6-11

APPEASE vt (cont)		
2. soothe noisy child	-thighunitha 4-2b	She appeased her crying baby, saying, 'sugar!'
see SOOTHE	(-tjighuna, r= cut)	= nga tjighunitha kambututu kandi ko kudira ngamu ningi eshi 'shuka.'
3. satisfy appetite	kwikutitha 4-2b	He threw a bone to appease the hungry dog = gha mwagharire thishokora thonyama ko kwikutitha mbwa gho kufa ndhara
APPETITE n.		
hunger	ndhāra /10	He has a depraved appetite as if he can eat hyena meat = gha kara nondhara dho dhina shamuka ngo gha kona kudya nyama yodimbungu.
depraved -	ndhara dho -shāmuka /10	
w.v. whet one's -	-pīndutha ndhāra 5-2b	This fat morsal will whet your appetite for the meal = ndhindu dhi dhodhinunu fanyī dha kupinduthe ndhara dhoye kudya yidya.
arouse desire to eat		
APPLAUD vt.		
show approval		
see ACCLAIM	-kūgha	The people applauded the hunders as they returned = hagurwa ha kughire hashani hopa hana na kumu kudighumbo
vi. approve loudly as by clapping hands	-hūmwerera 66-14	They applauded, clapping their hands = ha humwererire, ha kandererire nonyara dhawo.
APPLAUSE n.		
loud approval	yihūmwerera /8	Their applause could be heard in all the villages around = yihumwerera yawo ha kona kuyiyuva mumaghumbo ghomahe
APPLICANT n.		
one who applies for job	mukūmberī 1/2	
APPLICATION n.		
1. written request for a job	thikūmbera 7/8	I have put in an application for the job = ngani ngeneka thikumbera thoyirughana.
2. putting of one thing on another	thipākitho 7/8	Leave this application on the wound = thighe thipakitho thi thothihina pathitombo.
APPLY vt.		
1. put in for job	-kūmbera	Many people have applied for the job = hanu hohengi ngaha kumbera yirughana yi.
vi. 2.-put dressing on wound	-pāka pa	Apply this dressing to the wound = paka thihina thi pathitombo.
3.-ask for help see APPEAL	-kūmbera	I applied to him for help = ngani mu kumbera eshi ni yake.
4. set oneself to do a task	kukutāpera ghothinda 6-7,5b	Apply yourself to the job in hand = ku tapere ghothinda kutenda thirughana thi muruvēdhe runo.
APPOINT vt.		
1. fix times, place	-pāka	The chief appointed the meeting for sunrise = fumu nga paka mbongarero kukara mumayera ghodigwa.
2. nominate person for post	-hūrura(hom. -hūrura=strip 1.)	The President has appointed him district commissioner = Mutungi nga mu hurura eshi muraghuri
APPOINTMENT n.		
1. time and place that has been fixed	mapākithero /6	He failed to keep the appointment = nga kangera kupangura mapakithero

APPOINTMENT (cont)		
keep an -	-púngura mapákithero	
make an -	-pákera mapákithero	
2. nomination	thihúrura 7/8	
APPORTION vt.		
allot, assign as share	-tápa	The village council apportioned acres of land to each family = ngotha dhodighumbo dha tapire yirwa yodipya dirapa nodirapa
see ALLOT		
APPRECIATE vi		
esteem highly	-yédhekera thikúma	I gratefully appreciate what you have done = nina yédhekera thikuma no nina kutjera ndangi thikuma ghoyi ngaghu tendi.
	no-tjéra ndangi	
APPREHEND vt.		
1. arrest, seize	-kwāta	They apprehended the thief in the very act = ngaha kwata mwidhi mu kwidha.
		I apprenend your meaning now = kuyura nina kuyura ghoyi ghuna kuninga,
2. understand, perceive	-yúva	
	-thírerekedha	
APPREHENSIVE		
fearful of what may happen	-thírerekedha	
uneasy.		
see ANXIOUS, TROUBLE(1)2		I am apprehensive that that wounded buffalo will cause trouble = nina thirerekedha eshi nyatjiya yo thitombo hanyi dha kusé dhaghure.
APPRENTICE n.		
one who learns a trade	muka kukuhóngá 1/2	
APPROACH vi (1)		
1. come near to	-hēnyena ku 9-5b	They approached the man's hut = ha henyenine kundhugho dhomurume.
about to arrive see ARRIVE	-kāvera	
vt. 2.- stealthily	-hōndaghedha	He approached the lion stealthily = nga hondaghedha nyime.
3. right to -, have access to	-kōna -hēnyena ku	The councillors have the right to approach the chief = haka kashumba ha kona kuhēnyena kukwendi funu.
see ACCESS		
APPROACH n. (2)		
1. act of approaching	mahēnyeneno /6	
2. access, passage	ndhirá dho	see ACCESS
	kuhēnyena 10/6	
APPROBATION n.		
approval		
see APPROVAL	matáwero /6	
APPROPRIATE a. (1)		
suitable, good	wúwa	Is this an appropriate moment to discuss the matter? = a ghoru na ruvedhe woruwa kukuyonga dighana ndi ?
see SUITABLE, APT		
APPROPRIATE vt. (2)		
1. take possession of	-kwátera-mūna 6-5a	He has appropriated the money for his own ends = nga kwatera manyinga gha muna muyighayara yendi.
2. set aside for a purpose	-ténékera	
	kumbáid dho 6-5a	Let us appropriate this money for the enlarging of the store = tu tenekere manyinga gha kumbadi dho twa kukuritha thitora
APPROVAL n.		
approbation.		
see APPROBATION	matáwero 1/6	He brought the young woman for the fathers' approval = gha retire mushengeteya ko kushana matawero ghawatate.

APPROVE vt.			
1. agree to, confirm	- táwa		The chief approved the council's decision = fumu gha tawire mbanguro dhongotha.
vi. accept proposal see ACCEPT, AGREE	-táwa		I approve of another hut being built = nina tawa eshi ha ghumbe ndhugho dhimwe
APPROXIMATELY adv.			
nearly, about	nopépi no		There is approximately twenty pounds in the till = ko thidi nopepi noyipondo makumi mawadi muthikesha thongcamu.
APPROXIMATE vi.			
come near to	-henyena ku		The sum of money approximates to twenty pounds = thivarero thomanyinga tha benyena kuyipondo makumi mawadi.
APRIL n.			
fourth month of year cp. DISAPPEAR 3	thinarúnguna 7/8		(This means that, at this time of roasting mealies, it does not matter if the food gets burnt when roasting, because there is so much food)
APRON n.			
small, front (skin)skirt	dikéhe dyo mupándo 5/6		(Sets- makávi)
strings, hanging as girls	yindjéru djéru /8		
APT a.			
1. suitable, fitting	wúwa		You gave an apt description of that man = ngaghu tapa thitongonona thotheiwa.
see APPROPRIATE, SUITABLE.			thomurume yu
3. quick in mind	ghutári		He is an apt pupil = muka kukuhonga ghoghutari.
APTITUDE n.			
natural ability talent-see TALENT	ghundōndoro 14/6(14)		He has an aptitude for building = mundondoro mu kughumba
ARBITER n.			
1. judge-see JUDGE (1)	mupánguri 1/2		
2. one appointed by two	mupánguri 1/2		The people of the two villages appointed Pithatho as arbiter of their dispute =maguva ho maghumbo mawadi ha hururire Pithatho mupanguri ghoñando dhawo
ARBITRARY a.			
acting solely on own opinion	-píra thikúpi nawamwéya (lit=lacking advice from others)		Some people said he had made an arbitrary decision = hanu hamwe ho ha ningire eshi gha tendirc mbanguro dho dhi dhina piri thikupi nawaguva
ARBITRATE vi.			
decide by arbiter	-pángura		
ARBITRATOR n.			
same as ARBITER, which SEE			
ARCHER n.			
one shooting with bow and arrows	múka kukóndha makáng o		
ARDENT a.			
eager, zealous, fervent syn	-twáhara -shákara		
AREA n.			
tract, region of land between two boundaries	thiko 7/8		i.e. within a district.

ARGUE vi. reason for or against person, thing	-kānana	The fathers are arguing about how many cattle they should offer for the girl = hatate kukukānana hana kukukanana eshi dthingatji ngombe shoha tape kwamushengeteya
- together	kukukānana 7	
ARGUMENT n. reason put forward	ñānani /10/6 (10)	Their argument is that the girl is rather plain. = ñanani dhawo ne eshi mushengeteya ne mbedi muwa thikuma.
w.v. defeat in - syn.	dikānyi 5/6 -piterera 66-15	He defeated him in argument = gha mu pitererire mudikanyi
ARGUMENTATIVE a. arguing much;-person	mūnu gho dikānyi 1/2	
ARID a. 1. dry, parched, of land see DRY	-kukūta	The land is arid for want of rain = ditunga ne dinafu yoyishi mbadiko mvura
2. barren, not bearing plants see BARREN	kūfa(lit. 'dead')	
ARIGHT adv. rightly - see RIGHTLY	no ghuhunga noghunongo	"You have judged aright" (Luke 7;44) = ngaghu ghatara no ghuhunga
ARISE vi 1. arch. rise, get up see RISE rise against	-pinduka -pindukera 6-5b	"A great prophet has arisen among us" (Luke 7;16) = muporofiti ghomukuru nga pinduka mukatji ketu Let us arise against the enemy = tu pindukere kwawāñore.
-, of sounds	-pinduka	The sound of weeping arose from the hut = muyongo gho kudira gha pindukire mundhugho
vi. 2. from the dead see RISE	-pinduka mwa wāfu	He arose from the dead on the third day = gha pindukire mwawafu mudiyuwa dyoghuhatu.
ARITHMETIC n. study of numbers	mt-yivārero /8	(lit. 'sums')
ARK n. box, wooden chest - of Covenant, containing tablets of Jewish Law -of Tabernacle (tent)	thikēsha 7/8 thikēsha tho thikwātathana 7/8 thikēsha tho thīshashāra 7/8 ndhūgho dho kukāmbarara 10/6	(lit. 'the house that floats')
-of the flood, Noah's -		
ARM n. (1) upper limb from hand to shoulder	dyōko (pl mōko) 5 /6	small arm thōko 7/8
arm-pit, i.e. hollow under - at shoulder	ngwāpa 10/6	
arm-hole in garment id.	mudyōko dyo hēmbi)(lit. 'in the arm of the shirt')
forearm bone from hand to elbow	thishokēra tho dyōko 7/8	
infant -in arms (one too young to walk)	mwīre (pl hemwire,) 1/2	So, to enfold a child in arms
vv with 'arm, arms' carry under	-pēteka mungwāpa 3-4a	-kwātera mwīre 6-5c -shāmatera
	Fill arms full of things	

ARM (1) (cont)			
raise the -	-yéyura dyōko		
run to, with open arms	-tjira no	He ran to him with open arms = gha tjirire	
walk-in-	-ghonyōona mōko	kukwendi gha ghonyoone moko.	
withdraw -	-kwātera ku mōko ghāwo 6-5c		
	-pweyura	He withdrew his arm just before the snake	
		struck = nga pweyura dyoko dyendi vere	
fold arms		ghoku noka badi ghana mu humu	
hold man fast with arms	kukutumbata -7		
	-dhova.		
ARM (2)			
weapon see WEAPON	thitwa 7/8		
ARM (3) pass. vi.			
be armed, have weapons	-rēka	An armed man = mukareki ghoghuta	
	-ghūta	The man was armed = murume ne gha kurekire ghuta	
ARM-CHAIR n.			
chair with side supports	thipura thomōko 7/8		
ARMOUR n.			
defensive covering to protect body	thingādekitho 7/8	N.B. put on -	kukushūpeka refl. 7
		take off -	kukushūpura refl. 7
ARMOUR-BEARER n.			
one carrying armour for another	mūka kushimba 1/2 thingādekitho		
ARMS n.pl			
weapons of defence	yikughāmwenitha /8	bear -	-shimba yitwa
weapons of offence	yitwa or		
see WEAPON	yitātheritho /8		
ARMY n.			
body of soldiers	hakāmvo /2		
main body of -	mutara pakātji kahakāmvo 3/10(4)		
left and right wing, flank	mutāra_gho rumōho		
rearguard of -	no mutāra gho rūdyo 3/10(4)		
w.vu set - in battle	mutāra gho munyima 3/10(4)	-dha hakāmyo	
see ABOUT	kwimeka mōyo		
see ABOUT for -	-kūta	see HIRE (2)	
AROUND adv.			
1. on every side	mumitāra dhodhihe	They closed in all around him = ha mu dhingire	
see SIDE		mu mitara dhodhihe.	
everywhere see DIRECTION	kōkuhe	I see elephants all around = nina mono ndhovu kokuhe	
here and there see HERE	kūno no kūya	She gathered things around the hut = gha kundurire	
		tuteghana kuno nokuya.	
2. vv with 'around'			
be all - 1.	-dhinga	She awoke to see elephants all around her =	
see ABOUT	(2=coil rope)	gha pindukire gha mone ndhovu ghodhi dha mu dhingire	
go - once in a circle	-dhinguruka 16/22	They went round in circles in the 'bush' =	
		ha dhingurukadhingurukire mumuthitu.	
look all - see ABOUT	-thētaghuka		
stand -	kōkuhe 11	I looked all around me = na thetaghukire kokuhe	
	kwimana pofōtji-	They were standing around the kill = nga	
	-dhinga	hemana pofotji ko kudhinga thipagha	
sit -	-hūngumana-	They sat around the fire = ha hungumanine ko	
	dhinga	kudhinga mudiyo	

AROUSE vt.			
awaken, stir into being	-píndutha(pindura,r) 5-2b	He aroused them to put out the fire = gha wa pinduthire ha dhimithe mudiro	
ARRANGE vt.			
1. put in order, adjust	-rūramitha 4-2b	The children arranged their classroom nicely for the D.C.'s visit = hanuke ha ruramithire ndhugho dhawo dhoshure muthihungera thamuraghuri	
see ADJUST			
2. make plans beforehand,	-rōgheka 3-4a	The teacher arranged the programme with them =	
settle order of events		mitiri wawo gha roghokire veta nawo	
3. give instructions	-tāpa matāghero	He arranged for the accused to be present =	
		gha tapire mataghero eshi murundethi gha kare po.	
4. come to agreement with	-kūma thitāwa no	He arranged with him about building the hut =	
		gha kumine thitawa nendi eshi ngepi gha kughumbe ndhugho	
ARRAY vt.			
1. position soldiers	kwīmekā hakāmvo	He arrayed his forces against the enemy =	
see POSITION, DISPCSE		ghemekire hakamvo wendi ha ka rwithe hañore	
2. dress smartly, adorn	kukuyénga 7	She arrayed herself in her finery = nga kuyénga	
oneself		makehe	
see DRESS, ADORN			
3. dress another smartly	-yéngitha 4-2b	She has arrayed her daughter for her wedding	
		= nga yéngitha mwanendi wenga wendi	
ARREARS n. pl. prep. phr.;			
behind with payments'	munyīma dho yifūta	You are in arrears in paying your debt = ghowe ne munyima dho yifuta; mbadi ghuna manitha murandu wa kuthighara	
ARREST vt. (1)			
1. seize person on authority			
of law	-kwāta	Arrest that man! = kwate murume yu !	
2.-catch attention	-kwāta mashōn-		
see ATTENTION	gomēno	A movement in the bushes arrested his attention = thinyunguma muyipumbu gha kwatire mashong- omeno ghendi.	
ARREST n. (2)			
seizure of person on legal			
authority	thikwāta 7/8	You are under arrest! = ghowe ne kushi dhothikwata !	
ARRIVAL n.			
1. act of reaching end	makūmeno /6	They cheered his arrival at the village = ha humwerire makumeno ghendi mudighumbo.	
of journey		His sudden arrival threw his enemies into confusion = thihokoka theni tho kudhira kudimuka tha yerupithire hañorewendi.	
2. appearance on the scene	thihókoka 7/8	Have you met the new arrival ? = a ghaghu	
		hangana nomuka kukuma ghomupya ndi ? (N.B.	
3. person just arrived	muka kukūma 1/2	'A new arrival is called 'mugenda' i.e. stranger, for the first two days; 'mundamoo' i.e. 'neighbour', for next five)	
ARRIVE vi.			
1. reach end of journey	-kūma		
about to - or	-kāvera		
run fast to reach	-kaverera		
journey's end	66-14		
-home	-kuma kudighumbo		
-of a guest	-thikera 6-5a		
2.-be brought of things	-kūma	Have the supplies arrived ? = a yitere ne nga yi kumu ndi ?	
3.-of time	-kūma	The time has arrived for us to leave = ruvedhe rwetu ne ngaru kumu ro kuyenda.	

ARROGANT a.

1. overbearing, masterful kúkukuteka shika
 hekudya 3-7-4a
 see DOMINEERING
 2. presumptuous kúkumona
 see BOLD
 3. proud, see PROUD dishānga
 syn.dihúna

An overbearing person = muka kukukuteka shika
 hekudya
 (lit. 'behaving like a lord')

ARROW n.

1. printed weapon shot from bow dísho 5/6
 (generic term)
 dikángo 5/6
 (wood)
 with metal point ndámbe 10/6(10)
 (metal point)
 used by bushmen kángcá 12/13
 feathers attached to quiver for carrying arrows ghusháko 14/6(14)
 small iron tip of - ghúta gho
 ngcúnu 14/6
 ghútwe gho
 ndámbe 14/6(14)
 blunt - dikángo dyo dífu 5/6
 poisoned - dikángo dyo
 dihungu 5/6
 to prepare poison - -vunga ghuhungu
 gho dikángo

ART n.

- skill in doing things well
 nicely ghundōndoro 14/6(14)
 cunning red.ideo. ghurīngirīngi 14/6(14)

ARTFUL a.

- cunning ghurīngirīngi

AS adv.

- as soon as pā I came as soon as I could = nga niya pa ngani kono
 as good as wúwa yíra You are as good as he = ghowe ne muwa yira yodye.
 as though (conj) -nínga yíra He spoke as though he knew you = gha ghambire kuninga yira gha kudimukire
 'as' to connect two happenings at the same time. ghoku shime As he was still coming, his son died = ghoku shime gha keye, mwanendi gho nga fu.
 that, who, which, (rel.pron) shika syn yíra I had the same experience as you = na karire nothakarapa thofotji shika wa tendire.

ASCEND vi.

1. go up, come up -dhina "Who shall ascend the mount of the Lord?" (Ps.24;3)
 2. rise up (of sun) -kámbeke 3-4a "Yidye gha kudhina dirundu dyaNyambi?"
 3. slope upwards -ghúrumuka "He ascended into heaven" (Apostle's Creed)
 3-4b = "gha dhinipe kudiwiru."
 4. rise up - of smoke -yeyuka 3-4b The road ascends to the hill top = ndhirá dha ghurumuka kumutwi ghodindundu.
 Smoke ascended from the burning village = mwithi wa yeyukire mudighumbo dyo dya pire
 5. -, mount throne, of king -túreka thipúna see PUT
 3-4a

ASCENSION n.

- ascending of Christ into heaven thixánduko tha
 Krístus 7/

ASIDE (cont)

4. - turn from others -piruka kwawa
-mwéya 3-4b

When he heard the doctor's verdict, he turned aside from the rest. = ghopa gha yuwire mbanguro dhanganga, gha pirukire kwawamweya gha dirire

5. turn - from a path -hámbuka
mundhira

They turned aside from the path to draw water = ha hambukire mundhira ha ka vete meyu

ASK vt.

1. call for answer to,- questions. kwipura yipura

N.B. 'Those who will ask - AWA SHEPURE; ask oneself = kwipudhura

- vi. inquire kwipura

He asked after his health = nga mwipura eshi ghuna pinduka

2. beg -kúmbera

I am asking you to lend me a shilling = nina ku kumbera eshi ni yathime sherenyi yofotji.

- ask for, request -rómba

I want to ask you a favour = nina kushana kukuromba thitwara

3. invite -rómba

He asked him to spend the night with him = nga mu rombo eshi gha rara nendi.

ASLEEP pred. m.

- in a state of sleep vi. -rára

They are fast asleep = hana rara toro (lit. 'they sleep a dream')

ASP n.

- any poisonous snake
see SNAKE 1.

ASPECT n.

1. way 'ndhirá 10/6

Let us look at this matter from a different aspect (= in a different way) = tu kenge

2. appearance thimōnara 7/8

thinu thi mundhira dho kudhira kukupitura His face has a frightening aspect = rupara rwendi rwa kara nothimonara tho kuyapitha.

ASPERSE vt.

- pour water over infant's head in baptism -tēra

-also means 'sprinkle' (COD)

ASPIRATION n.

- desire, what is sought thishána 7/8

This work will satisfy his aspirations = thirughana thi hanyi thi mu huthere yishana yéndi.

ASPIRE vi.

- desire earnestly -twáhara

He aspires to become a builder = ghana twahara eshi gha kukare mughumbi

ASS n.

- donkey thidōngi
7/8

N.B. ass' colt = thidongiana NT phr.

ASSAIL vt.

1. attack as an enemy -táthera

The guerrillas assailed the soldiers position = haka mvo homuthitu ha rokokire dyango dyongcamu dyamashorondati.

- attack - by surprise -rókoka
2. overwhelm with questions -rámbangedha
10/5-9,2 a

They assailed him with questions = ngaha mu rambangedha noyipura

see ASSAULT, ATTACK, BOMBARD.

ASSAILANT n.

- one who attacks another mutátheri
or murókokeri
1/2

(murókokeri = one who makes a surprise attack)

ASSASSIN n. treacherous murderer	mupághi ghomuríngiringi 1/2	
ASSASSINATE vt. kill treacherously	-págha noghuríngiríngi	
ASSAULT (1) n. attack, of an enemy <u>or</u>	thitáthera thirókokera 7/8	
ASSAULT (2) vt. make attack, as enemy, assail <u>or</u> see ASSAIL, ATTACK	-táthera -rokóka	
ASSEGAI n. long, narrow African spear	mūho 3/10(4)	to stab with - = -yumbá nomūho
ASSEMBLE vt. gather together people	-kóngwetha 5-2a	he assembled the people = gha kongwethire hagura.
vi. gather together, of people - in large numbers	kukukóngá 7 -púndamana 6a	The people assemble = hagura hana kukukonga The people are assembling = hagura kukongana hana kukongena.
be assembling, see COLLECT, GATHER -close together	-kóngana 6a -thíndarakanya 18	The people assemble close together in a narrow place = hagura hana kuthindarskanya thikuma mudyango dyodithorokoto.
ASSEMBLY n. a gathering together	dikóngá 5/6	
ASSENT (1) vi. agree to proposal, statement, see AGREE	-táwa	
ASSENT (2) n. agreement w.v. nod - with head	thitáwa 7/8 -ngumaghuka mutwi 15/3-11,4b	(-ngūmuka, r. = 'nod head once')
ASSERT vt. 1. put forward claim	-nínga yoshémwa thiróghera	He asserted his claim to his father's inheritance = nga ningi yoshemwa thiroghera thendi thoghushwi ghawihe.
2. -oneself, insist on rights	kukunínga thinda 7	He asserted himself as being the true heir = nga kuninga thinda yira mudyá ghushwi ghoshemwa
ASSERTION n. claim self-assertion	thinínga 7/8 thinínga tho thinda 7/8	
ASSESS vt. fix amount of tax, fine 2. (Sets -keta)	-tēra (1.pour) -keta)	The Council assessed the people's personal tax as five pounds. = Ngotha dha terithire mutero ghomunq ghawaguva yipondo yikwoko.
ASSESSMENT n. amount of tax, fine	mutēro (diketo. Sets.) 3/10(4)	

ASSESSOR n. one who fixes amount of tax, fine	mūka kutēritha (muket, ithi) 1/2	
ASSIGN vt. allot as share - see ALLOT	-tāpa	
ASSIGNMENT n. share assigned, allotment	thitāpera 7/8	The village council assigned five acres of land to each family = ngotha dhodighumbo dha tapire yirwa yikwoko yodipya dīr-apa nodirapa
ASSIMILATE vi absorb into - see ABSORB 1.	-mīna	
ASSIST vt. vi. help	yāka	see HELP
ASSISTANCE n. help	thiyāka 7/8	
ASSISTANT n. one who helps (Post Office -)	muyāki 1/2 mukāmberegho mupōso 1/2	
ASSOCIATE n.(1) 1. friend 2. travelling companion 3. business partner	mushēre 1/2 mutātī 1/2 mutāpi mu yirughana 1/2	see PARTNER
ASSOCIATE vi. (2) 1. to be friendly with 2. join with others 3. to be partners in business	-shēreka kukutwāyeritha 4-7, 2b -tāpera pofotji 6-5a	They associated together a great deal = ha sherekire pofotji thikuma Why do you not associate yourself with the others ? = nye wa dhira kukutwayeritha ghuthinda naWamweya ?
ASSOCIATION n. 1. friendship 2. act of joining with others 3. organised body of persons	ghushēre 14/6(14) makutwāyerithero /6 makūwaneno /6	
ASSUME vt. 1. pretend to feel see AFFECT 2 2. take up office, duty 3. take for granted	kukuyūva 7 -vāreka -tēnda (lit. 'begin to do') -ghāyara (lit 'think')	He assumed an air of sympathy for the rich widow = gha kuyuvire thimonara thoyihengaghura nomudithi ghoghushwi He will assume his duties to-morrow = ñanyi ghakuvareke kutenda yirughana yendi peghundha. I assumed that you would come to-morrow = ngani ghayara eshi ñanyi wa kwiye peghundha

ASSURANCE n. declaration that a thing is true	thitóngora thoshēmwa 7/8	
ASSURE vt. 1. tell person that thing is true	-tóngwera ghoshēmwa	I assured him that his son was well = na mu tongwerire eshi mwanoye ghana pinduka thiwana
2. tell person that thing certain to happen	-tóngwera eshi shemwa	I assured him that I would return soon = na mu tongwerire eshi shemwa ñanyi na kuhuke pañanyinanyi
ASTONISH vt. cause surprise, make astonish astonish	-tétuka=yóvora -tétukitha=yóvoritha 2b	I astonished him = na mu yovorithire I astonished him with my news = na mu yovorithire nombudhi dhangé I am astonished to see you = nina yovora kukumona It is astonishing how he does it = kuyovora eshi ngepi ghana thi tendi What you have done astonishes me = na ku yovora ghoyi ghuna tendi
see AMAZE, MARVEL, SURPRISE		
ASTOUND vt. shock with surprise, startle horrify with surprise surprise so as to paralyse with fear	-túkukitha 4-2b -túkuka -nungághuka yirama 15/3-11 -hóghoroka 3-4b	We astounded him with the news = twa mu tukukithire nombudhi He is astounded at what happened = gha tukukire ghomu ya karire.
ASTRAY adv. go - , wander out of the right way lead, -cause to wander from the way	-yóngara -yóngaritha 4-2b	The cattle have gone astray = ngombe nga dhi yongara. He led the boy astray = gha yongerithire mungaghu.
ASTRIDE adv. with legs on each side eg. when riding	nomaghúru mawādi	He is riding astride the donkey = kudhina ghana kudhina thidongi nomaghuru mawadi.
ASTROLOGY n. study of influence of stars on man	yikuhóngá yo	-yirāghura yo = nungwédhi mwa mūnu /8
ASTRONOMER n. observer of stars	munōmeni gho nungwédhi 1/2	see STAR-GAZER
ASTRONOMY n. study of the start	yikuhóngá yo nungwédhi /8	
ASTUTE a. 1. wise, shrewd 2. cunning	ghunyányami ghuringirīngi	
ASSUNDER adv. apart (of two or more things) - cleave - cut with sharp instrument cut - of rope, repeatedly	Mbukushu -téta -tjīnaghura 15/6-11	adv. part of v. He cleft the lion's head asunder = gha tetire mutwi ghonyime He cut her bonds asunder = gha tjīnaghurire yiwangitho yendi

R.C. WYNNE.

ASUNDER (cont)

part -, of animals, people	-yákunutha 5-2b	They parted the fighting dogs asunder = ha yakunuthire mbura dho kurwa.
part -, of pitcher of water	-kúfa or-páyuka 3-4b	The pitcher parted asunder as it fell = kandimbe ka fire ghopa ka wire
part -, of water (lit. 'cause to open')	-yándhuruka 3-4b	The Red Sea parted asunder to the right and to the left = Dikururiya dyoDikihi dya yandhurukire kurudyo no kurumoho
pull -, (lit. 'cause to separate')	-yákunutha 5-2b	They pulled the poles asunder = ha yakunuthire yitondo.
tear -	-djádjaghura 15/6-11	The vultures tore the carcass asunder = makwi gha djádjaghurire dirambo

AT prep.

1. indicating position	mū	Let us meet at the big tree = twa hangana muthitondo thothikuru.
2. expressing movement	kú	We will arrive at the village soon = ñanyi tu kume kudighumbo ñanyifanyi
3. expressing degree, eg. 'at best'	muwúwa . thikúma	At best there will be good grazing this year for the cattle = mu wúwa thikuma ñanyi kwa kukare kudya kokuwa kongombe mwaka ghuno
4. indicating agreement eg. 'at one'	pofótji	We are at one with you in this matter = twa kara pofotji noye muthitenda thi.

ATMOSPHERE n.

air around us, or around the earth	mūñu 3/	N.B. also means air breathed by living creatures.
------------------------------------	---------	---

ATONE vi.

make amends for see AMENDS	-húthera 5/6-2b, 5a	He has atoned for his misdeeds = nga huthera yitenda yendi yoyiyi
-------------------------------	---------------------	---

ATONEMENT n.

reparation, compensation	mahúthero /6
--------------------------	--------------

ATTACH vt.

1. tie, fasten one thing to another. see FASTEN, TIE,	-wānga	Also see BIND
2. join oneself to people	kukushwámeka 7	He attached himself to us as we went = gha kushwamokire munwetu ghoku shime tuna yendi.
pass.vi 3. be attached to, very fond of a person (lit. 'love much')	-hāka thikúma	He is very attached to his wife = ghana haka thikuma munduwendi

ATTACK (1) vt.

assault, assail, with hostile intent	-táthera	They attacked the enemy = ha tatherire hāfore
assail, -as a surprise	-rókoka	They suddenly attacked them = ha wa rokokire no kudhira kudimuka
see ASSAIL, ASSAULT: jump to	syn. 1 hārumuni (2.gather) -hómokera	(i.e. in a heated argument) - suddenly, kill animals in hiding place - yúkukera 6-5b

ATTACK (2) n.

act of assault, assailing	thitáthera thirókoka 7/8
---------------------------	-----------------------------

ATTAIN vt.

1. arrive at, reach	-kūma ku	They have attained the summit of the mountain = ngaha ka kumu kumutwi ghodirundu
2. achieve, accomplish see ACCOMPLISH, ACHIEVE	-kōna-ténda	He has attained his purpose = gha konina kutenda yigayara yendi.

ATTAINMENT n. accomplishment, achievement	thakōna kutēnda 7/8	
ATTEMPT vt (1) try (to do something) see TRY	-yéreka	I will attempt to answer all the questions = ñanyi ni yereke kuhutha yipura yoyihe
ATTEMPT (2) n. try	thiyēreka 7/8	mayérekero, 6 syn.
ATTEND vi. 1. turn thoughts to, apply oneself to	-shóngomona	Attend to your work! = mu shongomene yirughana yenu!
vt.2. be present at	kwíngena	He is now attending school = kwingena ghana kwingena shure keho
3. accompany, escort see ACCOMPANY wait upon see WAIT	-táta -kéngerera 66-13	He attended the chief to the village = gha tatire fumu kudighumbo He attended his guest while he ate = gha kengererire mugenda wendi ghoku shime gha di
ATTENDANT n. one who waits upon another escort	mukéngereri 1/2 muka kutáta mutáti 1/2	
ATTENTION n. act of giving one's mind to person, thing attract, call -	mashōngomono /6 -koka mashōngomono	see DISTRACT I attracted the chief's attention to the stranger = na kokire mashongomono ghafumu kumugenda.
give, pay attention	-shōngomona	pay attention to my words = mu shongomene maywi ghange
draw person's - to what others do	-thónyena (warn)	I drew his attention to the children climbing the roof = na mu thonyenine kudhina kohanuke pawiru dhondhugho
ATTENTIVE a. 1. observant, noticing everything 2. considerate towards others	2. -nyányama (1. wise) -kára nodíkúto	He was attentive to everything his father did = gha nyanyamine pa yinu yoyihe ghoyi gha tendire wihe. The host was attentive to his guests' needs = mundambo gha karire nodikuto kuyishana yomugenda
ATTEST vt. 1. witness a signature and certify it see WITNESS, TESTIFY, CERTIFY	-shémwapitha 1/4-2b	I attested his signature = na shemwapithire dina dyo kutjanga nomunwewendi pambapira (lit. 'I certified the name written with his finger on the paper')
vt.2. bear witness to see WITNESS 3	-nóngonona 99-14	I attested that what he said was true = na nongononine eshi ghoyi gha ghambire yi ne yoshemwa
ATTESTATION n. 1. act of witnessing signature 2. act of bearing witness	thishémwapitha 7/8 yinóngonona /8	see CERTIFICATE.

ATTIRE vt & n.
(see ARRAY, DRESS)

ATTITUDE n.
way of looking at
things

'ndhirá dho
kukenga
10/6

His attitude to this idea is sound = ndhira dhendi
dho kukenga dighano di na yoshemwa.

ATTRACT vt.

1. draw others to oneself -kōka

Your daughter attracts him = mwanoye ghana
mu koka

2. -, draw attention,
see ATTENTION

-kōka
mashongomeno

I attracted the chief's attention to the stranger
= na kokire mashongomeno ghafumu kumugenda

ATTRACTION n.

act of drawing others to
person, thing.

yikōka
/8

What has excited the attraction of the
crowd ? = yinye yina pindutha yikoka
yombunga ?

ATTRACTIVE a.

drawing others to oneself

gho kukōka

She is an attractive woman = mbuyama gho
kukoka

AUCTION vt.

sell goods to highest
bidder

-fānditha
4-2b

AUGER n.

tool for boring holes
in wood

(E-bōro, 10)
djōko 10/6

see BORER, DRILL (1)

AUGMENT vt.

increase, make greater

-wēdhera

Augment the ration of mealie meal by another
cupful = wedherere thitapa thomushungwa
ghomundere nonginda karo dho kuyara

AUGMENTATION n.

increase by adding to

mawēdhero /6

AUGURY n.

divining by flight of
birds, omen

thishwāva 7/8

Five secretary-birds together is a good augury
for the marriage = tujhuva kwoko pofotji tu
di thishwava thothiwa thowenga

to practise augury

-shwāva

AUGUST n.

eighth month of year.

thitēketa
7/8

(This means, that at this time the wind strips
the leaves from the trees)

AUNT n.

father's elder sister

mukūrwa tâte
1a/2

father's younger sister

mīna tâte
1a/2

mother's elder sister

nāwe shokūru
1a/2

mother's younger sister

nāweghana
1a/2

- when addressed 'my aunt'

nāwe
1

thy - nyokwana; his - nyinana; our - nyokwanawetu
1a/2

AUSPICIOUS a.

favourable, of good omen

-kāra norupāra

An auspicious time for the marriage will be
the day of the full moon = ruvedhe ro
kukara rupara rowenga nanyī rwa kukare diywa
dyokaghonda ko kuyara

AUSTERE a. stern, strict	ghukúkútu	"You are an austere man, reaping where you did not sow" (Math 25;24) = "Yowe na mukafumu ghomukukutu, gho kukesha ghopa wa dhirire kukuna"
AUTHOR n. 1. source	muvárèki lit 'beginner') 1/2	He is the author of all our troubles = ghoyu ne muvárèki ghoyinyandayetu
2. writer of book	mutjàngi 1/2	
AUTHORITY n. 1. power, right to compel obedience	vēta 10/e	The government has authority over all who live in the country = furumende gha kara noveta pawiru dhokeheyu ghoyu gha tunga muditunga
2. evidence of - of person who knows	ghunóngonokodhi ghoveta	He quoted the evidence of the doctor of the deceased as authority = gha te mununine ghunongonokodhi ghonganga ghomufu shika veta
see EVIDENCE		
AUTHORIZE vt. give power, sanction	-tápa vēta	I authorise you to act for me = na kutapa veta kunitendera
AUTUMN n season of beginning of decay	kwĩndha la(9)/6(9)	(In Southern Africa about February to April)
AVAIL vt. (1) 1. help, benefit	-yáka	A word from him will avail you in your venture = diywi dyendi fiányi dya ku yake muthiyereka thoye
2. - oneself, take advantage of	-tēnditha 4-2b	I would like to avail myself of your kind offer = fiányi ni hake kutenditha thitapa thoye thothinongo.
AVAIL n. (2) use, advantage; only in phrr		
eg. 'of no avail'	kádi-kára noyirughana	All my efforts to save his life were of no avail = yiyerekayange yoyihe kuparitha ghuparowendi kadi ya karire noyirughana
AVARICE n greed of getting more wealth for self see COVETOUSNESS	yiyūthaghura /8	In his avarice he desires still greater wealth = muyiyuthaghura yendi ghana rumbera shine ghushwi ghoghukuru kupita
AVARICIOUS a. an - person	mūnu ghoyiyūthaghura 1/2	
AVENGE vt. requite wrong, injury	-húkurukera 6/3/6-5b	I will avenge the wrong you have done my daughter = fiangi na kuhukurukere ghuyi ghoghu ngaghu tendi kwamwanange ghomukamadighana
AVENGER n person who avenges, requites wrong	múka-húkurukera 1/2	
AVOID vt. 1. shun person	-yápa	She avoids his company = ghana yapa ku kushereka re ndi

AVOID (cont)			
2. escape, evade	2.	-thimba (1. grudge)	He avoided a summons to work for the chief = gha thimbire mushupwero gho kurughanena fumu Until now I have avoided trouble in the village = kate nanyinanyi ngani tughura rupetho mudighumbo
- trouble		-tughura	
AWAIT vt.			
wait for		-taterera 66-13	We await the chief's return = tuna taterera kuhuka kwafumu
AWAKE vi			
1. cease to sleep see SLEEP become wide awake, start up		-pinduka -kothoroka (ant-kotha) 66/3- 4b	He is now awake = ghana pinduka keho
vt. 2. rouse from sleep, awaken see ROUSE, WAKE		-pindutha 5-2b	He is wide awake = ghana kothoroka thikuma
			Go and awaken him - yende ghu ka mu pindutha
AWARD vt. (1)			
1. judge as best in competition		-pangura	I award the prize to Disho = nina pangura thind- undama Disho.
2. grant damages in law case		-tapa yihuthera	The judge awards damages to the plaintiff = mupanguri gha tapire yihuthera kwa muka kutokota
AWARD n. (2)			
1. judge's decision		thipangura 7/8	
2. damages granted		yihuthera /8	
AWARE pred. a.			
knowing (In Mbukushu included in verb) to be - of, know of.		-dimuka	I am aware of his arrival = na dimuka ghomakumeno ghendi.
to make - of, cause person to know		-dimukitha 4-2b	I made him aware of his arrival = na mu dimukithire mumakumeno ghendi
AWASH pred. a.			
washed by waves		-yaritha nomeyu 4-2b	
		(lit. 'cause to fill with water')	In the storm the boat was soon awash = mudingundunga mangumbi gha yarithire wato nomeyu nanyinanyi
AWAY adv.			
of person, thing - at a distance from a place be-		-pita kayenda	He is away just now = ghana piti (muruvedhe ru) How far away is the village = dighumbo re kayenda kongepi ?
(In Mbukushu adv. included in v.)			
adv. go - without delay			He has gone away with them = nga funguruka nawo Go away! = yende! or ghu shwaghe! or finyaghuke!
AWE n.			
fear of a reverent kind wondering fear		woma gho shokuru 14/	"They were struck with awe ... even the storm and the sea obey him" (Mark 4; 41) = "woma gho shokuru wa wa wanine ngambi dingundunga nodikuruviya dina mu yuva!"

AWK (cont) hold, stand in -	kwīmana muwōma	The little boy stands in awe of the chief = mungawana ghanemana muwoma wafumu.
AWFUL a. inspiring awe see INSPIRE (lit. 'cause to fill with fear')	(-yéritha no wōma) -hóyithera wōma	
AWHILE adv. for a short time	kambīrumbīru	"Come ye apart and rest awhile" (Mark 6;31) = mwiye pithenu mu turumudhe kambirumbiru
AWKWARD a. 1. not well fitted for use see ADAPT 2. clumsy 3. embarrassing, difficult, ghukúkútu 4. impossible to please see GRUMBLE 2	-dhīra-nūngékera ghūyi -shīvana	This is an awkward tool for the job = ghothi ne thitenditho tho kudhira kunangékera muyirughana Why do you carry these things in such an awkward way? = nye ghuna shimbera yinu ya mundhirá dho dhiyi kenge yo? What an awkward position to be in ! = memanp munye ghoghukukutu gho kukuwana thinda! What an awkward customer! = munye mughuri gho kushivana !
AWL n shoe-maker's tool for stitching	murūkitho 3/10(4)	
AXE n. chopping - tool tool for cutting battle - axe w.v. come off, of axe edge, leaving gap n. place of the gap made axe - head w.vv. of axe-head, fly off handle wound with axe	kāmo 12/13 diyayo 5/6 thivenga 7/8 -mēnyaghuka 15/3-11/4b mamēnyukero /6 mūtwi ghokāmo 3/10(4) -kúka -kāñara	(pl. twāmo, 13) - edge ghūtwe ghokāmo 14/6(14) - handle mupínyi 3/10(4) pierce - handle to insert axe-head -djūra split bone of arm, leg lengthwise, by accident, with axe -gcārura
AXLE n. spindle on which a wheel turns	thimbīrumuka tho makōsho 7/8	

B

BABBLE vi.

1. talk, wandering from one thing to another -ghāmbaghura 15/6-11

2. talk too much -tāratāra -10

3. repeat foolishly -hūkahukēra 6-10

Don't babble about this, that, and another.

Speak to the point = wa ghambaghura ko kuteringana muthinu thofotji kuthimweya. Tuzure mudimbwambura vene ghodi tuna kushimba Stop babbling and let the voice of others be heard = wa taratara tu thighe tu yuwe maywi ghawamweya !

He keeps on babbling the same words like a lunatic = kuhukahukera ghana kuhukahukera shika thipuku maywi ghofotji

BABOON n.

large African monkey

pl.

w.v. run like

ngūyá la(9) /2(9), 14 irr.

ghughúyá 14irr. But 'two baboons'

-hātaghura 11

Hangūyá hawādi 2 (9)

BABY n.

very small child,

sucking child,

having to be carried syn. kambútutu 12/13

kakēke 12/13

BACHELOR n.

unmarried man

(female-spinster)

mudhike 1/2

BACK (1) n.

the behind part of the trunk

of the body

spinal cord or back bone mughōngo 3/10(4)

thishokōra thomughōngo

bend - to stoop

-fūmbera -nyōngama

He bent his back to stoop down = gha fumberire kunyongama

carry on -

kwēreka mumughōngo

She was carrying her baby on her back = gherekire mwanendi mumughongo.

hollow the -

-gānuka mughōngo

Stand up straight and hollow the back = wimane puru ghu ganuke mughongo

lean the -

-yéghamena

He leant his back against a tree = gha yeghamenine mughongo pathitondo

lie on the -

-shōngeka

She is lying on her back in the sun = kushongeka ghana kushongeka mumutenya

set up - when about to spring

-fúteka mughōngo

The lion set up his back to spring on the wildebeest = nyime gha futekire mughongo gho gha reghire thovu.

turn back - upon enemy

-tūngwera dikothi 14/23

He turned his back upon the enemy and fled = gha tungwerire dikothi hañore gha tjirire

turn back on person to disown him

-tūngwera mughōngo 14-23

The whole village turned their backs upon him = dighumbo dyo diheya dya tungwerire mighongo kukwendi

id. behind one's -

munyima dhomugh-ōnga

They laughed behind his back = ha mu hekire munyima dhomughongowendi

nn. with BACK - of the hand

nūnda dhonyāra

He hit the boy with the back of the hand =

- of a seat

muyéghamo 3/10(4)

gha pumurire mungaghu nonunda dhonyara

BACK (1) (cont)		
- background, for scene	thámbo diya 7/	Do you see those trees in the background ?
backside, bottom of body	matako (5)/6	= a yoyi ghu mona yitondo yiya ku thambo diya ndi?
hunchback, person with hump	kafúto 12/13	He beat him on his backside = nga mu mwashura kumatakoghendi
BACK (2) adv.		
away from front, behind	munyíma	
answer -	-hútha munyíma	How dare you answer me back ? = ngepi ghuna kuyereka kunihutha munyima ?
id. go - on one's word	-píruka 4b	He has gone back on his promise = nga píruka kuthikuruperitha thendi
keep -	-húka munyíma	Keep back! the snake will strike! = huke munyima! noka fanyi gha kuhume!
BACKBITE vi		
slander, speak ill of	-ghāmbitha ghūyi 4-2b	They are always backbiting about me = hana ni ghambithanga yoyiyi
see SLANDER syn.	-tāngwera 14-23	
BACKSLIDE vi		
fall back into sin 2	-nyéghenya (get annoyed) (-tíneha. Sets)	He is backsliding into the same vices = kunyeghenya ghana kunyeghenya mumaharwero ghofotji
BACKWARDS adv.		
opp. to forward, moving away from front	munyíma	
- and forwards	munyíma no kughútho	He went backwards on his tracks = gha yendire munyima mumurowendi
go -	-yēnda munyima	
lean -	-yéghamena munyíma	He leant backwards to recover his tool = gha yeghamenine munyima kukushimba thitenditho thendi.
look -	-thétuka munyíma	He looked backwards over his shoulder = gha thetukire munyima peghuru dhodipeghe dyendi
step -	-húka (munyíma)	He stepped backwards to avoid the snake = gha hukire thingaranyima gho gha yapire noka
walk -	-yēnda thingaranyima	He walked backwards and did not see where he was going = gha yendire thingaranyima gho gha dhirire kumona kupi gha yendire.
BAD a.		
1. <u>neg.</u> useless, poor in quality	ghumāngo (ghuyi)	This pole is bad = thitondo thi ne thimango (or thiyi)
-food, not sustaining	yídyā_yo-píra -nūnitha	see DECAY, ROT
go - decay 1.	-fúta (2. pay)	
2. <u>pos</u> harmful, painful		
w.n. ill-feeling, id 'bad blood'	yikuyūya yo yíyi /8 ghūyi	There is some bad blood between them = po thidi yikuyuva yoyiyi pakatji kawo.
a. injurious = 'bad for'	mbáadi-pínduka	This hut is bad for you to live in = ndhugho dhi ne dhiyi kukara mumwadho
bad = not well	(-kórwa)	She is bad to-day = mbadi ghana pinduka dyararo (lit. 'she has not got up to-day')
	ghurútu	(kukorwa ghana kukorwa dyararo = 'she is sick to-day')
bad = nasty	ghūyi	A bad smell = munuko ghoghufutu. see NASTY
bad = evil	-yípa	see EVIL
w.v.be bad-of a situation		To be in a - state, condition of health -hépa

- BADGER** (1) n.
small animal, honey badger
or ratel shānda 1a(9)/2(9),6(9)
- BADGER** (2) vt.
bait, tease, worry
see TEASE, WORRY
see SET upon -nyādeka 3-4a The children badgered the chained dog by setting other dogs upon him = hanukc ha nyandekire mbwa gho kuwanga nodyenge gho ha shakwedhire mbwa dhimweya kukwendi.
- BADLY**
adv. of 'EAD'
w.v.v. behave -
do a thing -
fit-of clothes
noghūyi
kukukútéka
noghūyi 7
-tēnda thinu
ghumāngo (or
noghūyi) syn.
-yīpera 5c see BEHAVE
-māngopitha, 2b
The shorts you are wearing fit badly = kaputura ka ghuna vata kana kuyīpera
- BAFFLE** vt.
1. confuse, puzzle
2. hinder progress
kwīmana mūtwi
(lit. 'to stand
the head')
-bīterera
66-14
(-bitera,r,) He ran back a little way, retracing his steps then turning out of the way, so as to baffle his pursuers = gha tjirire munyima kamanana, ko kuhukera mironhendi kēho ko kuhambuka mundhira eshi ghemane mutwi haka kumutjidha
The wind baffled the paddlers from keeping a straight course = mupepo wa bitererire haka kuvugha gho ha dhirire kuyenda kughutho ha ghororoke
- BAG** n.
container of pliable material for carrying
big eight kilogram bag for carrying food
small, cloth-for money, small things
-for fire materials of Bushman
skin -, for carrying water
shoulder - thipāghopāgho
ndjāto 10/6 (10)
kétji 12/13
kakūruta 12/13
thibāta 7/8
kacāghuma 12/13
kakūtu 12/13
7/8
(pl twétji, 13)
-of grass, tied with lashings to carry peanuts, ground nuts - dighānda(cp dyanda= herd(1))5/6
small purse for carrying money kakōmani 12/13
medicine - mutjītja ghoghūwānga 3/10(4)
see WATER (1) 4
N.B. this word is used for school satchel too
- BAGGAGE** n.
luggage, belongings carried on travels
-carried on shoulder pole
see LUGGAGE, BURDEN (1)
murōngero
3/10(4)
mupāngo
3/10(4)
i.e. luggage carried in baskets or on pack animal
i.e. suspended from each end of pole
- BAIT** vt. (1)
1. worry chained animal
see BADGER (2)
2. put food on fishing hook or in fish, animal trap
-nyādeka 3-4a N.B. also used of tormenting helpless person - see TORMENT (2)
-pāka ndjo
kudirōvo, kuyitēghitha, or-túpeka
girovo, thitēghitha thothī 3-4a N.B. -túpeka = 1. put into water.
2. put thing inside bag to carry;
see PUT 3 3-4a

- BAIT (2) n.
 food to attract fish, ndjô 10/6(10)
 animal to hook, trap. ghoyôkatji 14/6(14)
 worms as fish-bait
- BAKE vt.
 cook in dry oven, esp. of bread -yôtha see BREAD, DOUGH, LEAVEN, RISE 3, YEAST
- BAKER n.
 one who bakes bread muyôthi 1/2
- BALANCE n.(1)
 1. weighing instrument with two scales pivoted thiyêdhekeritho 7/8
 2. hold the - i.e. power to influence decisions -kwâta thiyêdhekeritho The small tribe holds the balance between the two big tribes = dikoghana dya kwatire thiyêdhekeritho pakatji komako mawadi ghamakuru
 2.-of accounts thiyêdhekeritho
 -in hand thoyivârero 7/8 Statement of receipts and payments of money.
 Amount of money left after deduction payments from receipts
 -due thivârero tho manyînga gho kuthîghara 7/8 Amount of money owing.
 thivârero tho manyînga gho kukôrota 7/8
- BALANCE vt.vi. (2)
 1. weigh with scales -yêdhekeritha 4-2b
 2. - accounts -yêdhekeritha yivârero 4-2b
 3. - of a boat in water -djâtama 8-3
- BALD a.
 with top of head wholly or partly without hair ghapâruruka Wholly bald ghapâruruka pôpahe
 w.v. to make - see HAIRS -pârurura 15 - on top of head ghapâruruka pakâtji komutwi
- BALDNESS n.
 being bald kaparambâmbi 12/13 syn. katēneghere, 12/13 see HAIR 2
- BALE n. (1)
 corded bundle; eg of cloth thitûngu 7/8
 make into - -wânga thitûngu
- BALE (2) (BAIL)
 vt. throw water out of boat with calabash -yûpa
- BALL n.
 1. completely round object used for playing game bûru 9/6 throw a - -vûkuma bûru
 w.v.v. make, roll into - kumba
 2. - of eye; see EYE- BALL
 3. - of foot, i.e. round part under big toe mûshi dho dipâmbara
- BAN (1)
 1. curse kûta or kuya see CURSE 2

- BAN (1) (cont)
2. forbid, debar, prohibit -dhĩreka3-4a see FORBID
- BAN (2) n.
1. curse thikũto 7/8 see CURSE 1.
2. forbidding thidhĩreka 7/8
- BAND n. (1)
1. any kind of binding thiwānga 7/8
2. strip of material to go round object thihĩna tho dhĩnga 7/8
waist-band muya gho mbunda 3/10(4)
tie for shirt collar teyi 1a(9)/6(9)
3. organised body of men thitopa 7/8 N.B. 'Thitopa' = small, tightly knit group
organisation with common purpose makuwāneno /6 N.B. 'Makuwaneno' = organisation of any size.
compact group of people dikonga 5/6 N.B. 'Dikonga' = a small gathering
4. stripe; long, narrow - divāmbi 5/6
- BAND (2)
vt. 1. put on a band -wānga
2. form band of men -topa
vi. 3. -together kukutopa or (lit. choose themselves - kukutōrora) 7 (lit. 'to organise themselves - kukuwāna)
- BANDAGE (1) n.
strip of material for binding up wound, limb thiwāngitho 7/8
- BANDAGE (2) vt.
bind up wound, limb with -wānga no dhĩnga
- BANDIT n.
robber who will attack, kill to steal mukamukũngu 1/2 see RUFFIAN
- BANG (1) vt.
1. strike noisily -pumura nomuyōngo He hit the iron with a bang = gha pumurire thikuro nomuyōngo
2. shut door noisily -yāndhera rubāti nomuyōngo Don't bang the door! = wa yandhera rubati nomuyōngo!
- BANG (2) n.
1. sound of blow muyōngo ghothip-umura 3/10(4)
id. 2. report of gun 'bang' ndwangu!
- BANGLE n.
1. ring racelet - big plain, iron wrist - dikāyi 5/6 -Worn on upper arm, of beads, shells didhiwa 5/6
dindindira 5/6 (small - KANDINDIRA, 12) (metal - for wrist) dingondo 5/6
grass - kashambo ko pa
2. anklet, - for ankle kadhĩnga 12/13 see BRACELET, ORNAMENT
thiyōnga 7/8 - for leg dithēka 5/6
- BANISH vt.
1. sentence to exile -dhĩrutha 5-2b "Now you are accursed and banished from the ground" (Gen. 4:11) = "Kaho ghu muka thikuto no kudhirutha mumuwa."
2. put out one one's mind -shwāghitha munaghano 4-2b He banished from his mind all thought of revenge = gha mu shwaghithire munaghano ghendi thighayara thimwe nothimwe thothikuhuruka
-fear 4.-dhimangedha wōma (1. obliterate
2. cross
3. silence) 10/5- 9, 5a

BAR (2) (cont)

1. keep person out

-yándherera mūnu

kununda 66-14

2. - obstruct the way

-vūka, syn.

-káñera 'ndhirá

5c (r. káña) = retain)1.

BARBED a.

having sharp point or wire

prickles

- hook, for fishing

diróvo dyodipáta 5/6

- spear

dyonga dyo ditwé 5/6

- wire

ndārata dho

mihúnga (lit 'thorns')

10/6

BARBARIAN n

wild, uncultured person

mūnu gho kunfinga

yira thiyáma 1/2 (lt. 'person who seems to be a beast')

BARBEL n.

long, black, fresh water fish

thikókoro 7/8

w.v. come up to surface to breath = - mbwénda

kind of -

dimbutú 5/6

(cp. hom. dimbutú = kind of relish)

BARBER n.

one who cuts, shaves hair

muka kúrura huka

see HAIR 3

BARE a. (1)

1. unclothed, naked

thitūmba tūmba

see NAKED

bald

ghapáruruka

see BALD

- neck

mukerengéngé

2.-, of a house

-píra yitere

nohānu (lit. 'lacking furniture and people')

w.nn - plain

thibáta tho ghuramberi

7/8

(lit. treeless country that is level')
see LEVEL

- rock

diwe dyo kwēshukwēshu 5/6

bare-back, to ride without saddle

-dhina ko -píra

sāre

or to ride without sack-covering -dhina ko kupira tereki

bare-foot, to go without sandals.

mapādhī -pādhī

bare-headed, without head covering in rain

mbadiko makukúriho -(ghomvura)

BARE (2) vt.

- teeth, show teeth in hostility

-ndhanya mayēgho

see TOOTH 2

BARGAIN n. (1)

agreement of give and take, compact

ndhúvadhano

10/6 (10)

thikwātathana 7/8

strike a - , come to terms

-tenda ndhúvadhano

BARGAIN (2) vi

1. dispute with person over terms

-kāñana mughūro

- with, see BEAT down price (3) -twāra kūshi

2. make compact

kukuyvathana, 7, 6a
kukukwāta 7

- BARK** (1) n.
outer covering of tree 1. diyúra(2.rind) rough - diyúra dyo mafamaña 5/6; strip of - thirivo 7/8
5/6
- BARK** (2) vt.
1. strip - of tree -shúra syn-yúnuna strip - hen begin to adze -púta
2. ring - bark, cut rings in - -yúnuna mayúra (N.B. ring-barking kills tree, or checks growth, or makes it bare) see STRIP (1)3
- BARK** (3) vi.
1.-, make cry of dog, fox, squirrel, hyæna kúdhá (perf ninōdhu)
2.-, at, abuse -shērera see ABUSE
- BARN** n.
store house for threshed grain maghūngwero /6
(village granary - big) thishéte 7/8(small)
kashéte, 12/13
- BARREL** n.
1. cask, wood container for liquids ditānga 5/6
2. metal tube of gun muyēnga gho ghúta
3/10(4)
- BARREN** a.
not bearing children - of woman mbūmi
- of animal ditjimbe
- womb mukogha ghombūmi
vi. be -, of a woman -mbūma
be -, of an animal -tjimba
vt doctor a - woman -pirura
w.n.- land, not having plants see ARID ditunga dyo
dinafu 5
- BARRENNESS** n.
being barren, of a woman ghumbūmi 14
being barren of an animal ghutjimbī
14
- BARRICADE** n. (1)
hastily erected barrier across road thivúka
tho'ndhirá 7
see BARRIER, OBSTRUCTION thikáñera tho'ndhirá 7
- BARRICADE** (2) vt
bar way with barricade -vúka syn.-káñera
- BARRIER** n.
1. fence of thorn-bushes around field ruthito 11/6(14)
obstruction of any kind thivúka syn thikáñera
7/8
fence to act as protection, shield thingándekitho
7/8 "You must put barriers round the mountain"
(Ex 19:12) = "Wa roghera kupeka yingandekitho kudhinguruka dirundu"

BARRIER (cont)

2. border fence

mavúkero syn
makáñerero gho
mururwāni /6

"You must put barriers round the mountain" (Ex.19:12)
= "Wa roghera kupaka yingandekitho kudhinguruka
dirundu"

customs - mavúkero syn makáñerero gho mitēro
(or kutēra) /6

quarantine - eg. against foot and mouth disease =
muvúkero syn. makáñerero gho thānyī

BARROW n.

wheel -, shallow box,
with handles and one
wheel, for carrying

kakāraki 12/13

BARTER vt. 1.

give goods in exchange for
others -

tápera yitere
yimwe 5b

mumémāno ghoyimweya

BASE (1) n

bottom, that on which a
thing stands
foundation
starting -point

ditáku 5/6
thitáteko 7/8
mavárekero /6

BASE (2)

mean. despicable

ghushámuni
(kushámuna)

A base trick = ghuringiringi gho (kushamuna)
ghushamuni

BASIN n

hollow round clay, metal
bowl, for washing

thísha 7/8

-tho kukuyóghera (for washing')

BASKET n.

vessel woven from reeds
often round
small -

thikóte 7/8
kakóte 12/13

Reeds used to make - mbáre 10/ 6(10)

big reed -

dishéte 5/6
or thicūma (SWA) 7/8

Type of short sticks to make fire for softening
mbáre - múge 3/-

BASTARD n.

illegitimate child

mwána gho-píra
wihe 1/2
mwána gho ruhōnda
1/2
mwána gho
ghunyētji 1/2

(lit. 'child without a father')

(lit. 'child of adultery')

(lit. 'child of an unlawful love')

BAT n

night flying mouse-like
creature

kakúru 12/13
(kapúkupúku
12/13)
makomónitho /6

see HOLD branch

noise of -

BATAWANA n

name of tribe in Ngamiland,
Botswana
land of - i.e. Ngamiland

ha-tjawāna 2
Ghutjawāna 14/

member of Batawana tribe

mu-tjawāna 1

BATHE vt.

1. immerse, dip, put into
water
moisten all over

-ghōmbeka 4a
-yúriṭha 2b
-yōghana 5c
kukuyogha 7

vi. 2. swim

have a wash, bath

- Face, hands to revive faint person -húpa méyu

BATTER vt
strike again and again
to bruise person or
break a thing -púmurapúmura 10

BATTERY n.
electric - for torch,
radio dikāra 5/6

BATTLE n.
fight, combat
see FIGHT (m'-vo) m'vo 10
yirwa /8

N.B. 'Mvo' means war; 'yirwa' = fighting -
between people, even armies

BAWL vi.
speak noisily -bwābwata
see SPEAK loudly

Don't bawl at me, woman! = mukadhi, wa
bwābwata kukwange !

BAY vi
bark of large dog, hyena kúdhakúdhā 10

BE v.
1. subst. exist (often with
'there') v. aux dī (omit in neg
sentence)
-kára
remain -kára
- in a place
v. aux. dī
- in a state of health
id. -pínduka (lit.
'get up')
- call, pay visit -kára

There is a God = Ku di Nyambi; BUT -
there is noone = mbadika ghumwe
There was a time = kwa karire ruvedhe.
He was there for a long time = gha karire kuya
muruvdhe rorure

Where is he? He is at home = kupi gha di?
Mudighumbo gha di

How are you ? = a ghuna pinduka ? (lit. 'how have
you got up?')
Has anyone been here ? = a kehenō nga kara
kuno ndi ?

2. v. cop. (a) particle nē linking subj.
c with descriptive noun nē
(b) v. aux dī linking subj.
c with loc dī

This man is the thief = murume yu nē mwidhi.
BUT I am a teacher = yame mitiri.
I am here = ni di pano OR yame no.

3. v. aux = happen, in pass tense
-kára

This was done that the scriptures might be
fulfilled = thinu thi tha karire kemo ku kurikanyitha
yitjanga yo kupongoka

state, condition, with
perf. particle nē
4. with prod. a. -kára
v. aux -dī
5. id. 'where he has been' nōku ghána
kuthéka

The sun is set = diyuwa ne dina ditokera.
They were present = po ha karire
Noone else was present = noyofotji temba ghoyu gha di po.

(N.B. -théka usually means 'to try a case')

BEACH (1)
n. sandy shore on edge of
river, pan ndūdu 10/6

BEACH (2) vt.
run boat ashore -vúghera wāto
kundūdu 5b
make it rest on shore -thékera wāto 5c
take boat right out of
water -kándutha wāto 2b

(hom. -thékera = case I).

BEAD n.

1. small ball threaded on string
string for threading beads mundjombo 3/10(4) Ornamental beads makwárara (5)/6
- long string of beads mukwa 3/10(4) see NECKLACE thipáko, 7/8
small string of beads kamukwa komind-jombo 12/13 syn. muhēnga 3/10(4)
- small length-not long enough
if cotton is used instead of string kapáko 12/13
kawānda 12/13
2. bead in the hair kandjohore 12/13
w.v. make little beads in the hair -pōha tundjohore

BEAK n.

- bill of bird (lit. 'lips') mir_ōmo dho thinyunyi /10(4)
w.v.v. be bent, of upper- -kōtja
push into cavity to feed young tūpukithera mirómo 4/6-2b,5c

BEAM n.

1. cross beam of house, supported by two verbicals (long, horizontal pole at base of roof structure) mutāambo 3/10(4)
2. ray, - of light thirwédhima tho kāshe 7/8

BEAN n.

- vegetable, bearing edible seeds in pods dikúnde 5/6
kind of small - ngūndenyambi 10/6
plot of beans in field, garden thikundetji 7/8
- bean-pod 2 thiyūra tho dikúnde Be ready to pick, of beans -gōra
(l. bark) 7/8

BEAR

1. carry - see CARRY
H. carry burden; on back -nēreka
in hand -shimba
on head -tēngena (usually in country); -kwáterera (usually in town) 66-13
on shoulder -shimbera pa
thifúdhí N.B. see further under CARRY
6-5c

1b. fig., carry; - bear one-

- self well, behave well kukukúteka He bore himself before the chief = gha
thiwana 3-7,4a kukutekire thiwana paghutho wafumu
- bear witness -s -nōngonona 99-14 see WITNESS
- bear company -tāta see COMPANY
- bear office kwāta mémano see OFFICE
- bear rule -rāghura see RULE
- carry within oneself -a grudge -túyuka noghukōre see GRUDGE
- bear in mind, remember -gháyaranga 10-9 see MIND
- bear arms -shimba yítwa
- bear out, confirm -tāwa
2. endure, put up with neg. kwimana The people cannot bear his rudeness = haghara
mbadi wa ne kwimana dikuto dyandi dyandi

BEAR (contd)

2. see further under

ENDUREbear patiently with - see
PATIENTLY -

-kára tango no

"Bear patiently with me and I will pay you all"
(Math 18;26) = "Kare tango nange keho
ñanyi na ku ku fute manyinga ghomahe"
He bore down his opponent to the ground =
gha thindekire mukañanani xendi ipasave

3. thrust - down

-thindeka 3-4a

see PUSH

- down, swoop, see
SWOOP

-gwāvura

The Syrians bore down like hawks upon prey =
ha Siriya ha gwavurire yira tjihere payipungura

- to right or left

-píruka kambírum-
bíru 3-4b

-kurudyo endi kurumoho (lit. 'to turn a little
to right or left')

4. produce, yield, give
birth to:

- fruit, of one tree only -kwíma maghúmi

- fruit, of all trees
collectively

-véma mbúyo

See FRUIT, PRODUCE, YIELD cp. kúya mbúyo =
collect fruit, food in the Bush only.

- carry child, of preg-
nant woman

-rēma

- child, give birth to
child

-shámuruka

BEARD n.

hair on lower part of
face
goat's -

mwēndo 3/6(3)

mwēndo
ghoñōmbo /3

N.B. this usually included moustache, whiskers,
as well as hair on chin, Spots on man's beard
usually lasting only a few days - mandhēndhe /6

BEARER n.

person who carries
person who bears letters
message

múka kushimba 1/2

mutūmī 1/2

BEARING n.

behaviour (see BEAR 16)

dikúto 5/6

BEAST n.

1. animal

- of prey - flesh-
eating

thiyáma 7/8

thishéreka 7/8

- a killer

thipághu 7/8

(small - of prey -kapághu, 12)

2. cruel, brutal man.

mūnu gho

mukénya 1/2

see CRUEL

person whom one
dislikesmūnu ghoyu ghana
thimba 1/2

BEAT vt. vi.

1. strike repeatedly -
a person, animal

-pūmura pūmura 10

- black and blue, bruise
severely

-ndjāmandjama 10 He beat him black and blue = gha ndjamandjamine
thikuma

- severely

-pūma syn.

- person severely, knock
them about

-pūmura thikúma - Person to death - -pómbangedha 10/5-9,2a

- knock person about with
fists

-hāmahāma 10

- hard, with one stroke

-pūmura no makōnyi

-pūmura rofótji

BEAT (cont)

1.-person on head with stick

-púmbura pamútwi
nyokatondo

- person with drum

-bóyora ngomá

- with hand, slap, smack

-ngcámbara

see SLAP, SMACK

- with stick, cane person on ground

-mwáshura
(shápa. Sets)

see CANE, THRASH

- person down to ground

-púmbura pamuve

He beat down his enemy to the ground =
gha pumurire ñorewendi pamuve

- breast, of person in mourning

kukupúmbura pa
difembwe 7"The tax-collector beat his breast" (Luke 18;13)
= "Muka kuteritha gha kupumurire padifembwe dyendi."

see CALF, COW, MILK.

- off calf when milking

-kótera ndāna
pakukāma

- off, shake off jumping dog

-púmbura mbwa
gho kurégghaHe beat off the jumping dog = gha pumurire
mbwa gho gha regherere papendi.

- ground, of animal, with tail

-pámara nomuthíra
6-5cThe dog beat the ground with his tail =
mbwa gha pamarire pamuve nomuthira2. strike things repeatedly

- drum

-shíka ngomá

see DRUM 3

- out dust from skin

kukukukumuna
thikúmba 7

- out fire with pales

-gúpaghura
mudiño 15/6-11

- out iron into shape in furnace

-fúra thikúvo

-out a spear head

-tjómona dyóngga

- path, make path by trampling

-djátera 'ndhirá
6-5cThey beat a path through the long grass =
ha djaterire muhonyi ghoghure gho kutenditha ndhira

- ears of corn with stick

-tōvora syn.

- thresh corn

-pámara matúmbi

- tree, bush

-púra túmbi
-púmbura thitondo,
thipumbu3. other meanings

- as the heart

-tótha

- overcome person in fight

-píterera 66-15

- competitor in contest

-háiyitha

- down crops, of rain, wind -thāgha

fig - down a price

-twara kúshi

He beat down the price of the cow to fifteen
pounds = gha twarire kushi mughuro ghongombe
ghomukadhi dhoyipondo dikumi nokwoko

fig - about the bush, speak vaguely

-ghāmba yighāmba
yáyonagoDon't beat about the bush ! come to the point !
= wa ghamba yighamba yayonayo! Ghambe ghoyi
yi di mumaghanoghoye.

BEATING n.

striking

thipúmbura 7/8

caning, trashing

thimwáshura 7/8

Mamwáshero /6

BEAUTIFUL a.

pleasing to eye, ear

wúwa

The Woman is beautiful = mukadhi ne muwa

see PRETTY

to become -

-kára wúwa

A beautiful face = rapara poruwa

to make -

-tēnda wúwa

BEAUTIFY vt. see ADORN	-yéngitha, -ténda wúwa	syn -rémba (see GARNISH)
BEAUTY n. that which pleases eye, ear	wúwa 14/	
BECAUSE adv. on account of see ACCOUNT (2)3	pakátji, mukátji ko	I did this because of you = na thi tendire pakatji koye.
conj. inasmuch as, since, see INASMUCH	shika kénge	Because you have started this, you had better continue = shika kenge nga ghu vareke thi, hashha eshi wa roghere kuhenyena.
see SINCE	(yoyíshi)	
- connecting two sentences	yoyíshi (most common word)	I came because you called me = nineya yoyishi ghuna nwitha
BECKON vt. vi. call person with movement of hand, head	-ráva	He beckoned to her to come = gha ravire kukwendi eshi gheye
BECOME vi. v.t 1. come into being	-kára	The son of God became man = Mwana Nyambi gha karire mukafumu
2. happen aux. v.	dí	What has become of him? = nye yi di rendi?
3. begin to be cop	-kára	He has become a teacher = nga kara mitiri
4. suit, look well on person	nē & wúwa (-róghera)	Daughter, that dress is very becoming = mwanange, thishupata thiya ne thiwa thikuma (mwanange thishupata thiya tha mu roghera thikuma)
BED n. 1. thing on which one sleeps crosspiece for African mattress sleeping mat sleeping mat of animal skin n.vv. with bed - go to - lie in - make one's bed take, keep to one's - , be ill 2. with reference to nature garden - bed seed - bed to bed out, transplant river - bed	ghudídi 14/6(14) ghuhágha 14/6(14) ghuhágha gho thikúwa 14/6(14) thikúmba 7/8 pāti 1a(9)/6(9) -yénda ku -rára -shóngeka -róghitha ghudídi 4-2b -kórwa thirúgha tho dípya 7/8 thirúgha tho mbúto 7/8 -tápeka mbúto 3-4a kúshi dhorwāre	Under the bed = munahadídi (Matiráse, E /6) (i.e. outside the garden-bed = kununda dhothirugha thodipyā)
BEDAUB vt. smear with paint - the body see SMEAR - walls	kukuwētha 7 -kúnya midhūdhū	-thirómba- see SMEAR 1

- BEDAUB vt (cont)
smear mud on each other
in play -rāmbwera 14-23
- BED-CLOTHES n.pl.
(lit 'covering') thikufika 7/8
- BEDDING
blankets mangūgho (10)/6 (10)
- BEDROOM n
room for sleeping - in
town ngonda dho
-rāra 10/6(10)
hut for sleeping 'ndhūgho dho
-rāra 10/6
permanent sleeping-
place marāro /6 see SLEEPING-PLACE
- BEE n.
insect which swarms, stings
and makes honey mūka 1a(3)/2(3),10(3)
bumble-bee- big, black, ditúkutúku 5/6
rolls up excreta
small- black & brown, rumbāmba 11/6(11)
pollinator
nest of - in baobab
tree rupáko mudivúyu nest of bees in rock = rupáko mudíwe 11/6(11)
11/6(11)
honey from cavity in
baobab diyómboyómbo
5/6
nest of - in ground dikwina
dyomúka 5/6
sting of bee runóngá 11/6(11) (pl. marunóngá, 6/(11) hum(noise) of bee
= muvumo 3/
- swarm of bees (lit.
'many bees') mūka dhodhingi
/ 10(3)
w.vv. come out of nest as
swarm of - -róporoka
66/3-14,4b
flyaround as swarm cont-
inually -túka-túka
10
swarm, as - around a
person -pómbo
swarm angrily around a
person -gcámukera
keep on brushing -
from ears - kúkumona
kumátwi
see also SWARM,HONEY
- BEE-EATER n.
carmine - red. African bird
feeding on bees dikámvu 5/6
- BEEF n.
flesh of bull, ox, cow, nyāma yo ngōmbe
see MEAT 1a/
- steak dihúpero 5/6
- BEER n.
drink from fermented malt marōvu /6
honey - marovu gho
mūka /6 Large quantity of -
yeast used to ferment - dinwāmbwā 5/6
ghuhāhu 14/6(14)

BEER (cont)

-not properly prepared - for ploughing	wishu marovu gho ndjambi /6	barley prepared for brewing - (or marovu gho kudimena)	dimenu 5/6
W.VV. to ferment -	kwiritha marovu 4-2b	Make noise, of fermented beer -	-tjoma
add raw malt to ferment stir big pot of - when brewing	-kuwa -thora	(This is to make it ready for drinking)	
weave bag for squeezing- W.nn - cup - pot	-ruka mutoto paghana 10/6(10) kandimbe komarovu 12/13	Squeeze - in bag	-kama nomutoto
- sediment	shete 10/6	Stir sediment of - to make thick brew -theta shete	
refuse malt after brewing	2. yikumbu /8	(1. husk)	

BEETLE n.

black, crawling insect, six to eight legs	thimbumburu 7/8
long-legged black - which bites and sucks blood	dihaghu 5/6
small -	kime 12/13

BEFORE

1. adv. ahead, go- of time - long -	paghutho dhō ghokú badi	They went before him = ha yendire paghutho dhendi They reached home long before he came = ha kumine kudighumbo ruvedhe rorure ghoku badi gheyire
2. prep. in front of- in prescence of	paghutho dhō kwa	He appeared before the house = gha morekire paghutho dhondhugho He appeared before the magistrate = gha ku monithire kwamupanguri
3. conj. before the time of rather than	ghokú badi ghokú badi	Did this happen before you left the village? = a ghothi ne tha karire ghoku badi mwemagharo dighumbo ndi ? I would rather die before I told a lie = ngwa hanyi ni fe ghoku badi na tongwere mbudhi.

BEFOREHAND adv.

in readiness eg prepare- get ready	-roghitha 4-2b	They prepared everything beforehand for the President's visit = ha roghithire yinu yoyihe yothihungera thaMutungi.
---------------------------------------	-------------------	--

BEG vt..vi

ask for - food, money, charity; beg of dog live by begging for food	-kumbera 6-5a -kara no ghushukapembe (id.)	I beg you to lend me one rand = nina ku kukumbera eshi ni yathime randi yofotji.
ask for - leave, pardon	-kumbera 6-5a	I beg for leave; my grandmother has died = nina ku kumbera eshi ni thighe ni yende kambirumbiru; mama nga pu
ask earnestly, or humbly.	-kanderera 66-14	I beg you my son, to be more careful in future = mwanange, nina ku kanderera eshi ghu kunge thikuma muruvedhe ro kughutho

BEGGAR n.

one who begs a fawning -	mukumberi 1/2 mukumberi gho muporothi 1/2	see FAWN
a whining -, complaining -	mukumberi gho muthotho 1/2	

BEGIN vt. vi.		
1. begin to do, start	-tánga syn -váreka syn. -shara	Begin work = mu vareke yirughana
2. - to build, lay foundations	-táteka	They began to build a church tower = ha tatekire karunga
3. undo work done and - again	-tëndurura 66-15	
4. - with, take first	-váreka tángo	I will begin with this woman first = ñanyi ni vareke tango nombuyama yu
id. to begin with, in the first place	pamutángo	Why are you accusing me? To begin with, I do not have a knife like that = Nye muna kunithekithera ? Pa mutango, mbadi na kara nothimende yira thiya.
BEGINNER n.		
one who is beginning	muváreki 1/2	
BEGINNING n.		
start of anything, time when it began	mavárekero /6	"In the beginning" (Gen.1;1) = "MuMavarekero"
w.prep. from the first	mu matángerero 6	
BEGONE ! v.imp.		
more forceful than 'go!'	yénde!	
BEGUILE vt.		
delude, deceive into thinking -	-hōngaghura 15- 11	He has beguiled you into thinking he is on your side = gha ku hongaghurire mumaghayero eshi ghanemane paghuryonga ghoye
BEGUILER n.		
one who beguiles	múka kuhōngaghura 1/2	
BEHALF n.		
(only in phr. 'on behalf of')		
on account of cp. ACCOUNT (2)3	mukátji, pakátji ko	I have come to work on Dinyama's behalf; he is ill = nineya na ni rughane mukatji kaDinyama; kukorwa ghana kukorwa.
BEHAVE	kūkukúteka 3/7,4a	Behave properly, you children! = mwanuke, mu kukuteke thiwana!
BEHAVIOUR n.		
the way a person acts	yikára /8	
good manners	dikúto dyo	(bad manners dikúto dyo díyi)
good manners or	diwa; 5/ thiremeko tho thíwa 7/	
BEHEAD vt.		
cut off the head, usually as a way of killing	-tjínuna mútwi	
BEHIND prep		
1. opposite to 'in front'		
to the rear, at one's back	muniyima dho	
person who is - others in single file	ñurufumu 1a(9)/6(9)	
adv. far -	muniyima dho kayénda	

BEHIND (cont)

just -	munyima vēne	
2. with vv. - follow -	-kútha munyima	Go in front and I will follow behind = mu yende kughutho dhangé nanyi na ku mu kuthe munyima
leave -	-thigha	Our guest has left his blankets behind = mugendawetu gha thighire mangugho ghandi
stay -, remain	-thighara 6-5c	The woman stayed behind in the hut while the others went to the village = mukadhi gha thigharire mundhugho gho a hamweya ha ka yendire kudighumoo
3. of time - time late	munyima dhoruvēdhe	You have come behind the time = ghuneya munyima dhoruvēdhe
- the times, out of date -	-mumaruvēdhe gho karekare	These old men are behind the times (lit. 'they live in olden times') = hakuru wa gho ha kukara mumaruvēdhe ghokarekare

BEHINDHAND adv.

in arrears, especially with payments due.

munyima dho kufuta	You are behind hand in the payment of your debts = ghowe na munyima dho kufuta mbadi ghuna manitha murandu gho kuthighara. (lit. 'you are behind with paying; you have not brought to an end the debt that is remaining')
--------------------	---

BEHOLD vt.

see, LOOK

-mōna, -kēnga

Behold ! = mone ! or kenge !

BEING vbl n.

existing, in being a person

mu-kára
munu

BELATED a.

1. come very late

kwiya munyima dho ruvēdhe

He put in a belated appearance at the wedding = gheyire thikuma munyima dhoruvēdhe rowenga

2. offer - assistance, help

-tápera thiyāka 6-5b
munyima dho ruvēdhe

He offered belated assistance when most of the work was done = gha taperire thiyaka thomunyima dhoruvēdhe ghoku momo ha manithe yirughana

BELCH vi vt

let out air noisily from throat

-hútura

BELIE vt.

give the lie to, give false idea of

-mbúdhipitha 4-2b

His actions belie his words. He says one thing and does another = yitenda yendi yi mbudhipitha maywi ghendi. Gha ghamoa thinu thofotji ghana tendi thimweya

BELIEF n

1. confidence, trust in a person
2. acceptance of a statement as true

thikukanya 7/8
thitáwa 7/8

Belief in God = thikukanya mwaNyambi
Belief in the teachings of the fathers = thitawa muyihonga yawatate

BELIEVE vt.

1. trust, have confidence in a person

kukukanya -7

2. - accept statement as true

-táwa

3. make - pretend

-táwitha 4-2b

He made me believe he was my friend = gha ni tawithire eshi musherewange

BELIEVE (cont.)

4. -, be of the opinion
that, think

-gháyara

I believe we should go now = nina
eshi twa roghera kuy enda dyaro

ghayara

BELIEVER n.

one who believes

muka kukukanya
syn. mutáwi 1/2

BELITTLE vt.

lit.. make little

-mbirupitha
4-2b

usually; despise,
depreciate-oneself
- person for work about
to do

kukushámuna 7
kwina

- person for word done

-nyátha

He belittled the work I had done = gha
nyathire yirughana ghoyi na tendire

see DESPISE

BELL n.

large cup shaped metal sound-
ing when struck
w.v. to ring a -
iron struck to summon
villagers, children to
school

ngéndjo 10/6 (10)
-diritha ngéndjo 2b
katénda 12/13

BELL-RINGER n.

one who rings bells in
church tower

múkakarúnga 1/2

BELLADONNA n.

deadly nightshade, poisonous
plant
fruit of -

mudyángwe 3/10(4)
dighúmi dyo dihungu
dyo mudyángwe 5/6

BELLIGERENT n.

person who is fighting
nation, tribe, who is
fighting

múka kúrwa 1/2
díko
gho díno dína
kúrwa 5/6

BELLOW vi. vt.

1. shout angrily - at a
person
shout, roar with pain
2. of animals - roar as
bull,

kwítha mugúwa
no ghupáta 4-2b
renga
-kumbura

- as, cow, leaving
calf
- very loudly, of
animals

-kumba
-bökwerera

N.B. - Bökwerera is the cry of animals in mortal
pain or grave danger of death.

BELLOWS n.pl.

contrivance for driving
air into blacksmiths fire
handles of -
working -
clay covering to protect-
from fire

mwāndhe 3/
mīdyu /10(4)
mavúkutitho /6
dyūndo; dirēra 6/6

To blow - vúkuta mwāndhe. see SMITH, SMITHY

- BELLY** n.
 abdomen dipúmba 5/6 see ABDOMEN, STOMACH
 bellyache, griping pains
 in stomach - yihúma mudíra, 8
 so, sometimes belly = lie on the - -fúrumana mudíra 5c
 stomach only díra 5
 w.v. crawl on - -kókawa no díra
 "On your belly you shall crawl"(Gen. 3.14)
 = Nanyi ghu kukokawe nodira."
- BELONG** vi.
 1. - here, live here
 { particle nē
 & poss. st.
 2. to be the possession of
 { particle - nē
 & poss. c.
 This man belongs to this village = murume yu
 gho ne yodighumbo di
 These chickens belong here = shushwa dhi na dho
 pano
 This hut belongs to him = ndhugho dhi ne
 dhendi.
 "These beasts belong to Jacob" (Gen 32;17)
 = "yiyama yi na ya Jakobe."
- BELONGINGS** n.pl.
 a person's possessions, yitēre /8
 goods.
 Girl, take your belongings and go! =
 mukamadighana, shimbe yitere yoye ghu
 yende !
- BELoved** n.
 past part. of 'love', dearly
 loved muhákwá
 w.n. my - son mwánange ghó yu nina
 háka
 vi. to be - pass. of
 'love' -hákiwa 7-1
 He is beloved of his friends = hana mu hakiwa
 hashcrewendi. (but, usually in act fm. =
 hasherewendi hana mu haka)
- BELOW** adv.
 at, to lower level, kúshi
 downstairs
 prep. downstream, lower kúshi dho
 down from
 - , of writing below other kwíshi
 lines on a page
 He went below = gha shurukire kushi
 The village is below this part of the river =
 dighumbo dya kara kushi dhomutara ghu ghorware.
- BELT** n.
 strip of leather worn
 round waist mūya 3/10(4)
 ostrich egg shell diraráni 5/6
 w.v. to put things in a kukumáneka 3-7,4a
 to keep on removing -shwāmaghura 15/6-11
 things from
- BEMOAN** vt.
 1. weep over -díra see CRY (1)2 WEEP
 2. express sorrow for -yávingera 6-5a
- BENCH** n.
 long, wooden seat thípura tho thíre 7/8
 -, form used at school for thikúngu 7/8
 children
 carpenter's working table muyūwo 3/10(4) tífishi(táfure - Sets.)
 dho muyuwi la(9)/6(9)

BEND n. (1)

1. knot in rope
2. curve in river, road
curve in a pole

dinúngo 5/6
thipéta 7/8
thipéta tho
thitondo 7/8

see KNOT

BEND vt. vi.

1. force out of straight
pass. he bent (Adolescent)

to make crooked

-péteka 3-4a
-pétama, 8-3
-péta(r)
-pétitha 4-2b

He bent the branch = gha petekire mute

- into ridges, corrugate
-anything soft, to be -

-petadheka 3-24
1. -péta(2. to roll
cloth)

The branch is bent = mute ne wa peta (or petama)
You have bent the handle of this axe crooked =
nga ghu petitha mupinyi ghoxamo

2. -, of itself, -over,
of branch

-nyóngoka

These grass stems are bent = mathina gha ghomuhonyi
gha peta.The branch bends over = mute ghothitondo wa
nyongoka

- pass. be bent, of bird's upper
beak

-kótja

- over, of branch, of tree by river, till branch
enters water yōndwaghara

3. -, of body, part of
body - back

-shóngeka

He bent his head to look up = gha shongekire
gho gha dyamene.

- down or - head down,
or bow head

-fumbera

He bent down to pick the thing up = gha
fumbeere ko kudhamuna thinu

- legs at knees

-hōnya mánwi

He bent his knees to work close to the ground =
= gha honyine manwighendi gha rughane pepi
nomuve.

- see FINGER
-, twist of joints, as
in rheumatism

-ghōnyangera

His joints have become swollen and bent =
mangongotji ghendi gha tughumanine keho gha
ghonyangerire.

4. - a bow, by fixing
string

-rēma ghúta

- by pulling

string to shoot

-nóngá ghúta

BENEATH

- adv. 1. under - see UNDER

mwími dho

Your pencil is beneath the table = katjangitho
koye ka kara mwími dhotishi

- prep. 2. below see BELOW

Kūshi dho

The axe was beneath the tree = kamo ka karire
kushi dhothitondo

BENEFACITOR n.

- one who has done much good
for another
- one who has helped another
much

múka kutēndera wúwa 1/2

múka kuyáka thikúma 1/2

BENEFIT (1) n.

- advantage; for the -of on
behalf of

mukátji ko,
pakátji ko

He has done this for your benefit = nga thi
tendi mukatji koye

BENEFIT (2) vt. vi.

1. do good to

-tēndera wúwa
6-5a

He benefits the people by his work = ghana
kutendera haguva muyirughanayendi

2. receive good from

-tāmbura wúwa

The people benefit from his work = haguva
hana kutambura wuwa muyirughanayendi

BEREAVE vt.

1. rob of life, hope 2. -kúngura(1.plunder) " You have bereaved me of my children"(Gen.42;36)
 =" nga mu ni kungura hanange"
 pass. of death, depriving -férera 66-15 They were bereft of their child = gha wa fereere
 people of relatives muranawo
 2. strip bare - of fruit 3. -pāngura
 - trees (1.judge 2.milk) The trees are bereft of fruit = yitondo ha yi
 pangura maghumi
 -fields by locusts - thigha mbadimo The locusts left the field's bereft =
 dimba dya thighire mapya mbadimo yidya

BERRY n.

- any small stoneless fruit thima 7/8 dried berry - dingóvo 5/6
 bush - dimundu
 5/6,10(4)
 grey - 1. thimba (2. cat.) (1. vt. grudge; 2 avoid)
 ngongo tree berry mwandangongo 3/
 pips of - nanda/10(4) see PIP

BESECH vt.

- see BEG -kumbera

BESET vt.

1. set upon a person -rókokera 6-5b The bandits beset the merchant on all sides
 see ASSAIL, ATTACK = hakamukungu ha rokokere muka kughuritha
 mumitara dhodhihe.
 2. of difficulties, trials -dhinguruka He is beset with many difficulties =
 -surround, assail 16-22 maghukukutu ghomengi gha mu dhinguruka

BESIDE prep.

1. near at hand, close by, kumbádi dho He is sitting beside you = ghana hungumana
 kumbadi dhoye
 2. - oneself, out of (-púká, lit. "They thought he was beside himself" (Mark3;21)
 one's mind 'mad' Sets) = " ha ghayarire eshi ngwa ghana
 see MAD -ghundumuka ghundumuka."

BESIDES adv

1. moreover, introducing káro Besides you do not know that he did this =
 new statement karo,mbadi wa dimuka eshi nga thi tendi.
 2. otherwise, else in pámwé Without his help, I could not have done it
 restricted sense besides = ghoku mbadiko thiyaka thendi,
 cp. ELSE, OTHERWISE ngo kadi ngani twetha kuthitenda pamwe.
 prep.3. except (in neg and shíme ngwa There is none else besides you =
 interrog. sent.) kadiko ghumwe shime ngwa yowe

BESIEGE vt.

1. lay siege to; surround, dhingumwetekedha Davids soldiers besieged the town = hamashorondati
 attack strong place (4a, 2c waDafide ha dhingumwetekedhire dighumbo dyodikuru
 (-dhinga,r=form circle round)
 2. crowd round, surround and -dhūnda dhūnda 10 The villagers crowded round the seller of meat
 press forward = haka dighumbo ha dhundadhundire mughurithi
 see CROWD ghonyama
 3. assail with requests -rámbangedha The people besieged the district commissioner
 see ASSAIL 10/5-9,2a with requests = haguva ha rambangedhire muraghuri
 noyikumbera

BESPATTER vt.

spatter, splash with mud, liquid -māteka 3-4a

The lorry bespattered the walkers with mud as it passed = thikauto tha matekire haka kuyenda nomatapa ghoku thina kupita.

BEST a.

1. sup. of GOOD, WELL wúwa thikúma

He is the best man for the job = yo murume ghomuwa thikuma kutenda thirughana.

w.n. - man, groom's man at wedding mushēre wa muka-yéka, 1

n.w.v. 2. do one's - -tēnda wúwa thikúma

He will do his best = ñanyi gha kutende wúwa wendi thikuma.

adv.w.v. 3. e.g. know - -dímuka wúwa thikúma

You will know best what to do = ñanyi wa kudimuke wúwa thikuma eshi ngepi sho ghu tende.

BESTIR v.

rouse oneself - see ROUSE kukupíndutha 5-7/2b

Bestir yourself and prepare food = kupinduthe no roghithe yidya

BESTOW vt.

1. deposit -páka (lit. 'put') see DEPOSIT

He bestowed his money in the bank = gha pakire manyinga gheni mundhugho dhomanyinga

2. confer as a gift see CONFER. 1 -tápera 6-5a

The chief bestowed his daughter in marriage upon Dimbo = fumu gha taperire mwanendi gha mu yekithire kwaDimbo.

BESTRIDE vt.

1. sit astride, with legs each side of horse, donkey. -tāghama 8-3

He bestrode his horse as a skilful rider = gha taghamine mbi wendi yira mudhini ghomundondoro

2. stand astride over person on ground -tāmarara 6b-14

He bestrode his fallen enemy, with his spear pointed at his throat = gha tambararire ñore yo gha wire, nodyonga dyendi dina nongo mudyu wendi.

BETRAY vt.

1. give up person treacherously to enemy -hóngaghura 15/6-11

Judas betrayed Jesus = Judasa gha hongaghurire Jesusi

2. reveal without wishing to do so -hókora

His agitation betrayed his guilt = kundundumena kweni kwa hokokire murandu wendi.

BETRAYE n.

one who betray another múka kuhóngaghura 1/2

BETROTH vt.

bind with promise to marry, of man kwāndekera 6-5b
bind with promise to marry, of woman kwāndekeritha 6/4-5b, 2b

See ENGAGE, MARRY. - She was betrothed by Disho = Disho gha mwandekerire
She was betrothed by her parents to Disho = mushengataya ne Disho ha mwandekerire

- girl with necklace as pledge of marriage when she becomes a woman kwāndekera 6-5b

BETROTHED n. one betrothed to another	mbándeke mbándeke 1a/2	syn. la/2	(muhándeke, mwándereri)
BETROTHAL-FEAST n. feast given by friends of each party	thitápa 7/8		(hom.thitápa = gift)
BETTER			
a. comp. of GOOD, WELL	hásha		He is the better man of the two = ghaye na mukafumu wa hasha gho pa hawadi.
n. for -	mu hásha		"I take you as my wife....for better, for worse" = nina ku tawa eshi wa kara munduwange.... muhasha endi mughuyi kupita."
adv. phrr. - off, richer more comfortable	ghúshwi kupita		He is better off; he has got cattle = gha kara ghushwi kupita; nga wana ngombe.
w.vv. feel - after ill- ness, accident get - in health	-ndjūwareka -kára hásha (kukwíruka)		Is he getting better ? = a gha kara hasha ndi?
get - of, defeat see DEFEAT	-piterera 66-15		He got the better of his enemy = gha pitererire forewendi
adv. phrr.- had - = would find it wise	hásha		You had better find out if he wants this first = hasha wa kona ka mwipura pa kutanga ngwa gha thi shana.
know - = not be so foolish to do (lit. 'not to act like a fool')	mbádi-tēnda yíra thiyero		I know better than to risk losing my job = kadi shoni tende kenge yo yira thiyero eshi ni yongaritha gho ni mwaye thirughana thange.
think - of = change one's mind	-píruka maghāno 3-4b		I was going to see the chief about this matter, but I have thought better of it = momo ni yende ni ka mone fumu muthitenda thi, keho nga ni piruka maghano ghange
BETWEEN			
prep. in, into, along, across between two limits.	pakátji ko,		He stood between the living and the dead = ghemanine pakatji ko hayumi nawafu.
(adv) cp. AMONG, which deals with highers numbers.	mukátji ko		He walked between them = gha yendire mukatji kawo.
BEWAIL vt. vi. mourn, for, wail over cp. BEMOAN, MOURN, WAIL	-direra 6-5a		David bewailed the death of Absalom = Dafide gha direrire yifa ya Absalom
BEWARE vi. vt. 1. be cautious, take heed	-kóneka		"Beware lest you enter into temptation" (Mark 14:38) = "Mu koneke maghana mwingene mumayerekero".
2. look to oneself, watch out for	-kengerera 66-14		Beware of mines on the road! = mu kengerere yinu yo yina dwayura mundhira!
BEWILDER vt. confuse, perplex - see CONFUSE, PERPLEX	-yerupitha 1/4-2b		He bewildered us by speaking first of one thing, then he began to speak of another = gha ta yerupithire eshi gha ghambire tango muthina thofotji keho gha verekire kughamba muthina thimweya

BEWILDERMENT n.		
1. state of being led astray	thimana thomútwi 7/	
2. confusion, perplexity	thiyerupa 7/	
exclamation of -	hwa !	
BEWITCH vt.		
1. put a spell on	-rōha	The wizard has bewitched me = muredhi gha ni rohire.
2. please very much	-shamberera thikuma 66-14	She bewitched him with her beauty = gha mu shambererire thikuma nowuwa wendi.
BEWITCHED a.		
past part - a - person	mūnu gho kurōha 1/2	
a - thing	thiyóvo 7/8	
BEWITCHER n.		
wizard, witch	murōdhi 1/2	
BEYOND prep.		
on the further side of, past	thámbo diya dho	They have gone beyond the village = nga ha piti thambo diya thodighumbo
surpassing, - understanding v.phr.	-pita yiyúvitha	"Such knowledge is beyond my understanding" (Ps. 139; 6) = "Thidimukitho thongeno na tha pita yiyuvitha yange"
BIBBER n.		
one who takes strong drink eg. wine -	thīnwi tho mandjombo 7/8	"Look at him! a glutton and a wine-bibber!" (Math 11;19) = "Mu kenge kukwendi! Munu gho kudya thikuma nothinwi thomandjombo!"
see WINE		
BIBLE n.		
Old and New Testament Scriptures	baibīli 10/	(Yitjanga yo Kupongoka ... yo Yikwatathana yoThikuru noyo Thipya).
BICYCLE n.		
two wheeled vehicle with foot pedals	mbásikoro la(9)/6(9)	
motor -	katúkutúku 12/13	
BID vt. vi.		
1. command	-ragha	Do as you are bid = tende yira mu ghana kuragha.
2. invite - see INVITE	-shupwera 14-23	"If you are bidden by anyone to a marriage feast" (Luke 14;8) = "ngeshi gha ku shupwera ghuwewa kumukandi"
3. greet, bid welcome	-meritha eshi kume thiwana 4-2b	Bid the stranger welcome = merithe mugenda, gho ka mu ninge eshi kume thiwana.
BIER n.		
stretcher for carrying corpse	thirōngo 7/8	"He came and touched the bier and the bearers stood still" (Luke 7;14) = "Gho ghoyire no gha dovire kuthirongo, keho haka koshimba gho hemanine."

- BIG** a.
 large - see **LARGE**
 a very big person,
 see **GIANT**
 grown up
 - with child, pregnant
 - important
- ghukúru
 mudhímba 1/2
 (eg. dikithi)
 ghukúru
 -rema
 ghukukútu thikúma
- (also didhōdhe, 5/6)
 He is big now = mukuru keho
 He is a big man = mukafumu ghomukukutu thikuna
- BIGAMIST** n.
 man with two wives
- mukafumu mapára
 gha yéka
 1/2
- BIGGER** a.
 comp. of 'BIG'
- ghukúru kupíta
- He is bigger than I = mukuru kupita kunipita
- BILL** (1) n.
 bird's beak - see **BEAK**
- mirōmo dho
 thinyūnyi /10(3)
- BILL** (2) n.
 1. draft of proposed act of Parliament
 2. - of money for goods bought
- mbapíra dho
 thiyedhekeritho
 mbapíra dho
 manyínga 10/6
- tho véta dho paramēnde 10/6
- BILLOW** n.
 a great wave
- dingúmbi dyo dikuru
 5/6
- BILTONG** n.
 bundle of strips of meat dried in sun
 wv to hook -
 to make -
- thitōma
 7/8
 -konata
 -hāngurura
 66-15
- strip of dried, salted meat
- muhāngo 3/10(4)
- BIND** vt. vi.
 tie, attach, fasten -
 which see
 - about many times
 - animal, thief with cords
 - person tightly
 - round top of fence,
 bottom of roof
 - up wounds with bandages
 - or gird oneself -
 see **GIRD**
- wānga
 -wāngawānga 10
 -wāngerera
 66-15
 -tātura 6-21
 -bārera
 -dhínga yitómbo
 kukudhínga 7
- up fence of yard around house - wāngawānga dirápa 10
 "He bound up his wounds" (Lukel0.34) =
 "ghana dhingi yitomboyendi noyihina."
 "He bound a towel around his waist" =
 gha ku dhangire mukata mumbunda dhendi.
- BINDING** n.
 what is tied round
 - around grass walls of hut
- thiwāngitho 7/8
 thibārera tho muhōnyi
 7/8

BIRD n.

- feathered flying creature thinyúnyi 7/8
 1. some birds; blackbird ndhíra 1a(9)/2(9), (hom 'ndhíra = road.)
 - with red mouth, big 6(9)
 brown; 'ku-ku-ku!' dingómba 5/6
 little birds ghurumbu 14/
 - circling when raining
 a little or about to rain kashámamvúra 12/13
 secretary bird kacúva 12/13
 2. kinds of birds:
 fish-eater murudyáthi 3/10(4)
 -inhabiting reeds muraradímbu 3/10(4)
 -sleeping while standing on lily mukóthera paméyu 3/10(4)
 -of prey, snatching living creatures ditjómbo 5/6
 3. concerning birds:
 egg of - dihónyi 5/6
 nest of - thitúnguru 7/8
 nest of - kataratara 12/13
 tail of - muthíra 3/10(4)
 beak, bill of - mirómo / 10(4)
 (lit.. 'lips')
 comb, crest of - mukerengéngé 3/10(4)
 feather, wing of - dyándo
 see WING (pl. mándo) 5/6
 4. w.vv. actions of birds
 feed young with beak -túpukithera Pick up worms with beak as - -ngómona mavinyo
 mirómo 2b, 5b
 become old enough -góra (to leave nest)
 fly - of a - -túka (Circle in air over prey - of eagles, hawks)
 see FLY -see CIRCLE (2)4 -temba
 alight, of a - -túrera, hop, as a - -réghadhana 66
 see ALIGHT -nyótama
 of -, stretching wings in sun to get dry kwamba to get warm -kángura
 to drive up a number of birds -ghündura run, as large -ndōndomona
 to rise up in drove, as birds -ghünduka syn -dādumuna or dwādumuna
 3-4b

BIRTH n.

- bringing forth of a child mashámurukero /6
 bringing forth of a baby animal mwérekithero /6
 w.vv. lying in, at birth -shóngeka lie in, after childbirth -thēngana (3)
 mumashámurukero
 to show signs of being about to give birth -kára ghurēmu see MISCARRIAGE
 birth-pangs or pains -nyát_itha 4-2b
 give -, of a woman -shámuruka
 give - to firstborn -kwédipa 1-(17)
 give -, of an animal kwérekitha 4-2b
 discharge at - -shwágha
 mumashámurukero

- BIRTH (cont)**
- w.n. afterbirth, thikúru
or rumba 7, 11 see AFTERBIRTH
- w.vv severe pain -pindama 8-3
after -shwágha munyíma
come out after - dhomashámurukero
give - yearly kwérekitha kehe
 mwáka 4-2b
w.nn. birthday diyúwa dyo
 mashámurukero
 5/6
- birthright, rights of eldest son ghumbēdi 14/6(14) " Esau sold his birthright to Jacob" (Gen. 25;33)
 = " Esawe gho gha ghurithire ghumbediwendi
 kwaJakobe."
- BISHOP n.**
priest consecrated as
overseer of diocese bishópo 1a/2
- BIT (1) n.**
1. something to eat, - wāpu gho yídyá 14/
of food ndhíndu 10/6 (10)
morsel, piece,-of food mutara 3/10(4) syn. thimíngwa 7/8 - see PIECE
2. -of anything thipíndhi tho
-of cloth díkehē 7/8
3. mouthpiece of horse's
bridle, if wooden thitóndo 7/8 if metal thikúvo, 7/8
n. phrr. - by - bit,
gradually kawána-kawána
wait a bit ! tateere kambirumbíru !
wait-a-bit thorn shrub -mukékete 3/10(4) see THORN-TREE
- BITCH n.**
female dog mbwá gho mukādhi be on heat, as a - kukuthina 7.
 3/10
- BITE vt. vi. (1)**
cut into, nip with teeth -húma
- , of fish, on fishing
line -djúta
- , of mosquitoes -tuyuva
- , of snake only 1. -kúmeke (2.rebuke)
- , each other, tearing
flesh like dogs kukuhúma -7
- , off hard thing -mēnya mēnya 10
- , teeth hard so as not
to laugh -mēnya mēnya 10
- , teeth hard so as not
to cry 1. -dhídhimeke (2. stand)
- , off piece, when
grinding kukúvira 7
- , off piece of meat
to taste -yéreka thinoko
 thonyama
- , out lump of flesh,
as wild dog -dhókora (- or lion, crocodile when mauling)
- BITE n. (2)**
act of biting thihúma 7/8
place of bite mahúmeno /6
- of snake ngomo 10/6

BITTER a.

1. unpleasant, sharp taste.
ant. sweet

mashēshe syn
ghuhāhu

The taste is bitter = muyereko ne musheshe

2. -, harsh, of words

ghurūru

The cold is bitter = ghutenda ne ghururu

3. -, of cold
to be -

ghurūru
-rūrupa (16)

BITTERLY adv.

- of BITTER

no ghurūru

"He wept bitterly" (Luke 22;62) = gha dirire
noghururu"

BITTERNESS n.

- of BITTER
- of spirit

id. 3/
ghurūru 14/
muñu gho ghutjārara

His son's treachery has filled him with bitterness
of spirit = thihongaghura thamwarendi tha
mu yarithire nomuñu ghoghutjarara

BLACK a.

- colour, opp to 'white',
dark without light

wīru

Black person = munu ghomweru; black cattle =
ngombe dhodhiru; black shoes = makuha
ghomeru; black eye = diho dyodiru.

- from -
to become -

muthīro 3
kwīrupa (perf.
ninerupa) 1-(16)

- with black - blackbird -
songbird

ndhīra 1a(9)/2(9), (hom 'ndhīrá = road)

- blackboard - used in
school

manégghedhero 6(9)/6

- blackboard chalk -
for writing, drawing

kanémba, 12/13

- blackguard - rogue,
scoundrel

mūnu gho
ghuringirīngi 1/2

or murīngirīngi 1/2

- blacksmith - iron worker
with fire

mūka-fūra 1/2

BLADDER n.

- bag of human body, animals
for urine

dikāhero 5

BLADE n.

1. flat leaf of corn, grass
appearing above surface

murēre 3/10(4)

- w.vv. to appear, of -
above surface

-shōsha

- to shoot up, of -

-mēna

2. flat part of instrument,
- of paddle

dikéhe dyo
thirapo 5/6

3. - of eg. knife, cutting
edge

ghutwé gho
moko 14/6(14)

see also RAZOR

4. shoulder-blade

dihumba syn.
dirūngarūnga 5/6

BLAME (1) vt.

1. find fault with
see FAULT 3

-hányena 9-5b

He blamed me because things went wrong =
gha ni hanyenine yoyishi yinu yi yendire ghuyi

- BLAME (1) (cont)
 2. put responsibility on -ghāmbēra 6-5b I blame you for putting an inexperienced man in charge = kughāmbēra nina kuku_ghāmbēra mu kupaka muthiraghura murume gho kupira maghano
- BLAME (2) n.
 responsibility for something
 wrong murāndu 3/10(4)
- BLAMELESS a.
 innocent -pīra murāndu
- BLAMEWORTHY a.
 deserving blame -rōghera murāndu
- BLANKET n.
 bed-covering, usually of
 wool ngūgho. 10/6_(10)
 cotton wanda gho ngūgho 14/6(14)
 kind of - used by cacāri 12
 bushmen
 w.v. to put extra - on bed -rūndeka mangūgho
 3-4a
- BLASPHEME vi. vt.
 speak profanely, revile
 God -túka see PROFANE
- BLASPHEMER n.
 one who blasphemes mutúki syn.
 múka kutúka 1/2
- BLASPHEMOUS a.
 profane ghukutúka
- BLASPHEMY n.
 profanity thitúka 7/8
- BLAST (1) n.
 1. strong, sudden rush of
 wind thipúngo tho mupépo see WIND
 7/8
 2. sound of trumpet muyongo gho torompita
 3/10(4)
 3. amount of explosive for
 blowing up wíngi gho thidwāyura
 14/
- BLAST (2) vt.
 1. blow up with explosives -dwāyura
 2. wither, dry up, of crops
 by wind -kukúkutera see SHRIVEL, WITHER: shrivelled, blasted by
 6-5c wind and diseased - -kára ñodya
 blight - through fungus
 mildew -ghōra see BLIGHT
- BLAZE (1) n.
 1. bright, fire mudíro gho
 - of hut, or veld twédhima 3/10(4) Bright flame of fire - rudími romudíro ro
 on fire nyéra 10/6(10) -twédhima 11/6(11)

- BLAZE (1) (cont)
2. - of light thirwédhima thokáshe 7/8
- BLAZE (2) vi
1. burn with flame -túmbuka 3-4b
2. be brilliantly lit -rwédhima thikúma
- BLAZE (3) vt.
-trail, show path by tying -thíreka 'ndhirá 3-4a (2. sprinkle)
knots in grass -théta muhónyi
- BLEACH vt. vi
whiten clothes by putting
them in the sun -kénupitha 4-2b
- BLEAT vi
cry, as sheep -díra
cry, as goat -méma
- BLEED vi. vt.
give out blood kúva manyínga
- from nose kúva muvókótwa
- freely -hóya manyínga
- spouting blood as
jet from wound -régha manyínga
see SPOUT
- by lancing boil to
release pus -yerura 6-5c
- by letting blood, to
cure, of African doctor kukuthāta 0C-7 see INCISION
- BLEMISH (1) vt
mar, spoil beauty, qualities
of -pētha (-shīnya, Sets)
- BLEMISH (2) n.
moral defect, fault muránda 3/10(4)
physical deformity thirema 7/8 physical defect, thipētha, 7/8
scar, see SCAR dikongo 5/6
-on water -melon,
pumpkin dirōnda 5/6
- BLEND vt. vi.
mix things together -vūnganya 13-18
mingle with, mix -vunga(r)
- BLESS vt.
1. consecrate, make
holy. -pōngokitha 4-2b see CONSECRATE, HOLY
2. call holy, adore God -kótamena 9-5b
see ADORE
3. pronounce words of
blessing -kándadheka 3-24 " God blessed them and said, 'Be fruitful and
increase' " (Gen.1; 28) = "Nyambi gho
gha wa kandadhekire keho gho gha wa ningire
eshi, 'Mwereke nomwingipe.' "
4. call upon God to show,
declare his favour -fighera 6-5b " I will bless you and make your name well
known" (Gen.12; 2) = "Nanyi na ku fighere,
nanyi na ku tendere dina dyoye dina kudimukitha
thiwana" God Bless you! = Nyambi gha ku
fighere!

BLESSED, BLEST a.

- | | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. consecrated | ghupōngithi | |
| 2. revered, thought of as sacred | -yēdhékera-dhīrera | |
| 3. fortunate, favoured | -kára no fíghaghudhi | (lit. 'having a blessing') |
| 4. blissfully happy, wanting nothing | ghukaruvīgha | see HAPPY |

BLESSING n.

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| 1. declaring of God' favour | thikándadheka
7/8 | Let it come as a blessing = theye nothikandadheka. |
| 2. calling upon God for favour | fíghaghudhi
10/6 | |
| 3. grace before meals | ndápero dho
-fíghera 10/6 | (lit. 'prayer asking God to bless')
PROVERB: "I will catch the hare in front" = |
| 4. gift of God | thitápa tha
nyámbi 7/8 | "You will receive a blessing in advance for what you have done for me" = "Mbo na kutjidhera kadimbe paghutho." |

BLIGHT (1) n.

- | | | |
|--|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1. plant disease caused by fungus, mildew | mbúto dho kughōra
/10 (4) | see BLAST (2); see GRAIN for MBÚTO |
| 2. plant disease caused by rats spoiling crops | ghutōngo 14/ | |

BLIGHT (2) vt.

- | | |
|------------------------------|--------|
| wither, mar, spoil by blight | -ghōra |
|------------------------------|--------|

BLIND (1) a

- | | | |
|-----------------------------|---------------------|--|
| 1. unable to see, sightless | ghuférero | |
| 2. pretending not to see | -fítha mého
4-2b | He turned a blind eye to what was going on = gha ku fithire meho mbadi gha monine ghothi tha karire.
Are you so blind that you cannot see you are riding for a fall? = a ghuna fa meho kenge yo eshi mbadi ghuna kumona eshi kuyenda ghuna kuyenda ku kuwa ndi? |
| 3. unable to look ahead | kúfa mého | |

BLIND (2) vt.

- | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. lose the power to see | -fítha mého
4-2b |
| 2. deceive - see DECEIVE | |

BLIND (3) n.

- | | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|--|
| a. - person | mūm... gho kúfa mého
1/2 | |
| w.vv to grope as the - | -pápatera | |
| to recover sight as the - | -hura rupára | "to proclaim.....the recovery of sight to the blind"(Luke 4: 13) = "Kutongora..... kuhura rupara kwawa ka kufa mého" |

BLINDFOLD a.

- | | |
|--|-------------------|
| eyes covered with bandage, usually in play | -fíkeera mého 6-8 |
|--|-------------------|

- BLINDNESS n.
being unable to see ghuférero (ghomoho)
14/
w.vv to recover from blind- -hūra rupára
ness
to smite with - -púmura no ghuférero "Smite this host.....with blindness" (2 Kings
6 ; 18) = pumure yita yi noghuferero"
- BLINK vi. vt.
open and shut eyes before
strong light -kópa mého
- BLISS n.
1. gladness yisháamberera /8
enjoyment mayákwero /6
2. blessedness rwigherero 11/
perfect joy yishógherera yo
-yéranitha /8
- BLISTER n.
water bubble on skin dihútu 5/6 (N.B. caused by rubbing, burning) -
to become blistered -shwagha dihútu (hom. dihutu = chaff)
- BLOAT vt. vi
swell, as cattle after -būta see SWELL
feeding well
puffed up with gas, as -nāna syn. -fútha fútha, 10
corpse -kúta Swell of stomach through constipation - -ndindimara
distend, swell of stomach
when eaten well
- BLOCK n. (1)
log of wood dighōwa 5/6
tree stump thithíki 7/8
chopping - thiyeyero 7/8 (N.B. if used by carpenter, thiyūwero, 7)
- BLOCK vt (2)
obstruct the way, as -vúka syn. That tree is blocking the way = thitondo
fallen tree -káñera 5c thiya ne tha vuka ndhira.
-up, obstruct hole, (-yāndherera = shut)
entrance
obstruct proposal at -vúka thiyēdhekera They blocked the proposal in the council
meeting meeting = ha vukire thiyedhekera mumakonganeno
ghongotha.
- BLOCKADE vt. (1)
shut up a place to starve -kañera 6-5c Warships blockaded the seaport to stop ships
into entering, the harbour = yimiva yomvo ya
surrender, or prevent entry and exit syn.-vúka kañerire dighumbo dyodikuru dyodikuruviya
kwimeka yinemeka yimiva maghana sho yingene diya.
- BLOCKADE n. (2)
shutting up of a place by- thikañera tho kwimeka
7
- BLOCKHEAD n.
person who is dull, slow shiyúvu
of understanding 1a/2

BLOOD n.

1. red liquid running through
veins to heart manyinga /6
clot of - dirodhi dyo manyinga
vessel of - (irr.pl)thipa, 7^{5/6}

N.B. no distinction is made between veins and arteries in Mbukushu

- 2.w.vv blood-shot, of eye, -piruka manyinga
tinged slightly with - ghomambiru
run, give out - bleed kuva manyinga
see BLEED

see also JET, STANCH

- let-blood, of African
doctor, to cure
shed-cause-to spilt
smear with -

kukuthata 00-7

see INCISION

-notora manyinga

N.B. result of blow, use of knife, thrashing

kukuposha no manyinga

- 3.w.nn -royal, belonging
to royal family
-money, fine for killing
person

manyinga gha
fumu /6

He belongs to the blood royal = waye ne
ghomanyinga ghafumu.

manyinga no manyinga

N.B. paid to next of kin.

- 4.fig. bad -, ill feeling Yikuyuva yoyiyi

- in cold-, deliberate
killing

-pagha no ghayara

Few people kill in cold blood = hanu hohapu
hana pagha no kughayara

BLOOM (1) n.
flower

mutemo 3/10(4)

BLOOM (2) vi
flower

-téma

BLOSSOM (1)
flower

mutemo gho kucuka
3/10(4)

BLOSSOM (2)
open into flower

-yandhurura
mumitemo 15

BLOT (1) n.

1. ink - stain

thikuthimangedha tho
ingi 7/8

2. blemish - moral
blemish - physical

murandu 3/10(4)
thipetha 7/8

BLOT vt. vi.

1. spot with ink, smudge

-thimangedha
10/5-9,2c

see STAIN, SMEAR 4

2. - out, efface, obliterate,

rub out

-dhongonona 99-15

see ERASE (obliterate)

RUB

- out and destroy,
exterminate

-yipitha popahe
4-2b

3. dry with blotting
paper, absorbing ink

CC kukukuteritha
4-5c,2b

BLOT (cont)

3. dry with blotting paper,
absorbing ink

OC kukúkuteritha
4-5c 2b
no mbapíra dho
-yūritha
ko -háta ingi

He dried the writing on the page with blotting paper, absorbing the wet ink = gha kuk-uterithire mutjango pakutwi no mbapira dho kuyuritha, ko kuhata ingi.

BLOW vi. vt. (1)

1. of wind - cause air to
move

to be blown about -
on sea

-púnga
-púngumuka
8(9)3-14,4b

- off one's feet, of wind, in storm
= púngumuna 09-14

to be blown about -
on land

-pépumuka
8(9)3-14,4b

To be blown about continuously - pépaghuka 15/6-11
It is blown about by the wind = mupepo ghuna
thi pepumuna

- upon, as wind

-pépumuna
89-14

- against, as contrary
wind

-tjīna na mupépo

- as strong wind

or kūngundūnga
kúnda kúnda 10

" A mighty wind blew over the surface of the waters " (Gen. 1; 2) = " Mupepo ghoghutanavu wa ngundungire pawiru peghuru dhomeyu "

- leaves off trees, as
wind in August

kukúkumuna

2. of the mouth, blow air
into, eg. football

-fúðhera 6-5b

blow out air from mouth

-héðhera 6-5b

-strongly from mouth,

-tóthatótha 10

puff and pant

-pēmba

- the nose, to clear it

3.-bellows of blacksmith's
fire

-vūkuta mwāndhe

- fire with breath

-fúðhera mudíro 6-5b

4. other uses - oneself up,
as frog

kukufudha dikure 7

- over, pass over, of
clouds

2:túta (1. go to)

When these rain clouds have blown over we will go on our way = ghopa mavuyi ghomvura nga gha tutu hanyi tu yende mundhiradhetu

- trumpet

-fúðha torómpita

- up, by explosion

-dwayura

BLOW (2) n

1. hard stroke with fist ngōmi 10/6

2. hard stroke with weapon, thipúmura 7/8
weapon giving - thipúmuritho 7/8

BLUE a.

colour of sky or deep sea ghutára

A blue sky = diwuru dyoditara

BLUNDER vi. vt.

1. move along blindly

-yēnda kughútho,
yira munu gho
kufa meho

He blundered on in the dark, sometimes stumbling = gha yendire kughutho munakokore yira munu gho kufa meho, gha pundukire rumweya

BLUNDER (cont)

2. upon, find by accident -wāna no ghúte
 3. make a bad mistake -tēnda ghūyi

He blundered upon the right way = gha
 wanine ndhira dho kurogha no ghute
 I blundered badly in not recognising him =
 na tendire ghuyi yoyishi mbadi na mu dimukire

BLUNT a.

1. lacking a point or edge ghūfu
 2. speaking plainly dihamu

The knife is blunt = moko re dhifu

His words are too blunt for me to like him =
 maywi ghendi ne mahamu thikuma moadi na mu haka.

- w.vv. become blunt -kára ghúfu
 become blunt of fish-hooks -ghadjiva ghúfu
 - of a point -ngumangeritha 6/4-5c/2b
 be - simply; v. of ghufu
 -fúpa
 be - of a sharp instrument -ngumangera 6-5c

The point of my pencil has become blunt =
 ghuhura gho katjangitho kange nga ghu
 ngumangeritha.

syn. -kára ndumundumu (red)

BLUSTER vi. vt.

- talk, big, noisily and threateningly kukuyonga CC 7

He tried to bluster his way out of the
 accusations = gha yerekire kukuyonga mundhira
 dhendi kushwagha mumarunderero

BOARD n.

1. wooden plank thikungu 7(8)
 2. notice-board thikungu tho
 yidimukitha 7/8

syn. (e) purānga, 8(pl.6)
 N.B. board for posting notices

3. side of boat in phr. 'overboard'
 within the boat in phr. 'on board'

He has fallen overboard = ghana wera muneyu
 ghana shwagha muwato

Is there any food on board? = a yidya muwato
 yi di ndi?

- w.v. to board about -pérāma wāto 3
 4. governing body, - of institutions ndhāngo 10/6
 (10)

He boarded the boat to cross the river =
 gha peramine wato ko kutjina na rware

BOAST (1)

1. a proud statement of one's own ability thishéwe 7/8
 2. an utterance of praise about oneself thikukukúgha 7/8
 3. an utterance of pride about one's possessions dīywi 'dyo
 dihuna 5/6

dyo yimūna

BOAST (2) vi. vt.

1. speak proudly of one's ability kukushéwapa (17)
 2. -about, praise, extol oneself kukukúgha 7
 3. -about one's possessions - hūneka

see PRIDE, VAUNT

see EXTOL

- BOAT n.
1. canoe irr. wáto, (pl. máto, mawáto) 14/6(11) N.B. a little canoe, káto 12/13
old canoe, dikúngu 5/6
ship thimíva (thiképe, Sets.) 7/8
speed boat ditjotjoma 5/6
 2. parts of - bow dirume 5/
stern dikadhi, 5 5/
gunwale, upper edge mughambi 3/
of boats side mumatjfi 3/
rib of - dironga 5/6
side of - thirapo 7/8
paddle thineghedhitho
rudder of ship tho thimíva 7/
 - w.vv. 3. making a canoe -
carve the bow -ghushenga
hollow inside of - ramaghura 15/6-11
smooth wood inside the -ghúdyadyangédha
10/5/9,2a
balance, of - in water -djátama 8-3
put finishing touches to a -kónora
 4. using a boat - launch a -thindeka 3-4a lower into the water -thékura wato 6-8
beach a - -thékera
embark on a - -pérama 8-3
put. things on board- -péreka yitère
muwáto 3-4a
disembark from a - -kánduka
set a - afloat in the water -vúghera 6-5c
paddle a - -vúgha Paddle canoe towards place, people =
-rwerwemithera 4/6 - 2a, 5b
 - paddle canoe in deep water -rápura
 - paddle canoe against current -dídika
 - paddle canoe with current -vóghedha rorure 2a Pull canoe into bank and hold -kúndekera 3/6-4a, 5c
 - sail a ship - see SAIL
 - detach - from moorings -shútununa wáto Rock - from side to side - -dēngaghuka 15/3-11/4b
mumawangero 99-15 Stop from moving -kava
- BOB n.
- move up and down, of head, eg. in moving vehicle -yumághuka 15/3-11
- BODY n.
1. human body yirāma /8
dead -, corpse mwímba 1/2 (pl. hémba) - see CORPSE
(thitutu, 7. sets)
bodyguard, one who mukēngereri gho
guards an important yirama 1/2
person

BODY (cont)

1. anybody - any person kehēno
 parts of - see under
 separate entries -
 part of - mutāra gho yirāma
 3/10(4)
 shape of - bodily
 shape nūngu dho yirāma " Revealed in bodily shape" (Phil 2;8) =
 10/6(10) " Kuhokoka munungu dhoyirama"
 2. collection of people, -
 small group dikóngaghana (Kashumba, 12/13)
 5/6
 compact - dikóna 5/6
 large - crowd, mbúnga 10/6 (10)
 see also FORCE (1) 2
 SOCIETY

BOER n.

- person of Dutch origin mumbúru 1/2
 in South Africa

BOG n.

- piece of wet, spongy ground mamátumátu /6
 mud, mire - see MUD, MIRE matápa /6

BOGGED get -,vi

- get bogged down; sink in
 mud -póroka 6-5c
 get bogged down; stick in
 mud -pátamena 9-5c

BOIL n.(1)

- hard lump, generating dirōnda 5/6
 pus
 festering - dirōnda dyo -túra túra
 5/6
 - w. ripe pus dirōnda dyo see PUS
 ghúrwa ghoghukóndi 5/6

BOIL (2)

- Bubble up, of liquid when
 hot and steaming kwíra (2. crackle) (perf. ninerwa)
 - something cause pot to kwíritha 4-2b
 keep pot boiling kwíritha kanyúngu 4-2b
 - porridge -shúka
 - w. bubbling noise tjóma
 - over, of kettle, water -yáruka
 syn.-fúdhumuka 3-4b
 - over, of water, making
 noise bwákata
 - away, of water -pwérera(r-pwa) 66-15 - so fiercely and long that water filling pot
 be boiling hot, of water, reduced to half 1.-hēreritha (2.pound)2b
 any liquid méyu ne mudíro thikúma (lit. " the water is very hot")

BOISTEROUS a.

- violent, rough, of wind ghukukútu

BOLD a.

- brave, confident ghupáta

- BOLD (cont)**
 ready to dare anything,
 daring ghupáta gho-yéreka
 presumptuous, arrogant, kúkumōna Young man, you are too bold before your elders
 too - = mukafumwana, we, ghuna kukumona thikuma
 see ARROGANT, PRESUMPTUOUS pathutho walakuru woye
- BOLDNESS** n.
 of BOLD ghupáta 14/
- BOLT** n. (1)
 sliding bar of metal, wood,
 to fasten door mupáko 3/10(4) (-gho kuyandheritha rubati = for
 shutting door)
- ,v, to slide a - on a door - shwámeka mupáko
 3-4a
- BOLT** vi. vt. (2)
 1. run army from master, of
 horse -yúkuka
 - out of enclosure, a
 dog through hole -tjira kabwābwa
 2. fasten door with - -bera bera mupako The dog bolted out of the hole in the fence =
 - in out, shut in, muditete
 exclude kupwa ko kubērabēra
 mupáko
- BOMB** n.
 container of explosive as
 as weapon thishimbero tho
 thidwayura 7/8 - yira thitwa; thidwayura 7/8
- BOMBARD** vt.
 1. batter with bombs,
 bullets -pūmurapumúra 10 - no yidwayura no maghōnga gho ghūta
 2. assail with argument,
 abuse -rámbangedha
 10/5-9/2a - nō nānani no yishērera - see ASSAIL 2
- BOND**
 n. 1. rope binding captives,
 prisoners thiwāngitho 7/8 see BLIND(N.B. strongest word) thitáturitho 7/8
 n. 2. agreement binding two
 parties thikwátathana
 7/8 - tho thina kuwānga tushumba tuwadi - see
 AGREEMENT
- BONDAGE** n.
 slavery ghupika 14/
- BONDMAN** n.
 male slave mupika gho murūme
 1/2
- BONDMAID** n.
 female slave mupika gho mukádhi
 1/2

- BONE** n.
 part of framework of body thishokōra 7/8
 back - spine thishokōra tho syn. mughōngo, 3/10 (4)
 mughōngo 7/8
 breast -, of ox kandjigha 12/13
 cheek - ngwevo (thishokōra
 tho ditama) 10/6(10)
 collar bone digáva(mutambo gho muyidi) 5/6
 elbow bone kakōkōna 12/13
 ankle - dingōngotji 5/6
 hip - thishokōra tho nyōnga 7/8
 jaw - mōmotji 10/
 thigh - thishokōra tho ditámi 7/8
 w.vv. break a bone, fracture -tjōka
 3-4b
 dislocate a - -ghōyoka syn. see DISLOCATE
 -ghōmoka 3-4b
 pick a -, of a dog -kōrokōta thishokōra - throw bones, of African doctor, cast
 lots -nókithera hánga 6-5c
- BONUS** n.
 something extra, into the bargain furufénde 10/
 eg. when buying much at a store
 see GRATIS
 eg. gratuity after work done furufénde 10/
 see GRATUITY
 She bought so much at the store that the store-
 -keeper gave her a bonus of sweets as she left.
 = gha ghurire wingi ghongeno muthitora eshi
 mughurithi gha mu pire furufende dhowiki ghopa
 gha shwaghire.
 He seems to expect a bonus after the work he
 has done for you = kuninga yira eshi ghana
 kukengerera furufende munyima thoyirughana
 ghoyi nga tendi mukatji koye.
- BOOK** n.
 sheets of writing enclosed in cover mbapíra 10/6
 w.vv. open - -yándhurura mbapíra
 66-8, 15
 close - -yándhera mbapíra 8
 n. turn over pages of- -rikaghura mbapíra
 15/6-11
- BOOM** (1)
 n. sound of distant gun, thunder thánduka
- BOOM** (2)
 vi. make sound of distant gun, thunder kwánduka
- BOON** n.
 l. request, thing asked for thikúmbera 7/8 see ASK, REQUEST

BOON (cont)

2. favour

thirómba tho thitówara

gift

thitápa^{7/8}

3. a great help

thiyáka tho
thikúru^{7/8}

The opening of the store is proving to be a
boon to the people = kuyandhuruka kothitora nga
tha kara thiyeka thothikuru thawaguva

BOOT n.

shoe coming above ankle

dikúha 5/6

BOOTH n.

1. temporary shelter

ghutára 14/6(14)

2. shelter for corn
watchers

thitángure 7/8

BORDER n. (1)

1. boundary between two
countries

mururwáni 3/10(4) see BOUNDARY, DEMARCATION

w.v. to cross the - into
another country

-tāghurukera 5c

limit, of land between
villages, families

muyīndha 3/6 (irr. pl. mayīndha 6) - of ploughed land
ngora dho ghudimi 10/6 (10)

2. - of a garden

thiruwa 7/8

3. of kaross

mudhidi dhōngūgho-as EDGE 4
3/10(4)

BORDER vt. vi. (2)

adjoin of two territories
plots of land

kukuyīndha 0C -7

BORE (1) vt. vi.

make hole with revolving
tool

-túyura

make hole by digging

-thíma

BORE (2) n.

1. hollow of barrel of
gun

muyéngo gho ghúta
3/10(4)

2. bore-hone, small

deep hole to find water

dithíma dyo mbora 5/6

BORE (3) vt.

weary with dull, persistent
talk

-rúngangedha 10/5- She bored him with her persistent chatter =

be bored, fed up

1.

9,2a (see INTERRUPT 1) gha mu rungangedhire no
-kómena(2.replete) kutaratara kwendi kodingungwa

BORER n.

1. person who bores holes

múka kutúyura syn.

2. tool which bores holes

múka kúthima 1/2

djoko, 10/6(10) (see AUGER); djoko is the best word.

(b)boro thithimitho 7/8

BORN pp. a

be - become, into world
at birth

-shámuruka

BORN (cont)

be - at place of, indicating origin w.nna. first-born child	kwérekera 6-5c kwéreka mbédi 1a/2	He was born of a woman = gha mwerekire mbuyama Still-born child, one born dead, see DELIVER 2 = ditúku 5/6
a last-born child	ñómba 1a/	
p.p.a be well born, of high percentage	kwéreka kwáwafūmu	

BORROW vt.

obtain use of another's property for a time	-yáthima	see LEND
return thing borrowed	-hútha	
retain and use borrowed thing beyond time lent	kukushímbera 7/5a	see USE
-person's property without their consent	2. kukumónnda 7	(1. Eat, 4;3. death)

BOSOM n.

person's breast	difēmbwe 5/(6)
woman's breast	dyēre, 5 (pl. mere, 6)

BOTH

a. two, not just one pron. two, not just one	hahéya	Both men came = haka fumu hahéya heyire.
a) with no.	hawádi	Both came = hawadi heyire.
b) with of pron.	mo mú ghuhéya wáwo	Both of them came = momu ghuheya wawo heyire.
c) with pron. as subj.	hahéya	They both came = heyire waheya.
-as pred.		
adv. (a) - almost a pron.	hahéya	Both father and son came = tate namwānendi heyire waheya
(b) def. use as adv.	káro	They both came and worked = heyire karo ha rughanine
(c) - with more than two nn.	hahéya	Both father and son and grandson =tate na wanendi namwikurwendi heyire wa heya

BOTHER vt & vi.

1. trouble, worry, see TROUBLE	-twámithera 4/6, 2b, 5b	"Why bother the Master any further?" (Mark 5;35) = "Nye ghuna kutwamithera yu Mitiri?"
worry person trying to work	-shédha	Don't bother me now when I am trying to work = wa ni shedha pano ghopa nina kuyereka kurughana
see WORRY 2		
pester, worry persistently	-nyándeke 3-4a	Don't keep on bothering me! = wa ni nyandeka!
be troublesome, cause irritation	-nyéghenya	You bother me with your stupid remarks = wa ni nyeghenya noyighamba yoyiyero.
see ANNOY, PESTER, VEX IRRITATE		

BOTTLE n.

glass container of liquid	dikéndi 5/6	(dibwítiri 5 - Sets.)
w.v. suckle child on milk	-yámweka mwána 3-4a	-nománhwe gho dikéndi

- BOTTOM** n.
 1. lowest part on which a thing stands, base. ditáko 5/6 The bottom of a pot = ditako dyokanyungu
 2. hind quarters of body matáko(pl.) /6
 3. - of river, ground beneath water kúshi dhorwāre
 at the - padiye
 - of a deep pool rundānda 11/
 - of shallow water ghukāndami 14/
 w.v. to find the - -wāna kushi
- BOUGH** n.
 tree-branch múte 3/10(4) see BRANCH
- BOULDER**
 large, rounded stone díwe dyodikúru 5/6
- BOUNCE** vi. vt.
 rebound, spring back after impact -túnungura The arrow bounced back from the trunk of the tree =
 -ko húka munyima dikango dya tunungurire ko kuhuka munyima dhodithina dyothitondo
 rebound, - as ball from ground -régha (lit. jump)
 - off a target and hit another object -túnungura The arrow bounced off the tree and hit the man=
 ko-pánduka dikango dya tunungurire thitondo ko kupandukera mukafumu
 - up and down in a moving truck 1. -héta ghuka (2. BUBBLE)
 15/3-11/4b
- BOUND** n. (1)
 1. limit to which land extends muyindha 3/6
 n.pl. out of bounds, beyond the limits thámbodya dyo The schoolmaster put the village out of bounds =
 mayindha mitiri gha tendire veta eshi dighumbo dina thambodiya thomayindha.
- BOUND** vt. (2)
 set bounds to, limit -páka mayindha
- BOUND** vi (3)
 1. bounce, rebound see BOUNCE
 2. spring forward, leap, of child, small animal -shámba kughútho The little girl bounded forward to meet her father
 = mukamadighana gha shambire kughutho kutjingawara wihe.
 spring forward to attack -régha táthera The leopard bounded forward to attack him =
 ndhogho gha mu reghire ko kumutathera
- BOUND** a. (4)
 ready to start, or having started for (in Mbukushu included in v.)
 We are homeward bound = kuyenda tuna kuyenda kudighumbo

BOUNDARY n.
see BORDER

BOW n. (1)

- | | | |
|---|-----------------------------|--|
| 1. curve | thipéta 7/8 | |
| rainbow - see RAINBOW | múto gho mvúra | |
| 2. weapon for shooting arrows | 3/10(4)
ghúta 14/6(14) | |
| w.vv. to bend a- by fixing string | -rēma | To bend into shape of a - -péteka 3-4a |
| to bend, draw- by pulling to aim | -nóngá | |
| to carry a - | -yámbata | |
| to fit an arrow to a - | -pámeka ghúta 4a | |
| to shoot with a - | -kóngha; syn.-nyama | |
| 3. bow of waggon | kakúrvera ko thiháito 12 | |
| bow-legged, with legs wide apart at knees | nūngura 10 | |
| bow-saw, saw with curved handle | sáha ghó kunínga 1a(9)/6(9) | yíra ghúta |
| bow-shot, distance which arrow can reach | kayénda ko dikāngo 12/ | |
| bow-string, string of - | kagōma 12/13 | |

BOW vt. vi. (2)

- | | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1. submit, bending head to show submission | -fúmbera | I bow to the decision of the Council = nina kufumbera kutawa mbanguro dhongotha. |
| -head in agreement, greeting | -fúmbéritha mútwi 4-2b | |
| -head to show thanks | -fúmbéritha mútwi ko kutumbera 4-2b | |
| -down before superior | -fúmbéra | |
| 2.- back to receive burden | -fúmbéra mughōngo | |
| - double | -fúmbéra | |
| - knees | -hōnya mánwi | |
| - neck | -fúmbéra | |
| - oneself down | kukupéteka 7 | |
| to be bowed down, in pain | kukuhōnyahōnya notjítju 7-10 | |

BOW n. (3)

- | | |
|--|-----------------|
| bending of head, body as gesture, movement | thifúmbera 7(8) |
|--|-----------------|

BOW n (4)

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------|
| forepart of boat, prow | dirúme 5(6) |
|------------------------|-------------|

BOWELS n.pl.

- | | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------|---|
| coiled part of abdomen, intestines | yihōye /8 | Have you opened your bowels to-day? 1.=a ghuna yende kumuthitu dyarero ndi? (lit. 'have you been to the Bush to-day?') 2. a ghuna yandhurura yihoye yoye dyarero ndi? |
| see DIARRHOEA, LOOSE | | |

- BOWL** (1) n
 basin - for washing - thísha 7/8
 see BASIN
 large, earthen. dyōma 5/6
 small, wooden - karōnga 12/13
 drinking - vessel - of any kind- thinwitho 7/8 (-with long handle, as calabash) for drinking
 - of a pipe kanyúngu kombiya 12/13 muteko 3/10(4)
 small- used to play musical instrument katéghana 12/13
- BOWMAN** n
 archer múka kukōndha dikángo 1/2
- BOX** n (1)
 rectangular receptacle with
 lid thikéssha 7/8
 big - mbángu
 10/6(10)
 lid of - muhúko gho thikéssha 3/10(4)
 w.vv. open a - -yándhurura thikéssha 66-8,15
 shut - -yándhera thikéssha 8
- BOX** b vb vi (2)
 1. slap person's ears with hand -ngcám-bura mátwi non-
 yára see SLAP
 2. fight with fists -púmura nomangōmi see FIST
- BOY** n.
 young male till age of puberty mungáwána; murumyána 1/2
 herd - mundénggeghána gho
 -ditha 1/2 -mundénggeghána, I. n. pl hangáwána
 - just circumcised ditjáha 5/6 see YOUTH 2. syn. mughúndju, 1
- BOYISH** a.
 having the spirit and ways of boy mundénggeghána-kádhi
- BOYHOOD** n.
 age of being a boy ghundfnggeghána
 syn. ghungághu 14/
- BRACE** n. (1)
 1. thing that clasps, tightens, holds thingángamekedhi 7/8
 2. pair of braces for trousers mukóno gho maghurukwe
 3/
3. pole that strengthens building thitóndo tho-tánaritha
 'ndhughó 7/8

BRACE (2) (cont) vt.

1. secure tightly, clasp -ngangamekedha
3/5-4a,2c
2. support (lift up) -yeyura
3. couple together firmly -ramakanya 3/13-18 They secured the rafters to the apex of the hut,
bracing them with wire = ha ngangamekedhire
mañonda kumutwi. ghondhugho, ko ku gha
ramakanya nondarata

BRACELET n.

1. ornamental bangle for
wrist, big ring -dikayi 5/6
dindindira 5/6
metal - for wrist or dingondo
copper anklet thiyonga
syn thipama 7/8
grass - kashambo 12/13
2. - under knee, of iron ditheka 5/6
- under knee, of animal
tail and metal ghurutji 14/6(14) N.B. made of giraffe or wildebeest's tail, and
copper or brass

BRACKETS n.pl.

- parenthesis; punctuation
marks mitakatji-dimukitho /4 (M.T.)

BRAG vi

see BOAST

BRAID (1) n.

- plait of hair - see PLAIT thiyiho 7/8

BRAID (2) vt.

- plait, entwine hair -
see PLAIT -ruka

BRAIN n.

- nerve centre of body located
in head ghurwi 14/
- w.vv blow out one's brains,
i.e. shoot in head -kondha kumutwi
rack one's brains,
i.e. think hard -ghayara thikuma

BRAINY a.

- clever ghutari

BRAKE (1) n.

- mechanical device for
checking wheel movement thimekitho 7/8

BRAKE (2) vt.

- apply - to wheel kwimekitha 4-2b
release - on wheel -yenditha 4-2b

BRAN n.

grain husks separated from
flour after grinding dihútu 5/6 see HUSK

BRANCH n. (1)

1. limb of tree múte, 3/10(4) syn. thipáro 7/8. small - káte 12/13
pacatára 10/6(10)
young - katéghana. syn. N.B. shoshoghána = a tiny new branch sprouting,
12/13 shoshoghána 10/6(10) or sprout from ground
dead - thára 7/8
flat - múte gho kuyátama
-like a palm thínándjwi 3/10(4) 7/8
2. - of a family - connect- hongōtha dhofótji
ions - relatives hápa (1a)/2
3. - of a river, tributary -rwareghána 11/16(11)
- of a road 'ndhirághána 10/6

BRANCH vi. (2)

1. put forth branches, of
a tree -tándeke 3-4a
2. branch off, as veins kukuyōra kothīpa
7/8
branch off, as road -hámbuka see DEVIATE

BRAND (1) n.

1. piece of charred or
burning firewood thihángekitho 7/8
2. ownership mark on
cattle, made by hot iron ditjwayo 5/6 see SIGN (1) 1
3. trade mark stamped on
goods thínéggha tho - púmura, 7
4. mark put on Cain (Gen.
4. 15) thínéggha 7/8 mark branded on slave, criminal thínínga 7/8

BRAND (2) vt.

1. - cattle with hot iron,
wire, knife -tjwāya
2. give person bad name,
stigmatise kwítha dína They branded him as a coward = ha mwithire eshi
ne mwoma, keho dína dya dyamu kakaterā
(lit. 'they called him a coward, and the name
stuck to him')
(lit. 'call name that
sticks') ghodi kukákatera

BRANDISH vt

wave weapon before using it -púndha He brandished a knife threateningly before
his eyes = gha pundhire thimende no kuharukera
paghutho dhomeho gheandi

BRASS n.

mixture of copper with tin
or zinc thiyóngā 7/8

- BRAVADO** n.
display of courage thimónitha tho 7/8
ghupáta; thikúkutánawera
- BRAVE** (1) a.
full of courage, fearless 2. ghupáta (1. Anger) A brave man = murume ghomupata.
- BRAVE** (2) vt
meet with courage -hāngana no
ghupáta He braved his enemy's attacks = gha hanganine
noghupata yitathera yañorewendi.
- BRAVERY** n.
courage ghupáta 11/
- BRAWL** (1) vi
squabble, quarrel noisily over petty things -kañana
- BRAWL** (2) n.
a squabble ñānani 10/6 (10)
- BRAWLER** n.
one who squabbles muka-kañana 1/2
- BRAWN** n.
well developed muscles thipa tho ngcāmu
7/8
strong biceps - see
MUSCLE nyama shāngura yo
ngcāmu 9/
- BRAY** (1) vi. vt.
1. cry, as a donkey -dīra
2. sound as trumpet -yonga
- BRAY** (2) vt.
pound, with pestle and mortar kúwa see POUND, STAMP
- BRAY** (3) vt.
- skin, removing it with boiling water 1. -hútura (2. scratch) see SKIN (2) 2; smear skin when - -tjájá
- BREACH** (1) n
1. breaking of contract, promise thimwāgha 7/8 (lit. 'a throwing away')
breaking of law, rule thirégha 7/8 (lit. 'a jump')
breaking of peace in fighting, riot thirégha 7/8
2. - breaking of friendship relationship. thikuyákuthana 7/8 (lit. 'separation')
3. - gap in wall théro see GAP
- BREACH** (2) vt. vi
break through, make gap in wall -tēnda théro The soldiers breached the fortifications of the
enemy = hamashorondati ha tendire thero mumidhudhu
dhongcamu dhawafore.

BREACH (2) (cont.)

- throw into - send to enter -túma wángu
ko kwingena
thero
Their commander threw his best troops into the
breach = muraghuriwawo gha tumine wangu hamashor-
ondatiwendi hohawa thikuma ko kwingena muthero
- stand in -, bear brunt of
attack
kwimana muthero
The best troops of the enemy stood in the breach
to stop them entering = hamashorondati hohawa
thikuma hawañore hemanine muthero eshi hemeke
ko kwingena paya

BREAD n.

1. flour moistened, kneading
and baked
- and butter
mbórotwa(SWA.); 3/ ghuroto (Ng) 14. cp 'viet koek' thikúvira, 7/8
ghuróto nomaghádhi mouldy, of - háha. (see MOULDY 2) stale, of -
ghománhwe 14/ Nukumuna
- piece of - diginya dyo
ghuroto 5/6
- loaf of - mbórotwa syn.
ghuroto
- and cheese ghuroto no maghádhi
gho. rushiko
- and milk ghuroto no manhwe
- and wine ghuroto no mandjómbo
2. w.v. to bake - -yótha ghuróto (fry - see FRY) - se DOUGH, KNEAD, LEAVEN.
- to break - -yátura ghuroto
- join in Lord's Supper kúdyá porótji - -muráreró wanyámí fúmu

BREADTH n.

- of BROAD, width from side
to side
- of cloth ghuyāghayu 14/
ghupāpati ghupapati syn. ghuyāghayu gho
dikehe 14/ see WIDTH
- of mind ghuyāghayu ghó maghano 14/ syn. ghukúru gho māghano

BREAK vt. vi.

1. divide whole into two
or more parts, use with
force. -
- branch, under person's
weight, into two. 1. -tjóká 3-4b (r. -tjōra)
(2. be ashamed)
- branch under person's
weight off main branch -páyuka 8-4b - egg shell - see EGG -dūvura
- stick -tjōra katóndo N.B. to snap stick without breaking, -tífura katondo(-túngura)
- open, penetrate by
breaking -túyura
The thief broke open the lid of the box =
mwidhi gha tuyurire muhuko ghothikesha.
- fig. - bread with, be
entertained by -yúmbura
He has broken bread with me before = na mu
yumburire pamutango
- ones fast, take first
food of the day kukudhuka 3-7,4b
- a journey, pause for
rest kwimeka ruyēndo 3-4a Let us break our journey and stay here for the
night = twimeke ruyendo rwetu ghu tu kare
pano ghoghuthiku.

BREAK (cont)

- silence -pwitha thipore
4-2b
- up a conversation -mbündungedha
5-2a
- up into parties OC 3 kukuyákunuka
-7,4b
- up, as a meeting -ghumbura
- off, bring to end kwimeka
- up as cloud, darkness -túyaghuka
15/3-11.4b
2. -. of a part.
- of bough from tree -tjóra múte
 - off a twig -tjóra katéghana
 - as a pole -tjóka 3-4b
 - a leg -thatha dighúru
 - at a joint, as meat -rúkurúra 66-15
 - off a tooth -dhúra
 - off, leaving part -dhúdhá
 - off chip of stone, as mason -(dhókora)
-dhúdhá
 - off, eg. of thorn in foot -tjókera 6-5c
 - off, bit by bit of wood, grass -tjóthora(r)
 - off, bit by bit of brick, stone -yóndaghura
15/6-11
 - off, of tiny piece of brick, earth -yóndoka 3-4b
 - off part of earth -yóndora(r)
 - fig. - with quarrel kukuyákúdhana
CC 9 7,6b
 - away from others -yúkuka

3. make a way violently, come suddenly

- in, as animals into enclosure -nyaghera
- in to house, as thief -túyura
- in upon people inside a house -hárafanya 13-18

see BREAK

He broke silence and asked where we were.=
gha pwithire thipore, gho ghepurire eshi kupi
tu di.

see INTERRUPT 2

The meeting broke up into four groups = makonganeno
gha kuyakunukire tushumba tune
The meeting broke up in confusion = makonganeno
gha gaumburire murupetho
They have broken off negotiations for peace =
hemekire kukughambaghuritha thiraro.
The clouds broke up and the blue sky appeared =
mavuyi gha tuyaghukire diwiru dyoditara
dya monarire.

N.B. break off tooth, of old and very young
-kúka
(thorn or root)

syn.-tjóthokera 4b, 5c (see R on next line)
-off, in strips, of diseased skin -yéraghuka
15/3-11

-also - off edge of hole to enlarge it.

see QUARREL (2) 3

He broke away from the rest to pursue the
thief = gha yukukire mwawamweya ko kukutha
mwidhi

The kudu have broken into the fields through the
fence = mupyu nga ghu nyaghera mumapya ko
kwingena muruthito

A thief has broken into the hut = mwidhi nga
tuyura mundhugho ko kwingena mo

The bandit broke in upon the family as they were
eating and shot them = mukamukungu gha harafanyine
haka dirapa ghopa ha dire, gha wa kondhire

BREAK (cont)

- in upon their conversation
- out, escape
- through into a thicket
- fig. - out, of disease, war
(lit. 'begin')
- news, make known
- of the day

-rúngangedha
10/5-9,2a
-ghōmba
-tjwatamá 8-3

-váreka
-dí mukitha 4-2b
-kúva ko diyúwa

He broke in upon their conversation = gha rung-
angedhire yighembayawo

He has broken out of prison = ngombo mukashitiko
He broke through into a busy thicket to hide =
gha tjwatamine murughongo royipumbu ko kunda kuya.

Smallpox has broken out in the village = yikorwa
yofanga nga yi vareka mudighumbo
I broke the news to him of his son's death =
na mu dí mukithire eshi mwanendi nga pu.
The day is breaking; let us go = diyuwa kuva dina
kuva; tu yende

4. weaken, destroy, exhaust.

- down a wall
- a pot (see SMASH) into pieces
- a clay beer pot or calabash
- of a pot of itself, falling
- snap, of handle in hand when used
- deliberately, see SMASH
- with a weapon, eg. knobkerrie,
- pound to powder
- against, as water against rock
- through, of water, where confined - of spring
- through of water - of river
- as string of beads, of itself
- up, of roof of hut, see RUIN
- fig. - down, of a person

-páyura mudhudhu
-páyaghura 15/6-11
kwandaghura
15/6-11
-dávuka
-néruka
-bwáyura
-páyaghura nombūro
15/6-11
-kútwa
-yéruka 3-4b
-púpa
-hándja
-tjínuka 3-4b
-ghūndhununa
99-15
-ghundhununa
99-15

He broke the pot = gha payaghurire kanyungu.

The pot broke as it fell = kanyungu ka davukire
ghopa ka mu pothomokire

He hurled the pitcher to the ground and broke it
= gho gha vukumenine kandimbe padive, ko
kukabwayura

The waves rushed towards the rocks and broke
against them = mangumbi gha yupire kumawe ko
kuyeruka po.

N.B. to seep through, of water -véra

see FLOOD (2)

Her string of beads has broken = kathipa kwendi
komindjombo nga ka tjínuka
syn. -dhingununa, 15 cp. -vinyununa, 13 - stage
when wind blows off thatch and lashings break

He has broken down through straining his heart =
nga ghundhununa gha nga kokera thikuma mutjima
wendi

"Thy rebuke hath broken his heart" (Psalm 69:20)
= "Thi handuka thoye nga thi payura mutjima
wendi"

His daughter's treachery has broken his spirit
= ghuringiringi wamwanendi ghomukana dighana
nga ghu káña muñuwendi.

The police have broken the resistance of the
strikers = maporitni nga gha thavarakanyine
ngcamu dhawoka ku shwena kurughana

cp. FAIL 2

- heart
- (die of broken heart
- a person's spirit 2.
- resistance, power to refuse

-páyura mutjima
-thitúkutjima)
-káñá muñu
(1. cultivate)
-thávarakanya
3/13-18

BREAK (cont)

- up, separate, crowd of people OC kukuŷakunuka 3-7/4b
 - in, train, a horse -katitha mbĩ 4-2b
- or = cause to disperse, of crowd (see BREAK 3)
 - hárañanya 13-18

BREAK-DOWN n.

1. stoppage vi. -tjókera 6-5c The lorry must have broken down on the road =
 thihauto tha roghera eshi thina tjokera mundhira
 dho dhi tavura.
2. - in health vi -tjínaghuka
 15/3 = 11, 4b He has had a nervous breakdown = maruthipagbandi
 nga tjinaghuka

BREAKFAST (1) n

- first meal of the day mukúdhũko 3/

BREAKFAST (2) vi.

- take - break ones fast -kúdhũka

BREAM n

- fresh-water fish, good to eat thĩ 7/8 small - thishōsho 7/8; very big - diñádhĩthi 5/6
 see FISH
- long-mouthed - mbwéya syn. mbánda
 red-throated - fũndu fũndu 1a(9)/6(9)
 small red-throated - fũndwana, 1a(9)/6(9)

BREAST n.pl

- woman's milk-secreting organs dyēre, 5 (pl. mēre, 6) 5/6 Small breasts, twēre, 13); nipples, paps of woman's -
 mbũngo dho mere 10/6(10)
- man's upper part of body muyĩdi 3/
 strike -, in penitence, -pũmura difémbwe
 sorrow díva
 n. - of bird, eg. ostrich kandjĩgha 12
 - bone
 - plate, protective armour thingándekeitho 7 - tho difémbwe
 for -

BREATH

- n. air drawn into and let out from lungs mũñu 3/
 -taken through nose mutóthimo 3/10(4)
 w.v. draw breath -héthera mũñu 5b
 n. - taken through mouth muhéthimo 3/10(4)
 - let out through nose mufúthero 3/10(4)
 - let out through mouth mufúthero
 w.vv let out - -fúthera mũñu 5b
 to blow out the breath -fútha
 n. - of fresh air thitótha thomũñu
 ghoghũpya 7/8
- take -, pause when talking (lit. 'rest') -túrumudha
 out of - after exercise -héthangana 10/9-9,5c

BREATH (cont)

- puff and pant, of -, after
running hard -pwedhangera (or, when exhausted)
5/10/6=2a/9/5a
try to recover - kukukátha-kátha 7/16
to recover one's - -pweruruka 66/3-15/4b

BREATH(E vi. vt.)

- take breath into lungs and
release it -tótha
- through nose -tothima
- through mouth - héthera 6-5c
release - through nose -fúthera 6-5c
release - through mouth -fúthera
- out -fúthera muñu 6-5b
- into -fúthera muñu 6-5b "The Lord God...breathed into his nostrils the
breath of life" (Gen. 2; 7) "Nyambi Fumu....
gha mu futheere muñu ghoghuparo mumayurugendi"
- deeply so as to snore -ghōna
- again freely after being
afraid -tōtha káro - again after being revived - -tōthorora 66-13
surface face only in water,
to -yūnenekēdha 5-2a
- hard after exercise, out
of breath -héthangana 10/9-9,5c also= see SIGH
- puffing - panting -pwedhangera
5/10/6-2a/9/5c
- last breath, expire -héthangera muñu He breathed his last breath and died = gha
10/6-9,5c hethangerire muñu ko kupwa
-pwedhangera muñu
5/10/6-2a/9/5c

BREED (1) vi. vt.

1. bear offspring kwēreka
2. be pregnant -rema
3. stockbreed cattle kwerekitha 4-2b breeding - ground of fish divūgho, 5/6

BREED (2) n

1. source of family d.fiko 5/6
2. stock of animal rudhi ró thiyama
11/6(11)

BREEDING n.

good manners
see BEHAVIOUR

BREEZE n.

gentle wind mupépo gho thipōre
3/10(4) see WIND (1)

BREW vi. vt

1. make beer - whole process -dhūnga mavovu
first days preparation -riterera 66-13 soak grain before brewing - see DIP 1, SOAK 3
second day - brewing -téreka 3-4a -ghombeka 3-4a
third day - fermenting
with yeast -kukūwera
fourth day - squeezing I. -káma (2.milk) (3. brush)
in bags

2. - concoct mischief

-kánza ghurīngiringi

Some mischief is brewing in that village
= kanga hana ko kukanga ghuringiringi
ghumwe mudighumbo diva.

money offered to induce
receiver to do wrong

thitápa
(lit. 'gift')

The thieves offered the night-watchman a bribe to open the door of the store = *hedhi gho ha taperire mukengereri ghoghuthiku thitápa eshi gha yandhurure rubati rothitors*

to offer bribes

2. -hámbutha (1. rectify)

- a judge

-hámbukitha mupánguri
3/4-4b, 2b

clay kneaded, shaped in
rectangle, baked in sun,
fire

thitina 7/8

brick-kiln, oven for baking

mayothero gho yitina /6

bricks

brick-layer, man who lays

múka-páka yitína 1/2

bricks

brickwork, building in

mughūmbo gho yitína 3/

woman at time of marriage

muyeki 1/2

man at time of marriage

múka -yéka 1/2

woman attendant of bride

muyéndha muyéki 1/2

best man at wedding, grooms
friend

mushere wamúka-yéka 1/2

horizontal structure carrying
road over river mu

mughúmbo 3/

The bridge spans the river = mughumbo ghomutambo
wa fughama rware

(lit. 'the structure that
is horizontal')

gho mutámbo

-(the above sentence conveys the meaning -
see SPAN) see NOSE 1

N.B. difficult to translate
'bridge' into Nibukushu

span with a - see SPAN (1) -fúghama 8-3

headgear of horse's
harness

tōmu 10/6(10)

- BRIDLE (2) vt. vi
 1. put - on horse -páka tómu mbi
 2. curb, restrain, hold in horse -ñeña mbi
- BRIEF a.
 short in time 1. ghufúpi I paid a brief visit to the village =
 (2. jealous) (2. jealous) na kuhungerire kudighumbo ruyedhe rorufupi
- BRIEFLY adv.
 shortly, concisely see ghufúpi I spoke briefly to the people = na ghambire
 SHORTLY ghufupi nawaguva.
- BRIGAND n
 bandit mukamukungu 1/2
- BRIGHT a.
 1. shining of reflected light kāshe A bright day = kayuwa kokashe
 2. alight with joy, hope, of face -twédhima Her face was bright with joy = rupararwendi rwa
 twedhimine noyishogherera
 3. vivid in colour -twédhima Her dress was bright red = thishupata theni
 tha karire thikihi no kutwedhima
 4. clever, quick -witted ghutari That child is very bright =mwanuke yu ne
 mutari thikuma
- BRIGHTNESS n
 radiance, shining thirwédhima 7/8 The gold cup shone like the brightness of the
 sun = thinwitho thohaghuta tha rwedhimine
 yira thirwedhima thodiyuwa
- BRIGHTEN vt. vi.
 1. light up, of the face -twédhimitha 4-2b
 2. - of the sky -rwédhima It is brightening up now = diwiru kurwethima
 dina kurwethima keho.
- BRILLIANT a.
 1. very bright in colour -twédhima
 2. sparkle, glitter, as sun shines on spear -twédhima
 3. clever in intelligence ghutari
- BRIM n
 1. lip of cup muromo gho nginda N.B. fill to the brim - see FILL
 3/ -yárita (-gwánitha) kate pamuromo 4-2b
 2. projecting edge of hat mudhidhi gho hújti
 3/
- BRING vt. vi
 1. come with, convey, cause to come. -réta (N.B. 'take' corr. to 'bring', with 'go' for 'come')
 -back, cause to return- simply -húka Bring back my son with you = ka huke namwanange
 (lit. 'return with my son')
 -back, cause to return- usual -hútha 5-2b I will bring back the donkey = fanyi na kuhuthe
 thidongi
 -back, cause to return- simply -húthera munyima 5/6-2b 5b They brought back the escaping thief = ha
 hutherire munyima mwishi gho kunyetuka

BRING (cont)

- down to the ground	-shúrutha 5-2b	He brought down his opponent to the ground = gha shuruthire mukafanani wendi pamuve.
- for a person	-rétera 6-5a (ant.-twara)	He is bringing me some water = kuretera ghana ka ni retera meyu.
- forth, give birth to	-shámuruka	
- forward	-réta paghútho	Bring forward the boy, and let him speak = reta mungaghu paghutho gho mu ninge gha ghambe.
- home a person	-réta kudighúmbo	My son has brought home a wife = mwanange nga ka reta munduwa ndi kudighumbo
- home something	-kúmitha kudighumbo 4-2b	He is bringing home some millet = ñanyi gha kumithe mahango ghamwe
- out something	-shwághitha 4-2b	He brought out a chair from the hut = gha shwaghithire thipura mundhugho
- to a halt or stop.	kwimeka	He brought his horse to a halt = ghemekire mbi dhendi
- together, collect	-kóngwetha	Bring the people together = kongwethe haguva
- up	-dhíneka 3-4a	He brought up the hammer to the roof top = gha dhinekire hamure kumutwi ghondhugho.
2. fig. id. - against	-réta ku	He has brought a case against me = nga reta theko kukwange
back -, call to mind	-gháyaritha 4-2b	You bring back memories = ghuna ni ghayaritha yiyedhekerera.
about, - to pass, cause to happen	-káaritha 4-2b	The work of one man brought about the opening of the store = yirughana yomurume yofotji ya karithire thiyandhurura thothitora
- down price	-shúrutha mughuro 5-2b	They made the storekeeper bring down the price of salt = mughurithi gha shuruthire mughuro ghomungwa
- home to, convict, convince	-kwátitha 4-2b	I have brought home to him the evil of his doings = ngani mu kwatitha dishamu dyoyitenda yendi
- low	-túnditha 4-2b	He brings low the mighty from their thrones = hakamakuto ghana wa tunditha mumapunaghawo
- off, rescue from danger or - to success	-kona -páaritha 4-2b	They brought off the rescue of the captives without loss of life = ha konine kuparitha hakwati noyofotji temba ghoyu gha mwaghire moyowendi
- round, restore to consciousness see REVIVE	-túmuna	A douche of cold water will soon bring him round = kumutjakera meyu ghomatenda murupararwendi ñanyi gha mu tumune pañanyifanyi
- through, of sick person	-réta mu.	That doctor brought her through her illness = nganga ya gha mu retire muthikorwa thendi
- under, discipline, eg. child (or animal, by coaxing)	-ghōmbapitha 4-2b	That child needs a father to bring him under discipline = mwana yu kushana ghana kushana wihe kumughombapitha
- up a child	-kórera mwána	"bring up a child in the way he should go" (Prov. 22;6) = "Korere mwana mundhirá gho dhi gha kuyenda."
- up a matter	-shwághitha thitenda 4-2b	He brought up the matter at the meeting = gha shwaghithire thitenda mumakonganeno
- up the rear, come behind	-kwiye muniyima	The big bull elephant brought up the rear of the herd = ndhovu ghomukuru ghondwedho gheyire muniyima dhomuraka

- BRING (cont)
- to an end, cause to cease -mānitha 4-2b I hope that the United Nations will bring this war to an end = nina ghayare eshi Mako gho MAHE POFOTJI fanyi gha kumanithe mvo dhi
- BRINK n.
edge of steep place - of bank -dingengéra 5/6
- BRISTLE vi. vt
(cause hair to stand upright) -ndhaghunyuka ghuhuki
(stand up, of dog's hair) -shākura
- BRITTLE a
getting broken easily, fragile -tjoka ghurédhu 3-4b
- BROAD a.
large across, wide ghuyāghayu see WIDE
a. of BREADTH, which see
- BROADCAST vt vi
1. scatter seed freely -mwaghamwagha mbuto 10
2. spread news widely -yārayaritha muhambwe 4-10/2b
3. - give news etc by radio - tóngonona mbúhi noradio 66-14
- BROIL vt. vi
cook meat on grid iron, fire -póna nyāma
cook fish " " " -yōtha thī
- BROKEN a
p.p of BREAK - use in vbl. senses
- ground, uneven ground muve gho maghoghodho 3/ (get- of calabash, pitcher etc. in many pieces) 1-bwayaghuka (2. sound of rain) 15/3 - 11,4b
- sleep, sleeping at intervals -pindaghuka 15/11,4b
- imperfect thimbukushu mbádi -ghumba thimbukushu -thiwāna (lit 'not speaking thimbukushu well')
- BROOCH n
ornamental pin fastening dress near neck thitōghaghēritha 7/8 -thothiwa tho thishúpata
- BROOD (1)
1. hatch of young birds thitenda thoyinyúnyighana 7/8
2. word of contempt for group of people díko 5/6 "You brood of vipers" (Luke 3; 7) = "Mwa díko dyoryamwa!"

BROOD (2) vi		
1. sit on eggs, as hen	-vútamona 9-5c	
2. think sullenly over insults	-yédhekeranga noghupáta 10-9	
3. plot evil designs	-túnguranga 10-9	see PLOT (2)
BROOK n.		
small stream	rwareghána 11/6 (11)	
BROOM n		
tool for sweeping with long handle	thikómbweritho 7 (8)	see SWEEP
BROTH n.		
gravy, thin soup	muhóri 3/	
BROTHER n.		
son of same parents. e		
elder -	mukúrwa (pl. ha-, 2)	My elder brother = mukurwánga 1a/2
	1a/2	
younger -	mína	My younger brother = minánga 1a/2
a woman's -	ndumbukadhi	
	1a/2	
-in-law	nyékera	
	1a/2	
social equal	mu mína	
	(pl ha mína, 2)	
	1a/2	
close friend	mushere yirá mukurwa (or mína) 1a/2	
BROTHERHOOD n		
between brothers	ghukúrwa 14/	
association for	ghushere gho	
helping each other	kukuyáka hahéya 14/	
BROW n. pl.		
1. curve of hair over eyes	makéthi gho mého /6	
w.vv knit one's brows, frown	-thígheka 3-4a	see EYE-BROW
" frown at one another	2. thívura (1. wink 3. look away)	
2. forehead (lit. 'face')	rupára 11/6(11)	
3. - top of hill	mútwi gho dindúndu 3/10(4)	
- edge of hill-top	shungushungu dho dindúndu 10/	
BROWN (1)		
a. mixture of orange and black colour	ghukíhu	(N.B. 'Ghukihú means 'red'; nearest to 'brown' in minds of the people)
n. dark - coloured oxen	ngómbe dhodhikíhu 1a(9)/10	

a. - mixed with yellow, tawn, tan-coloured māmāmāra (lit. 'many coloured')

meat. 1. -kánga nyāma (2. conquer country) 3. build)

feed on, crop leaves twigs, bite
off tops of plants.
-, of goat, giraffe mbúrukuta
-, of cattle -dyera kuwirú dho
thitóndo 5c

injury caused by blow on	divōte	5/6
body, discolouring skin		
bloody - on slaughtered	dirōdhi	dyo manyīnga
animal	5/6	

injure by blow, discolouring		
skin	-ndjāma	
get bruised when		
travelling	-hōghoroka	N.B. this applies to soft fruit, vegetables.
- of reeds	-ndjāma	"He will not break a bruised reed" (Is. 42; 3)
		"Kadi gha kutjora kambu kokupwa kundjama"
- severely	-ndjāmandjāma	
	10	

1. toilet - for smoothing hair	thikámitho 7/8
for polishing shoes	thiporitjitho 7/8
nail brush	thikúkumunitho 7/8
toothbrush	thinombo tho-yóghitha mayegho 7/8
2. paint-brush	thikúnyitho 7/8
- for sweeping	thikómbweritho 7/8

1. toilet - hair (2. milk 3. brew)
shoes(sets,-pútja)
nails
teeth
2. paint with -
sweep with -
3. - off dirt from body with
hands
- off dust
- off oneself
- up, sweep up rubbish
- with arm, eg. flies
off table

1. -káma huki
-póritja makúha
1. -kúkumuna dithiro Also = remove dust, dirt from something (2. shake)
pamandwara
kukupóritja mayegho (kukupútja - Sets)
7
-kúnya (-tāka Sets)
-kómbwera
14-23
-thindumuna
kúkúkumuna mbundu
1. kukúkúkumuna - off spark from fire - see SPARK -tāthura
(2. shake) 7
-kómba yitjoro
kukwínga momóko 7 (also, of cattle, using tail to - insects off
body)

a. cruel, behaving like
beast ghukénya see BEAST, CRUEL

BRUTE

n. beast, unable to reason,
dull thiyāma 7/8

BRUTISH

a. like a brute ghuyāma;
 yira thiyāma

BUBBLE n (1)

round liquid container dinyīwe 5/6 see FOAM 1.
enclosing air

npl - coming up to surface mambwēmbwe /6
when body submerges

BUBBLE vi. vt (2)

1. rise up and down as
bubbles 1.-hekāghuka (2.bounce) 15/3-11,4b
on surface of water -dabwadabwa 10 (1. of bubbles to surface of water -mbwēmbumuka
2. make noise, as boiling
water -bwākata (2.rush) - all the time, as water MAMĀTU-MĀTU GHĀDYŌ
 see GURGLE
-up, as a spring -vūtuka, yira (also - of water rushing over rocks in river)
 kapūpo 3-4b - of boiling water -fudhumuka 3-4b
3. - over with laughter -bwākata no
 -héka

BUCK (1) n

antelope méngola(9)/2(9),10(3)(irr.pl. mupengo; - see ANTELOPE
bush - buck rūvi 11/2(11),6(11)
water-buck hōnge (irr.pl. -dhonge)
 la(9)/2(9),5

BUCK (2) vi. vt.

of horse, jump vertically,
back arched, feet
together -régha

BUCKET n

iron, wood, plastic wessel tjemēre syn. (pl MA - 6); small- katjemēre, 12/13 see HOLE
for carrying water hemēre la(9)/6(9)
iron, wood, plastic wessel diténga 5/6 a bucket full tjeméré yōnde
for beer, milk

BUCKLE (1) n.

metal hinge with spike kavēra, 12
for securing strap

BUCKLE (2) vt.

- secure secure strap -kópera kakānda 8, 5c
ant. unbuckle strap -kóporora kakānda 8,15

BUD (1) n.

flower not yet opened mucúko
 3/10 (4)

BUD (2) vt. vi

put forth buds -cúka mucúko
begin to grow, develop -váreka-kúriṭha He is a budding scholar = ghana vareka kukura munu
 ghoyu gha kuhonga

BUFFALO n

large, dangerous, horned nyatji Troop of buffaloes, big game dyānda 5/6
wild la(9)/2(9),3

BUFFALO (cont)

- bull ndwēdho gho nyátji (pl; two to ten - ,hañyátji, 2(9) more than
ten - muyátji, 1a(9)/2(9), 3(9)
- rogue - bad-tempered, fūme 1a(9)/
goes about alone
- lying in wait to attack hunters nyátji gho kundamena
hashani

BUFFET vt. vi.

1. strike blow with hand -pūmura see STRIKE
strike blow with -
if slap, smack -ngcāmbura see SLAP
2. knocked about by waves -pūmurapūmura
nomangūmbi 10

BUG n

- smelly, blood-sucking ditjītjīrī 5/6
insect infesting beds

BUGLE n

- kudu or cow's horn nyīgha 10/6(10) see HORN

BUILD vt. vi.

1. construct by putting materials together 1. -ghumba (2.settle) see CONSTRUCT, ERECT
- a house syn. -ghumba syn. -shīsha(shīsha = erect, set up)
- up sand around walls to keep out water in rains 1.-kānga (2. conquer; 3. brown)
2. -up a business -kūritha yirughāna
4-2b
-up reputation, est-
ablish good name -shémwapitha 4-2b - dina dyodiwa

BUILDER n.

- one who builds mughūmbi syn.
thighūmbi 1/2, 7/8

BUILDING n

- structure constructed mughūmbo 3/10(4) see CONSTRUCTION, ERECTION

BUILDING-SITE n

- place of erection dyāngo dyo-ghūmba
5/6

BULB n

- round stem of flower, root-crop below ground ditānda 5/6
flower of - mutēmo gho ditānda skin of - thikōngwera 7/8
3/10(4)
large -, like onion dyānga 5/6 stem of - 1. mukōre (2. handle) 3/10(4)
small, edible - dithiwi (pl.thiwi, 7)
5/7 irr.
edible - found by digging down crack in ground didjōkwane 5/6 (N.B. found in 'Bush' very nourishing)
(dig up - with hand) -hara

BULGE vi

- swell outwards, eg. of battering wall 2. -dēngaghuka 15/3-11
(1.stagger 2.)

BULK

- n. quantity wīngi 14/

BULK (cont)

w.vv buy in - ghura yinu yofotji yoyíngi muruvédhe rofótji (lit. 'buy much of one thing at the
sell in - ghuritha " " same time')
load in - rongera wíngi muruvédhe rofótji

BULKY a

large, big in size ghukúru - Of a hippo's body yibwātji -bwātji

BULL

n. male ox, buffalo, ndwédho
elephant etc. la(9)/2(9),6(9) vi. be big, of a - -túmba
w.v. bellow like a -,
roar -kúmbura see OX

BULL-DOZER

n. machine for shifting ditōkotōko 5
earth, levelling ground

BULLET

n. lead shot discharged from
gun dyóngá dyo
ghúta 5/6

BULLY

n. cowardly, tyrant, of ten
blusterer múka -yápitha 1/2 see TYRANT, BLUSTER

BULRUSH

n. tall rush, papyrus dikōma 5/6

BUMP (1) vt. vi.

1. push, throw down against,
on -pámera He bumped the box against the wall = gha pamerire
thikeshá pamudhudhu.
hurt e.g. head by striking
it against -gúnda or He bumped his head against the wall = gha gundire
mutwiwendi pamudhudhu
hurt oneself - striking
it against, kukungwāndura 7
- accidentally into another
person -gúnda syn.
kukugúma 7 He bumped into Disho when entering the house =
gha gundire Disho ghopa ghenenine
mundhugho
- as calf against mother's
udder -púma
2. - up and down, as cantering
donkey, horse -máta
- up and down, as lorry,
donkey, horse, on bad -régha
road
-up and down of object not
secured kukungwāndaghura
OC15/6-7,11 - up and down of an object - kukungwandura -7
e.e. so that it is thrown from side to side, in
moving vehicle
-person, thing repeatedly
against hard object -ngwandaghura 15/6

BUMP n (2)

1.-affecting a person thigúnda 7/8
-affecting an object thipámera 7/8
2. swelling caused by - ghutúghumano 14/

BUMPY a.

full of bumps, causing
jolts on road -réghitha 26 This is a bumpy road for lorries = gho thine
ndhira dhokureghitha yihauto

- BUNCH (1) n
cluster of flowers thitúngu tho mitēmo 7/8
cluster of fruit thitóko tho maghúmi 7/8
- BUNCH (2) vt. vi.
1. make flowers into -tēnda mitēmo thitúngu
2. gather dress into kukutēnda thivāta yipéta
folds
- BUNDLE (1) n
collection of things
tied together thitúngu 7/8
- of grass dithāta 5/6
- BUNDLE (2) vt. vi.
make up things into a -kóngwetha thitúngu 2a
tie in a -wānga thitúngu
tie up - of sticks -wānga thitúngu tho
yitōdo
- BUNG n
plug, stopper of cask, thivukitho 7/8
barrel
- BUNGLE vi. vt.
1. do work clumsily -tēnda thirughāna
ghuyi
2. fail to do task -kángera tēnda
thirughana
- BUOYANT a
1. able to float because light, or hollow -kōna -kāmarara
2. light-hearted gho mutjima gho ghuredhu
- BURR or BUR
n. kind of grass that
clings to clothes, body shāñakatēra 10/6(10)
w.v. to remove -kákudhura
- BURDEN (1) n.
load 1. back - mwērekero 3/
see LOAD head - mutengeneno 3/
load -suspended mupāngo 3/10(4)
from pole pack-ox, carried murōngerero 3/6
on flanks.
lorry load; traveller's load, luggage murōngerero 3/6
w.v. carry -, on back kwereka
set free from 4. - -shúrutha 5-2b
to become heavy, of -
when carried -remēnena 99-13
n. fig. 2. - of duty ghuremu yirughāna 14
- of proof, obligation to prove mupāngo gho ghushūpi 3/10(4)
- of sorrow ghuremu gho ghuthighana 14/6(14)
- thitondo
see UNFASTEN
see CARELESS 2. 3
see FAIL
This wood will float; it is buoyant = thitondo
thi nanyi tho kukambarare; thi ne thiredhu
(or thithungi)
He is a man of buoyant spirits = murume
ghomutjima ghoghuredhu.
- N.B. coiled pad for head - nāta 10/
N.B. sore from carrying a - thitombo tho mupāngo
The burden of his duties lie heavily upon him =
ghuremu gho yirughana yendi ghuna thavarakanya
The burden of proof rests on you to convince the
court that your charge is true = mupango ghoghushupi
ghuna wera pa-poye; kukukāna ngotha
eshi marunderero ghoye ne ghoshemwa.

- BURDEN (2) vt**
 person with troubles -rēka
 to become burdened -
 with duties -rēmupa 1-16
 (r-rēma-paralyse)
- I don't want to burden you with my troubles =
 kadi na kushana kukureka noyinyandayonge
 He has become burdened with too many duties =
 nga remupa noyirughana yoyingi thikuma
- BURDENSOME a.**
 of BURDEN oppressive -rēmeka 3-4a
- BURIAL n**
 placing of a dead body under
 the ground mavumbekero /6
 funeral, rites of - mihingo dho
 mavumbekero / 10(4)
 place of -, see GRAVE dyango dyo
 mavumbekero 5/6
 - of rubbish in ground thivumbekitho 7/8 N.B. after burial this becomes a 'grave'
 mbira 10/6
- BURN vt. vi (1)**
 consume by fire kúpya (or-péya)
 1. way of burning:
 go up in a blaze -widira
 keep on burning with
 flame syn. -rōkota
 put, of fire, as fuel -dhimana mudiro
 has run out
 flame, blaze, -with
 flame -tumbuka
 scorch, burn surface
 with flame -vávura
 see SCORCH, SINGE
- N.B. burnt out, charred ruin - myēra 10/6(IC)
 - to ashes - kwāña
 N.B. -dhimitha = to extinguish a fire.
- The fire has burnt (=scorched) the poles = mudiro wa
 vavurire yitondo.
- smoulder, burn without
 flame -dhīmanena 99-5c
 - up, get rid of by fire -túmeke 3-4a
 - up, when fire flashes
 into blaze -tumbukitha
 4-2b
 2. what is burnt - anything -túmeke 3-4a
 - bricks, to harden by
 heat -túmeke yitina
 3-4a
 - char food in cooking,
 so sticks to bottom of
 pot -thirera 6-5c
 - dog's hair with brand
 to chase away -vávura
 - off chicken's feathers -vávura
 - cause a person to get
 burnt -fúramitha 4-2b
 - grass -túmeke muhōnyi
 3-4a
 - hole by heat -túmeke dikwina
 3-4a
 - incense - tjetjomekedha
 5-2a
- a clay pot - túmeke 3-4a
- You were not watching the pot; the food is burnt
 = mbadi wa kengerere kanyungu; yidya yina
 thirera.
 see SCORCH, SINGLE
- You have burnt a hole in your dress = ghuna tumeka
 dikwina thivata thoye
 "He entered the Temple to burn incense" (Lukel,9)
 = "ghangenine Tembeli kutjetjomekedha
 (ghungongorwa = incense)
- w.n.** burnt porridge murungwedhi 3/
w.n. burnt offering,
 sacrifice muyámbo gho kupya
 3/10(4)
vi. vt. - oil to give light
 of lamp -túmeke rámbi 3-4a

BURN (cont)

- lamp to see the way -túmeke munyenge 3-4a (Also to deal with flying ants)
- put to death, by fire kúpya ghuyúmi The traitor was burnt alive = muhongaghuri gha pire ghuyumi
- marks when branding animals -túmeke matjwayo 3-4a
- fig. - with rage, anger kúpya n'oghupata He was burning with rage = gha pire noghupata

BURN (2)n

- mark on skin caused by burning thitómbo tho mudiro 7/8
- when - has healed, scar dikongo dyo mudiro see SCAR 5/6

BURNING n.

- in vbl. sense yitúmeke /8
- smell of - munuko gho ghúpya 3/

BURNISH vt. vi.

- rub to polish -pōritja (-pūtja. sets) see RUB 2b

BURROW (1) n

- warren of rabbit, squirrel wembērere 14/6
- ghupurwe 14/6(14)
- warren of hare rukumbo 11/6(11)

BURROW vi. vt. (2)

- dig out hole in earth, of dog -yupura múve 5c
- dig out hole in earth, of rat -thíma dikwíre
- dig out hole in earth of people -thíma dikwína

BURST vt. vi (1)

- explode, fly outwards by expansion of contents, split violently as under -páyura
- 1.- of things: explode, of bomb -dwayura
- of egg -páyuka 3-4b
- into flame -túmbukitha 3/4-4b, 2b
- as fruitstone in ground -páyuka 3-4b
- of river, bursting its banks -yóndora marungénga N.B. overflow, flood of river, -hándja - see RIVER 3
- of tyre of vehicle -páyuka 3-4b
- of water-pipe -páyuka 3-4b
- of a missile on a person -túyukera 3/6
- 4b, 5c
- 2- of actions of people
- into song -túyuka mukwimba 3-4b
- into tears -díra, no-dhira dímuca
- open -páyura He burst open the lid of the money box = gha payurire muhuko ghothiksha thomanyinga
- out with angry words túyukera 3/6-4b
- 5b or

kwánduka nomāywi gho mapáta 3-4b

BURST (cont)

- out laughing -héka, no -dhira -dímuka
- out through a gap -yúkuke 6-5c He burst out through the door to avoid the snake
= gha yukukere mutherc gha tjire mudyoka
- through a reed fence -búbura

BURST (2) n

- bursting thipáyura 7/8
- explosion thidwayura 7/8
- of flame thitúmbukitha 7/8

BURY vt.

- 1. commit dead body to ground
 - lay dead body in tomb -hóreka 3-4a see GRAVE
 - perform burial rites -vumbeka 3-4a,8 (rev. RISE)
 - tenda mihingo
 - dhomvumbekero
- 2. - rubbish -vumbeka yitjoro 3-4a
- hide something -horeka 3-4a
- 3. - cover, as soil of falling bank -fikerera 66-15
- fig. - cover up, face in hands -fikerera 66-15 He buried his face in his hands = gha fikeere
rupara rwendi munyaradhendi

BUSH n.

- 1. shrub
 - a little - 1. thipumbu (2. thicket) see SHRUB
 - 2. The Bush, uncultivated scrub and muwítji 3/10(4)
 - id. expression muthítu 3/ Desert (thikáka sets.); wilderness mambórweya
 - 3. - cut to make thorn hakāghambañore 2 (lit. 'people speaking enemy')
 - hedge ruthítu rodikóna 11/6(11)
 - old - in renewed hedge dikóna dyo thíturura 5/6
- 4. 'bush' country ditúnga dyo muthítu 5/6
- bushy country ditúnga dyo yipumbu 5/6
- forest dipúta 6/6
- thicket, in 'Bush', swamps rughongo 11/6(11) see THICKET
- 5. w.v. id. beat about the approach - -ghambaghura 15/6-11
- subject in roundabout way yighamba yayonayo Don't beat about the bush ! come to the point =
wa ghambaghura yighamba yayonayo ! Ghambe yi
yi di mumaghano ghoeye

BUSHBUCK n

- small tawny antelope rūvi 11/2(11),6(11)

BUSHKNIFE n

- big knife for cutting in bush dikerevére 5/6
- big knife for cutting wood didúve 5/6

BUSHEL n

- measure for corn fruit thiyédhekeritho 7/8

BUSHMAN

- n. aboriginal of South African tribe mucu. syn. mukwengo 1/2
- n.pl- intermarried with coloureds hatakúme 2 (esp. at Grootfontein. S.W.A.)

BUS n.
omnibus, public conveyance dibōsa(E) 5/6

BUSILY adv.
actively engaged in doing things shāka-shāka

BUSINESS n.
1. being busy -rughana thikūma
task, duty thirughana 7/8
usual work yirughana 7/8
2. matter for discussion dimbwāmbwa dyo
-shimba 5/6
matters for discussion
at meeting, agenda kōnda 12/
id.3. reason for coming -

phrr.
no - to speak so mbādi-kāra ngcāmu
(lit. 'not to have the power')
to meddle with - of others kukuyārithera
O.c/4/6-7,2 5b

What is your business? = nye ghuna kushana?
(see CCME for)

You have no business to speak to me like that =
mbadi wa kara ngcamu kughamba nange kenge yo
- nodimbwambwa dimwaya see BUSYBODY, MEDDLER
Mind your own business ! = kengerere yirughana yoye!

BUSTARD n.
large bird, running very fast
small -, korhaan dindhūmbu 5/6
dindhumbu dyo dimbūru 5/6

BUSTLE vi. vt
hurry about busily -tāmbuka 3-2b
noku noku

Martha bustled about to get food ready for the
Master = Martha gha tambukire noku noku
kuroghitha yidya yaHekudya.

BUSY pred. a.
to be - actively engaged in doing -pitakana

I am busy learning Thimbukushu = nina pitakana
mu kukuhonga Thimbukushu

BUSYBODY n
meddler in business of others mūka kukuyārithera
1/2
mischievous - maker mūka-ngunyāghura
1/2

- yirughana yimweya ya waguva see BUSINESS,
MEDDLER
-muringiringi, 1/2

BUT adv. prep. conj.
only vēne
except shime ngwa
conj. nevertheless, get kého

She is but a child = mwana vene
Everyone but me = haheya shime ngwa yame

BUTCHER n
one who slaughters animals for meat mūka -pagha
one who sells meat mughurithi gho
nyama 1/2

-yiyāma yo nyama, 1/2

BUTT vt.
1. push with head as goat, sucking calf -pūma
2. - of cattle, pushing each other with head of cattle, butting and other horns kukufūnya oc07
kukundjongora
Oc-7

syn. kukushipura OC -7

- BUTTER (1) n
product of churned cream maghádhi gho mánhwe /6
- BUTTER (2) vt.
spread bread with - -tjātjā nomaghádhi gho mánhwe 10
- BUTTERFLY n
winged insect from caterpillar's chrysalis dimbĩmbithi 5/6
- BUTTERMILK n
liquid left after churning to make butter mánhwe gho rushíku /6
- BUTTOCKS n.pl
hind quarters of body matako /6
material covering - ndjwárekó 10/6(10) see also SKIRT
to propel oneself forward on -kúruta nomatako;
- BUTTON (1) n
round disc on garment for fastening diñañu; syn. dikunúpo 5/6
- BUTTON (2) vt.
fasten a - -kōpera 6-8,5c
ant. unbutton, unfasten - -kōporora 66-8,15 see UNBUTTON
- BUY vt.
purchase, obtain by paying money -ghūra
- for a price -ghurera 6-5a I bought the ox for ten pounds = na mu ghurerire hove noyipondo dikumi
- for another person -ghurera 6-5a I bought the ox for him = na mu ghurerire hove
- back, ransom - -ghurūghara 10 see RANSOM
person bribe - -hambukitha 4-2b see BRIBE
- BUYER n.
one who buys mughūri 1/2
- BUZZ (1) n
1. hum, of a bee muvūmo 3/
2. hum of people's voices in distance kayóyo 12/13
- BUZZ (2) vi.
hum, as a bee -vūma
- BY
prep. 1. near - a person pépi nomūnu see CLOSE, NEAR
near an object, eg. house pepi no; kukuháta no ndhúgho The house is by the big house = ndhugho dho kuhata nondhugho dhodhikuru.
2. beside - a person kumbádi dho He sits by him = ghana hungumana kumbadi dhendi
beside eg. a river pambádi dho He stands by the river = ghanemana pambadi dhorware
3. by -agent (pass. turned round into act.) The hut was built by Disho = Disho ghumbire ndhugho
by -instrument nō (lit. 'with') This knife was made by hand = moko dhi gha dhi tendire nonyara

BY AND BYE adv
before long
in the future

red. kambírumbíru
muruvedhe rokughútho

BY-LAW n
rule made by local council vēta dho ngótha 10/6 (10)

BY-NAME n
nickname, play-name dína dyo-tērurura 5/6 (-terurura - to give another name to)

BY-WORD n	dithāghano 5/6	That village has become a by-word for dissension
proverb. see PROVERB		= dighumbo diya nga di ya nodiywi dyodishamu
type of character,	dīywi dyo	eshi fando
usually bed.	dishāmu 5/6	

C

- CABBAGE** n
vegetable with round heart rwĩthi 11/
- CABINET** n
1. case with drawers thikésha 7/8
2. small council of government ministers ngóthana 10/6(10) -dhawaraghuri hofurumende
- CABLE** n
1. strong rope mughódhí gho
ngcámu 3/10(4)
2. telegram by under-ground line thitúmitha tho
mbúdhí 7/8 (lit. 'news that are sent') (telegrama, E)
see TELEGRAM
- CACKLE** vi
clucking of hen before laying -kēka (gho mutende)
- CACTUS** n
succulent plant with clusters of spikes thitōndoghana 7/8 - tho morōra
to prick lick - thorn tree -rwara syn. -tjura
- CAGE** n
1. wire or barred prison thikora 7/8 (hom. thikóra = lamp-stand)
for animal, bird (E) katji komukote 12/13
2. lift at mines
- CAKE** n
1. small, flat loaf of bread -mbórotwa, 10/6(10) Syn. (simply 'bread')
ghuroto 6(14)
2. - of flour with dried fruit. mbórotwa gho
-yotha 10/6(10) -no mushungwa nothitoko
- CALABASH** n
gourd whose shell is used to hold liquid nyungu no mutéko
10/6
usually size of - shell kahúpa 12/13
big size of - shell húpa; (v. big-) hūruhúpa 10/6(10)
- shell (very old) dingándja 5/6
fragment of - thikékera 7/8
with long handle for scooping beer, water mutéko 3/10(4)
with a little water inside kahúpa notwíya mo (see HOLE) scoop out inside of - with stick
12/13 -kōrongora
w.vv. to open mouth of - -tjuka
- CALAMITY** n
1. adversity, great distress-ghuthíghana gho
ghukúru 14/
2. disaster thithímwetekedha
7/8

CALCULATE vt

reckon by figures, m.t.2-ghāyadhara 6-20 (1.puzzle (2)3)

CALCULATION n reckoning thighāyadhara 7/8 see EXPECTATION 2

CALF n (1)

young of bovine animal,
esp. cow(Gc ndana) namāne
la(9)6(9)

a little, fat - danāna (S.W.A.) 5/6

male - ngombéghana gho thirume la(9)/10

Gc. ndumendana, la(9)/6(9)

thirumendana

female -

'ngombéghana gho thikadhi la(9)/16(9)

little, new-born - dingembe 5/6

large, unweaned calf ndana gho mukuru mbadi

gha to va manhwe

la(9)/6 (9)

weaned - feeding with cattle ndéma(dikongwana, Sets)

la(9)/6 (9)

- drinking from two cows ndana ghó kuyamwena

la(9)/6 (9)

to separate - from cow after
milking

-pāngura; separate - from cow, to wean - see WEAN - -tāwura

CALF (2) n

fleshy part of back of leg
below kneekapumba ko mutáto
12/13

CALL (1) vt. vi.

1. cry out, shout, speak loudly

- out to a person (lit.
cause to come')

kwítha 4-2b

Call out to him = mwithe thikuma; go and call
him = mukethe- out to passerby to
come to you

-hāhwera

- out to person whose
whereabouts uncertain -tóya

(2. read 3. recite) - see READ

- out to a person far
away

-tāmbekera 6-5b

- person far away, not by name, but with high
sound -kumbitha 4-2b- for, go and fetch a
person

-yénda -hāmbuka

We will call for Disho on the way to the village
= hanyi tu yende gho tu hambuke mundhirá tu
ka shimbe Disho kudighumbo- on a person, pay brief
visit-hāmbukera
6-5bLet us call on the chief to pay our respects =
tu hambukere kwafumu tu ka mu merithe

- on, appeal to a person -kwítha 4-2b

I call on Dimbo to witness that I speak the truth
= ninetha Dimbo na tongonona eshi nina kughamba
yoshēmwa.

- as a bird

-dīra

- as a trumpet

-yonga

2. summon; demand presence
of.

- to help in work

kwítha 4-2b
-kúta muthiyáka
thoyirughana

Call your wife = withe munduvoye

- a council

kwítha ngotha 4-2b

- a meeting

kwítha mbóngarero
4-2b

- upon to speak

-nínga

The chief called upon Makoya to speak = fumu gha
ningiro Makoya eshi ghambe.

CALL (cont)

- out kwitha 4-2b
- up kwitha 4-2b
- invite formally see INVITE -shupwera
- , invite on spur of moment -romba
- fig. - to mind, remember -ghayaritha 4-2b
- 3. Name, describe as
- give name to person kuta dina
- when born kwitha 4-2b
- name a place, thing kuta
- a person, names, abuse -sherera 6-5b

The Minister has called up reserves for the army
= Muraghuri ngethi hamashorondati hoyirughana
yimuve yomvo.

Call him by the name of Disho = mu mu te dina
eshi Disho
He was called Disho = ha mwithire eshi Disho

see ABUSE

CALL (2) n

- summons thitha 7/8
- shout kakumbo 12/13
- of animal thikumba 7/8
- cry of bird thidira 7/8
- short, formal visit thihungera tho
- thirupi 7/8
- invitation thishupwera 7/8
- for money thiromba manyinga 7/8
- how a thing is called, normal mukatopiwa 3

Call from a distance kakugho 12/13
cp. thikumba (= 'skin')

CALLER n.

- person calling on another, visitor muhungeri 1/2
- invited guest mushupwera 1/2
- official - visitor mugenda 1/2

CALLING n

- occupation, work yirughana 7/8
- summons thitha 7/8
- of Assembly thitha tho dikonga 7/8

CALLOUS a

- hard, unfeeling, of a person ghukukutu

CALM (1) n

- stillness ghuporothe 14/

CALM (2) a

- still, silent ghuporothe
- a- , quite mind maghano
- gho thipore

CALM (3)

- vt. vi.
- make - pacify angry person -pwitha or
- huritha ghupata 4-2b
- quieten an angry person -poreritha 4-2b (lit. 'cause anger to end')
- soothe, calm a child -tjighunitha 4-2b cp. CUT (2)2

CALM (3)(cont)

- cool an angry person down
 vi to become - cool
 after being angry
 to become quiet
 to stop angry person
 acting till calm
1. -ghóghomona (2. twist)
 -ghóghomoka 3-4b
 -kára thiþore see COOL, QUIETEN, SOOTHE
 -thíghaghura
 15/6-11

CALVE vi

- give birth to calf
 first milk of cow after
 calving
- kwēreka
 dihánga 5

CAMEL n

- large, long-necked
 humped desert animal
- ngáméno. - 1a(9)/2(9), 8(9)
 (irr. pl. yi-, 8)

CAMEL-THORN n

- kind of thorn-tree; red
 white -
- mukómbwe, (ghushóngiva, 14)
 3/10(4)
 murwárañiru 3/10(4)

CAMERA n

- instrument for taking
 photographs
- thíkésa (=box)
 tho 7/o -kufánekiþa yifáneko

CAMP (1) n

- place where soldiers live
 in tents
 stopping place for
 travellers in the open
 camping-site
 hunter's 'Bush' -
- mathíkerero gho
 mashorondáti /6
 mathíkerero /6
 matúro /6
 nánda /10 (hom. nánda = pumpkin seeds)

CAMP (2) vi

- stay for short time in
 open place, of travellers
 set up a - (lit. 'make')
 erect tents
 strike -, prepare to
 mover
- thíkera
 -tēnda mathíkerero
 -thíkeritha yishashára
 4-2b
 -kóngwetha murōngerero
 5-2b ko kuyēnda rugéndo (lit. 'gather luggage to go on
 journey')

CAMPAIGN n

1. series of military
 operations
 2. planned course of
 action
- yitēnda yōmvo /8
 'ndhirá dho-tēnda no
 maghano 10/

CAN n (1)

- vessel for liquids
 two handled billy-can
- thitēre tho ghuyúri
 7/8
 dikwātakuwádi 5/6

CAN v. aux. (2)

1. be able to
- twéþa I can carry this box by myself = ñanyi ni twethe
 kushimba thíkésa thi nothinda.

CAN (2) (cont)

2. have the right to -kōna (2. persuade) Can I not do what I like? = mbadi na kona kutenda ghoyi nina haka?
3. be allowed to, - do if desired -kōna You can go in now if you wish = wa kona kwingena keho ngeshi ghuna himi

CANARY n.

yellow song bird dindjundje (or dindjunge) 5/6

CANCEL vt.

1. cross out figures in arithmetic 2. dhimangedha (m.t. -dhimununa incorrect; see postpone) see (1. silence, 3. banish) CROSS. DESTROY 1 10/5-9, 2a
2. annul, revoke order for goods 1. -dhingununa (2. ruin) Please cancel my order = popamutja dhingununa 99-15 veta dhang

CANDIDATE n

person nominated for election to council, office mūnu ghoyi ha tīre 1/2 - gho kutorora see NOMINATE, PROPCSE

CANDLE

- n. wax stick with wick, for fiving light shēre Port. 9/6
- w.vv. light a - -muneka
- extinguish a - -dhimitha 4-26
- n. candlestick thitēneko tho shere 7

CANE (1) n.

1. stem of reed mukōre ghōmbu (2. handle) 3/10(4)
- sugar tjuhūma sy tjifūma-see SUGAR 1a(9)/6(9)
2. slender walking stick mayendero gho mathōrokoto /6
- for punishment, flogging katōndokokumwāshuritha 12/13

CANE (2) vt.

beat with - -mwāshura (21)

CANKER n

- ulcer of mouth thitōmbo thomirono 7/8
- disease of horse's feet thikōrwa tho N.B. foot and mouth disease = thānyi 7/ dipadhi dyombi 7/8
- disease of fruit trees thikōrwa tho yitōndo yomeghūmi 7/8
- cankerworm-hairy red. diyūwayūwa 5/6 This is a caterpillar destroying leaves, buds

CANNIBAL n

man eating human flesh mūka kūdya nyāma dho mūnu 1/2 N.B. some sorcerers are said to do this (sorcerer = murodhi)

CANOE n

boat hewn from tree trunk and paddled wāto, 14/6(11), 6

- CANOE (cont)
 small - thátoghana 7/8 old - dikúngu 5/6
 act of drawing - to river ngcé 10/ see BCAT
- CANTER vi
 easy gallop of horse, -máta
 donkey
- CANVAS n
 strong, unbleached cloth dikéhe dyo thimbúngu 5/6 N.B. used for tents, sails, covering for open lorries.
- CAP n
 man's peaked head-covering kapéshi-for 12/13
 knee - or joint mbembényi 10/6
- CAPABLE a
 having the power of doing -ngcamupa 1-(17) The chief is a capable leader = fumu na mupitereri
 having the skill to do, ghundondoro He is a capable builder = mughumbi ghoghundondoro
 efficient, competent
- CAPITAL a
 - city, town; chief city in country dighúmbo dyo dikúru (S.W.A - 2. mbara - 1. chief's palace) 5/6
 - letter, big letter at beginning of names thikúrutjanga 7/8 (M.T.)
 - offence, crime deserving death murádu gho-róghera 3/10(4) -kupangwera yífa
 - punishment; death by beheading yífa yo-tjinuna mütwi /8
 - punishment; death by hanging yífa yo-túreka /8
- CAPSIZE vt. vi.
 upset, overturn boat -denguka cp. stagger 2.
- CAPTAIN n
 leader mupítereri syn.
 commander múka kughutho 1/2 muraghuri
- CAPTIVE n
 person taken prisoner and confined mukwáti 1/2
- CAPTIVITY n
 confinement, imprisonment ghukwáto 14/ thiyándherera 7/8 - being shut up
- CAPTOR n
 one who takes a captive múka-kwáta 1/2
- CAPTURE (1) n
 act of taking a captive thikwáta 7/8 see CATCH
- CAPTURE (2) vt.
 to take a captive -kwáta
- CAR n
 four wheeled vehicle (E) thiháuto 7/8

- CARCASS** n
 dead body of animal dirāmbō syn.
 didhōdho 5/6 see CORPSE
 putrid flesh bones after ghuyōghoro 14/ smell of - red. thiñākiñāki 7/
 vultures have eaten maramborāmbō /6
 large number of carcasses
 place of - meat given for
 help in skinning ndjūnuno 10/6 (10) w.vt. to receive piece of - meat for help
 in skinning -shūnuna
- CARDS** n.pl.
 playing-cards, pack of 52 kārata (E)
 used in games la(9)/6(9)
- CARE** (1)
 n. 1. anxiety mathirerekēdho /6 She is worn out with care = gha kurupara nomathir-
 erekedho.
 w.v 2. caution, eg. take- -kengerera 66-14 Take care how you ride this donkey = kengerere
 1.e. be cautious ngepi ghuna kudhina thidongi thi.
 3. charge, protection, thikūngi 7/8 He is in the care of Disho's wife = gha di
 eg. be in the - of muthikungi thamuna Disho
- CARE** (2) vi
 1.(feel concern for) have -kāra thighāyara The chief cares about your affairs = fumu gha
 interest in kare nothighayara thoyitenda yoye.
 2. provide food for children, -kōrera He cares for his family = ghana kukorera haka
 sick, people dirapa wendi
 - look after children, -kengerera 66-13 The nurse cares for (attends) the sick = mureni
 sick ghana kengerera haka kukorwa
 3. -feel affection for -hāka (lit. 'love') These people care for their children = haguva
 wa ha haka hanawo.
 - not to - care about mbadi -nīnga They don't care for him = mbadi ha mu haka BUT....
 anything thīmwe They don't care = mbadi hana kuringa thīmwe
- CAREFUL** a.
 1. -taking care of - 2.-thōtera (1.use) Be careful of your clothes = thotere yishupata yoye.
 personal appearance
 -taking care of - -kūnga Be careful with your tools = kukunga ghana
 belongings kukunga noyiruganitho yoye.
 -taking care of -kūnga syn Be careful with this child, she is not strong
 people, cattle -tākamitha(1.- = kunge mwana gu; mbadiko ngcamu.
 of danger)
 2.-take care, when there 1.-kōneka (2.recognise)
 is danger syn. 1-tākamitha(2.of people.
 of cattle) Be careful how you cross the road = koneke ngepi
 ghuna kutjinana ndhirá.
 - watch out for person, -kengerera 66-14
 something -kāra ghundondoro They were careful to build the house well = ha
 3. to be- show care in karire ghundondoro kughumba ndhugho dhiwana
 doing
- CARELESS** a.
 1. unconcerned, - about kukushwāhura 47 see SLOVENLY, SLUT
 personal appearance
 -failing to care -shwāhura
 for parents
 -light-hearted mutjima gho ghuredhu Children are light-hearted, having no cares =
 hanuke ho mitjima dhodhiredhu kununda dhom-
 athirerekedho

CARELESS (cont)

2. inattentive, thoughtless (Sets-bwata)
ghuheshi

You are a careless child; you are not thinking of what you are doing = mwanuke gho ghuheshi; mbadi nga ghu yedhekere ghoyi nga ghu tendi.

hearing, spoiling a thing through bad handling

2. ghurandhi (3malice)
(1.sleep.(1))

using fragile object without due care

-rughana nomagugu

3. inaccurate in work

ghuyi

You have been careless in not building the wall straight = nga mu kara ghuyi mbadi nga mu ghumbu mudhudhu gho kughororoka.

CARPENTER n

worker in wood, making furniture, tools
carpenter's tools
tree from which- makes planks
w.v. to work as a -

muyuwu 1/2
yiyuwitha /8
ghughúwa 14/6(14)
-yúwa

see TABLE

1/2

CARPET n

something put on floor
skin-mat - see also MAT

thiyára 7/8
pati 10/6(10)

CARRIAGE n

1. transport, conveyance
transporting, conveying
cost of transporting,
conveying

diyéndero 5/6
-shimba
mughúro gho
shimba 3/10(4)

CARRIER n

one who carries, conveys,
transports

múka-shimba 1/2

CARRY vt. vi

1. bear. see BEAR;

load. gen. word. -

way of carrying

how carried - in the

arms

- under the arm

- burden on back

- burden on back, of

pack animal

- continually on back,

eg. girl with baby

- in folds of dress

- in the hand

- object in hand and

another in hand

- small thing in hand

with big thing on head

- on the hands

- heavy thing with both

hands

- on the head (country

word)

- bucket on head without

touching it

- carefully on head, so

as not to spill

- on the shoulders id.

-shimba
rushimbitho 11
-yangatera mugyara
-páteka mungwápa
kwereka
- bēresa
-shimbashimba 10
-veka
-shimba
-yángatera munyara
-dhéndha
-shimba nonyara dhiwádi
-kwáterera 66-14
-tēngena
-tengona nyéngerete
-ndjándjedha 5-(2a)
-shímbera pathifudhi
6-5c

e.g. full basket. N.B. to get heavier, of load,
when carried -rēmenena 99-13
-(town word) -kwáterera 13

CARRY (cont)

- on shoulders of two people kukúreka pakánda
OC 7
 - on shoulders with sticks kukukíndura 7
 - across shoulders, as grass bundles kukukámbeke thitúngu
7
 - slung over shoulder on stick -kúreka syn.- N.B. the bundles are suspended from each end
-pángeka 3-4a of the stick
2. purpose of carrying
- for another -shímbera 6-5a N.B. this also means 'to provide a container for carrying'
 - to another person -twárera 6-5b
 - fetch and - see FETCH 1. -túta (2.blow 4)
 - help to - -shímbeitha 4-2b
3. what is carried
- home corn -tútera tumbi 6-5b
 - a fire from one place to another -yúka
 - in loads, so much at a time -túta
 - fig.-news -thímwetedhera (-shímbe mbúdhí)
mbúdhí 6-5b
 - people, e.g. sick person in arms -dhámuna
 - infant in womb of a woman -rēma
 - water, e.g. of pipes -shímbeanga 10-9 ex. pipes carry water from the river to houses =
miyengo dhomeyu dhina shimbanga meyu kushwagha
murware kuyenda kumayugho
 - weapons -eg. bow, gun -yāmbata ghúta
 - weapon against surprise attack kukutáteka OC-7
 - for long distance, e.g. gun -kúreka 3-4a
4. -with adv. prep - across
- river in canoe -théka
 - along, by water in flood kukupúkitha
OC -4-7,2b
 - (cp. SWEEP 3) get carried away by current 1. -púngumuka (2.lost)
8(9)3-13,4b
 - away an object -shímbe
 - off, e.g. thief to prison -shímbe
5. fig. and id. usage.
- hearers, of speaker i.e. persuade -táwitha 4-2b He spoke so well that he carried his hearers with him = gha ghambire thiwana kenge yo eshi gha tawithire haka kuyuva nendi.
 - one's mind back i.e. bring to mind -ghayáaritha 4-2b You carry my mind back to my childhood = ghuna ni ghayaritha wanuke wange
 - on, continue -hényena yénda kughútho You carry on; I will not be long = mu henyene kuyenda kughutho, Mbadi sho ni kare ruvedhe rorure.
 - out, put into practice -tēnda I have carried out your instructions = na tendire maraghero ghoye
 - through, complete -māna I have carried the whole thing through = na manine yirughana yoyiheyá.
 - weight, authority kúpa ghurēmu The chief's words carry weight with his people = maywil ghafumu ghoveta ghana pa ghuremu handuwendí

- CART** n
two-wheeled vehicle,
drawn by animals; donkey -kakarakī-E 12/13
- CARTRIDGE** n
explosive charge for gun
containing bullet thidwāyuritho 7/8 nodyōnga dyoghūta N.B. gunpowder fūnda 10/6(10)
(muthiri, 3 -sets.)
- CARVE** vt. vi.
1. cut out in wood with
adze knife -yūwa Dimbo carved this stool = Dimbo gha yuwire
cut out of wood -gūrura He carved this drum out of that tree = gha
gururire ngoma dhi muthitondo thiya
with knife to make
smooth -hērura -bow of boat -ghushenga
2. - meat, by butcher, -tétaghura 15/6
for cooking -11
-meat, cut up with
knife -tjínaghura 15/6
-11
3. -out piece of land from
larger whole -páyura He carved a small piece out of his lands for
his son to cultivate = gha payurire dipyana
mumapyaghandi ngeshi mwanendi ghomukafumwana
gha dime
- CARVER** n.
one who carves wood mūka-yūwa 1/2
one who carves meat for
cooking mutétaghuri nyama
1/2
- CARVING** n
thing carved in wood thiyūwa 7/8 syn. muyūwo, 3/10(4)
- CARVING-TOOL** n
tool used for carving thiyūwitho 7/8
- CASE** n
1. law-, cause for court
hearing, trial théko, 7/8 Place for the case to be heard = mathekéro
(hom mathekero = moorings) /6
dispute taken to court nāndo 10/6 (10)
to bring a - for trial -thékitha 4-2b Try-in certain place -thékera (hom. -thékera =
beach boat)
N.B. - for knife shwākero; 10/6 (10) for needles
and thread murúkitho 3/10(4)
2. box thikésa 7/8
3. in phrr. in - some-
thing happens pamwe ngwa Take some food in case the lorry breaks down =
shimbo ūta noye pamwe ngwa thihauto thina
tjokera mundhira
in any - i.e. whatever
happens ngāmbi kéhe
thino In any case I will be there at the right time =
ngāmbi kehe thino thinu tha kare, űanyi ni ka
kume kuya muravedhe roruhunga.
In the case of Disho, I make an exception =
nina shwaghitha Disho muveta.
in the - of, i.e.
regards (id. expr. in
Mbukushu)
a certain person, matter (lit. 'I cause Disho to go outside the
rule')
- CASH** n
ready money app. to cheque manyīnga gho kuróghitha
/6

- CASK n
barrel, wood container
for liquids ditānga 5/6
- CASSAVA n
W. Indian plant, also in
Africa, with tube roots
-like root, from which oil
extracted for head wig
bulb of mono 12.
mwāndja 10/6(10) root of - muhúdhí 3/10(4)
móno 10/6 (10)
dinānda dyo
rwonono 5/6
- CASSOCK n
priest's black robe thishúpata tho
thikíhu tha
murúti 7/8
- CAST vt. vl.
1. throw - see THROW -
person, thing into water -dábweka 3-4a
- a line when fishing -kóndhera
- a net into river -tégha díkwe murwáre
- lots, to choose by fall
of dice, bones -nókithera hánga "They cast lots for my clothing" (John 19:24)
6-5c = "ha nokitherire po hanga yitere yange."
2. with adv. & prepp
- away unwanted thing -mwāgha
- away to a distance -mwāghera kokayenda
6-5b
- down to the ground -vúkumena 9-5b "Aaron cast down his rod before Pharoah" (Ex. 7:10)
= "Aaron gho gha yukumenine katondo kwendi pa
ghutho dha Pharaoh"
- (see THROW)-down from the
air -shúghumuna
- down from a high
height, -nátura "They led him to the brow of the hill.....that they
might cast him down headlong"(Luke 4:30)
"Ha mu twarire kate kushungushungu dhodindundu.....
eshi ha ka mu nature"
- (i.e. from hill-top, tree,
see THRUST, THROW 1)
-into fire -mwāgherera 66-15 "The whole of thy body shall be cast into everlasting
fire" (Math. 5: 29,30) = "Yirama yoye
yoyihe nanyi ha ku yi mwagherere mumudiro
ghororuheya"
- off an opponent when
wrestling -vúkuma
- out, drive away person
animal -tjidha N.B. - out devils, in N.T. - shwághitha no-thidha
- out, expel person from
community -shwághitha 4-2b "They cast him out of the synagogue"(John 9:34)
ko-thindadheka kwawo ha mu shwaghithire
3-24 muthinagoge"
- out of sight kwichura pamého
- out, reject as useless -mwāghera 6-5 b "If the salt has lost its taste, it is better to
cast it out" (Math. 5. 13) = "Ngeshi ghuna
hamupa mungwa, hashu ne kumwagera panunda"
- up dust, as moving
vehicle -dūdumuna dikungu The lorry is throwing up a cloud of dust = thihauto
kududumuna thine kudumuna dikungu
3. fig. - away,
disinherit (r.-tóra) -tórwerera kumbádi He has cast his son away as his heir = nga torwerera
14-23 mwanendi kumbadi yira mudya ghushwi
- down, of face, be dep-
ressed -thighekera 3/6- "Why are you so angry and cast down?" (Gen.4:6)
4a,5c = "Yinye ghuna patera norupara rwoye
yinye runa thighekera?"

CAST (cont)

- into prison (lit. 'cause to enter') kwíngeneka mukashítiko 3-4a
- spell on, bewitch, see BEWITCH -rōha

CAST (2) n

- throw to a distance thimwāghera kokayénda 7/8
- throw of net into water thitēgha tho dikwe 7/8
- throw of lots thínókithera thohángā 7/8
- throw of bones thikukahángā 7/8

CASTRATE vt.

- remove pan's private parts -tūtura 6-21
- remove private parts by bruising with stone -fúrera 6-5c
- goat -nútura (6)(21)

CASUALTY n

- accident thimyatuka 7/8 see ACCIDENT

CAT n

- small, domestic flesh-eating animal kate - E 12/13 big - kudíthé 15a; 2-5 -hatúte 2 irr.
- musk -, civet, with strong smell 2. thimba 7/8 (1. berry)
- pole -, small, dark brown kangāmbé 12/13
- weasel thínóno 7/8 lap water as - -rátha
- wild-

CATAPULT n

- forked stick with elastic material for shooting rekele 1a(9)/6(9)

CATARACT n

- 1. waterfall mawērero gho méyu /6
- 2. eye affliction causing partial blindness thifíkerera 7/ - tho mého

CATARRH n

- a cold, in head dihókima 5/

CATCH vt. vi. (1)

- 1. capture -kwáta They have caught the thief = nga ha kwata mwidhi
- fish -róvera He has gone to catch fish = nga yenda kurovera thi
- fish with a hook -tamuna see FISH(2)3
- 2. - in trap, ensnare -kwáta muthitéghitha see TRAP, SNARE
- fish, in net, of woman -shingishera see NET
- (thikuku)
- in foot-trap kúrwa muthiráha

- 3. lay hold of - see HOLD

- kwáta He caught the thief with both arms = nga kwata mwidhi moko ghomaheya.

- lay hold of moving object-person, animal, lorry

- kwáta -Anything thrown with hands -
- hāgwera (14)(23)

- try to catch child quickly, of adult -ngumatedha 5-2a

- He caught the child as he turned to run=gha ngumatedhire mwanuke ghoku shime gha pirukire kutjira

- ox by the leg with riam -kóka hóve nomúya

CATCH (1) (cont)

- with paws, mouth, e.g. of lion -vūmata
- get caught up in tree, of object thrown -kághamena 8/9-3,5c (r. tie (1) 2)
- hold of object carried by current -kávura
- up an object and go off with it -tjōmbora see SNATCH
- 4. fig. and id. - a cold -kwáta dihkima
- fire -kwáta mudiro
- up a person quickly, unexpectedly -kwáta wangu He was surprised when his enemy quickly caught him up = gha yovorire ghopa ñorewendi gha mu kwatire wangu
- surprise in the act of doing -wánekedha (r-wana) 3/5-4a,2a. The storekeeper caught the thief opening the money box = mughurithi gha wanekedhire mwidhi ghana kuyandhurura thikesha thomsnyinga
- see SURPRISE ('gct')
- sight of, begin to see -váreka -móna I caught sight of the hills just now = nina vareka kumona shime vene mandundu
- a person's attention -kwáta mashóngomeno He caught the attention of his hearers = gha kwatire mashongomeno ghawaka kumuyuva
- with the mind -yúva I can catch what they are saying = na kona kuyuva ghoyi hana kughamba
- out in speech -téghera 6-5b "They sent Pharisees to catch Jesus in his talk" (Mark 12;13) = "ha tumine ha-Farisayi kukatagera Jesus muyighambayendi.

CATCH (2) n

- 1. act of catching - of fish thikwáta 7/8 thikwáta thoyithi 7/8
- 2. cunning question, trap thipura tho-téghera 7/8

CATECHIZE vt

- instruct by questions and answers -hōnga noyifura noyihútha

CATECHUMEN n

- person being instructed for baptism múka kukuhōnga diyóghero 1/2

CATERPILLAR n

- type of worm that becomes butterfly; hairy - diyúwayúwa see CANKER worm

CATTLE

- n.ph. live stock, usually of oxen and cows herd of - ngómbé 1a(9)/2(9),10 murāka gho ngómbé 3/6
- w.v. squat on ground of - after grazing 1. -gómba (2. idle)
- w.nn - kraal, enclosure - see KRAAL murāka (disāka 5-gets.) 3/6 sleeping place of - thigōmbo 7/8
- kraal, large hāmbo 10/6(10) -crush, e.g. at agricultural show 2.(Sets. dipútera (l.hospital) 5/

CATTLE (cont)

- owner, one who owns múkangómbé syn. muka - rumuna ngómbé
 - post, place where - murāka 3/6
 go out from to graze

CAULDRON n.

- large vessel for boiling thitēre tho thikóru
 liquids 7/8 N.B. with hoop handle and lid
 large earthen vessel dyōma 5/6
 large vessel for dindímbe 5/6
 keeping beer

CAUSE n (1)

- that which produces an murādu 3/10(4) The cause of the fire was a spark flying out from
 effect the fireplace = murandu ghomyera ne katadhi ko
 kutadhuka mudidhiko
 person who causes a thing muka -vāreka Who is the cause of this commotion? = yidye nga
 to happen (lit. 'begin') 1/2 vareka rupetho ru?
 reason, motive for doing For what cause have you done this? = nye ghu
 thi tendera ? (lit. 'why have you done this')

CAUSE (2) vt.

- effect, make a thing happen (add causative ext.
 to v. st; as in ext. 5, 6, 10, 13). They cause him to err = hana ku mu yongaritha

CAUTION n

1. taking care yikéngerera /8. see CARE (1) 2
 2. warning (makariméno Sets.)
 /6 see WARNING
 mashíngékero /6
 thithonyena 7/8
 secret warning

CAVE n.

- underground hollow 1. dingúrugoma (2. gulf) N.B. usually wild animal's lair or robber's
 5/6 den....see DEN cp. HOLLOW(1) vi

CAVITY n

- empty hole in solid body rupāko 11/6(11) big in tree dirupāko
 - in tree, containing water diyúyi 5/6
 - in a tooth dipórwa 5/6

CEASE vt

1. stop doing kwimeka -tenda "Cease to do evil" (Is. 1;17) "Mwimeke kutenda
 ghuyi"
 kwimeka -kondha Cease fire ! =mwimeke kukondha!
 kwimeka yirughana You can cease work = mwa kona kwimeka yirughana.
 vi. 2. come to end - of -kwimeka -háka He has ceased to love me = ngemeka kunihaka.
 feelings
 come to end - of -kúpwa Work has ceased = yirughana kuna kupwa yina
 actions -vúka It has ceased raining = nga ka vuka kuroka.
 - hold up, as rain -húmba -yéreka I have ceased trying to bring them together =
 3. bring to end - nga ni humbu mu kuyereka kuwatungitha muthiraro.
 attempts

CEASELESSLY adv

- without ceasing, without He works ceaselessly = kurughana ghana kurughana
 stopping (id. in Mbukushu)

R.C. WYNNE.

CELEBRATE vt.

commemorate event by making
feast -tenda mukándi

CEMENT (1) n

pasty substance for binding
bricks dhámende(£) 10/

CEMENT (2) vt

to apply, use - -rughánitha dháménde
4-2b

CENSER n

vessel for burning incense kanyúngu ko- 2/13 -tjótjamekedhitha (ghungongorwa)

CENSURE (1) n

reprimand, expressed
disapproval thihanduka 7/8
scolding, blame thighambara 7/8

CENSURE (2) vt

reprimand, reprove, -hānduka see REBUKE
rebuke -ghāmba 6-5b see SCOLD
scold, blame

CENT n

one hundredth part of
dollar, rand séndi- £ 10/6(10)

CENTIPEDE n

crawling worm with many
feet, round, black dyóngoro 5/6
flat, brown, poisonous - muyéreyere 3/10(4)
w.v. use stick to expel -
from hut -pándaghura
15/6-11

CENTRE n

middle point of line
circle - MT. katharakátji 12/
in the centre, of
anything pakátji mukátji ko It is split in the centre = gha thi payura
mukatji kothi

CENTURION n

Roman commander of a hundred
soldiers muraghuri 1/2 -gho mashoróndati difere dyofótji

CEREMONY n

religious rite veta dha Nyámboi
10/6
formalities on public
occasions veta dha wagúva
10/6
tribal - veta dho díko 10/6
initiation - for girls ghudjáho 14/

CERTAIN a.

1. sure to happen shémwa It is certain to rain to-day = shemwa hanyi gha
roke dyarero
2. particular, of persons ghumwe A certain person = munu ghumwe
particular, of things thimwe etc. In a certain place = mudyango dimwe
such and such ghumwe no ghumwe You can use the land on certain conditions
= wa kona kurughanitha dipya di nomaghano ghamwe
noghamwe

- CERTAIN (2) vi
to be - sure -shémwapitha (16)2b You may be certain that he will do a good job
= wa kona kushemwapitha eshi nanyi gha kutende
yirughana yoyiwa.
- CERTAINLY adv
surely shémwa Surely he will come to-day = shemwa nanyi
gheye dyarero
- CERTAINTY n
a sure thing ghushémwa 14
- CERTIFICATE n.
paper testifying to,
attesting a fact mbapira dho
-shémwapitha see ATTESTATION, TESTIMONY
10/6(10)
- CERTIFY vt
see ATTEST, TESTIFY,
WITNESS -shémwapitha
1/4(16)2b
- CHAFE vt. vi
rub skin to restore warmth kukurora nyara CC-
make sore by rubbing (lit.
'hurt') -tórokanya His shoulder was chafed by hauling the rope =
irritate -yúvitha tjitju dipeghe dyendi ghuna mu torokanya pomughodhi
4-2b yuvitha tjitju The sore chafes him = thitomba thina mu
- CHAFF n.
1. husk of grain dihútu 5/6 (hom. dihútu = blister)
- with grain inside kapéke 12/13 i.e. by threshing, winnowing
- separated from grain mungu 3/
2. straw muhónyi gho (lit. 'grass or reeds that are cut')
or mbudho téma 10/6(10) 3/
cut straw for thatching -muhónyi gho-vudha
3. worthless stuff yitjoro /8
- CHAIN n
1. connected length of
metal links dyenge
pl. menge 5/6
handcuffs, see
HANDCUFFS id. yihaka boyi /8
2. necklace thipáko 7/8
fig. 3. series of events Let me tell you the chain of events in the order
in which they happened = ni ku tongwere eshi
(lit. 'let me tell you how ngepi thinu thofotji thina kuranda thimweya
one thing followed another')
- CHAIR n.
seat for one person thipúra 7/8 Take a chair = hungumane pathipura
throne of king, president thipúna 7/8 But throne of God dipúna 5/
- CHAIRMAN n
one who takes chair,
presides at meeting mukathipúnagho muraghuri ghó mbongarero 1/
-ghútho 1/
- CHALICE n
wine-cup used in Holy
communion nginda dho
mandjómbo 10/6(10)dho dhirera

- CHALK n
white, soft lime stone, mbéyo 10/6(10) kahēmba 12/13
used for blackboard writing
- CHALLENGE n (1)
summons to account for one-
self thishúpwera 7/ He heard the challenge of the sentry "Who goes there?" = gha yúvire thishupwera thomukengereri eshi "Yidyé sho gha yende kuya?"
- also of summons to fight,
contest thishúpwera 7/
exception taken to decision thishúpwera 7/ He has issued a challenge against the count's decision = nga tendi thishupwera kumbanguro dhongotha
- CHAMBER n
room ngonda 10/6 (10)
inner chamber, private thighombi 7/8 - as in Math. 6; 6.
place
- CHAMELLON n
lizard able to change
colour rughongoro 11/6(11) w.v. roll eyes, of - -píraghura meho 15/6,11
w.vv. to change colour of - kukuthítunuka 99/3, 7, 15, 4b
change his coat, of - kukuthítaghura 15/6-7/11
to swell, of gizzard of -
when angry -fúdhathana, 20
clutch tightly, with feet, -nyámatera 6-5c
of -
- CHAMPION n
person fighting for another
or a cause múka -rwera
- CHANCE n (1)
luck, the way things
happen ghúte 14/ To win this game is a matter of chance = kupita thihepa na thitenda thoghute
unplanned happenings ghute 14/ I met him by chance = na hanganine rendi no ghute
opportunity ngogha 10/6 Now is your chance to protest = dyaro gho dhi ne ngogha dhoye dho kushweneena
possibility id. kadi kuna kángera There is just a chance I may see him = kadi kuna vene
probability -nínga yíra The chances are against my seeing him = kuninga yira mbadi shoni mu wane (lit. 'seemingly I shall not meet him')
on the chance, possibly (lit. 'perhaps') pamwe I will go to the chief's palace on the chance of seeing him = fanyí ni yende kumbara dhafumu eshi pamwe na mu wane
see OPPORTUNITY
phrr. not to give a - -shapitha 4-2b Do not give him a chance lest he kill you = wa mu shapitha maghana sho gha kupaghé.
lose a - (r. nose 3) -pémura ngogha You have lost your chance of work = nga ghu pembura 6-5a ngogha dhoyirughana
stand a good - kwimeka ghúte You stand a good chance of being selected for the job = wimeke ghute ghoghuwa eshi fanyí ha ku torore yirughana.
take a - try one's luck -yéreka ghúte I will take the chance of getting a lift in a lorry = fanyí ni yereke ghutewange eshi pamwe ghumwe gha ni dhineke muthihauto

- CHANCE (2) vi
happen by - -kwayura It happened by chance that he appeared
at that moment (just then) = kwa kwayurire
eshi gha hokokire keho vene
- vt. coll. risk -yéreka ghúte I will chance it and wait here for a lorry =
ñanyi ni yereke ghutewange ñanyi na tateere
pano tho thihauto tho kwiya.
- CHANGE n
alteration see ALTER
substitution of for
another
- of moon, new phase of
moon
yipírura 7/8
thimanena 7/
yipíruka yo
kaghonda /8 ko kughútho; or yipíraghuka yo kaghonda
ko rupára rwako
- of clothes yishúpata yayonayo /8
small - of money yihúpi E /8 syn. tjindji(E) yo manyinga gho mambiru
see DIFFERENCE 4 (lit. 'change of small money') la(9)
- CHANGE (2) vt. vi
1. take another instead of -shúpata thathonatho She has changed her dress = nga shupata thishupata
clothes thoye thathonatho
exchange places -tápera mango 6-5a Will you change places with me? = ñanyi ghu
kutapere mango nange ndi?
- gramm. - of concords - mt. kukushinda yinungitho
7
2. - alter position of things
see ALTER -pírura mémano They have changed the positions of goods in
the store = nga ha pírura mamemano ghoyitere
muthitora
-alter in character,
appearance -pírura He has changed much since I saw him last =
nga pírura thikuma ghopa nga ni mu
monu ruvedhe ruya.
- colour -píruka rudhi
3-4b N.B. - colour of chameleon kukuthítunuka 9(9)3-7,15,4b
- of moon see CHANGE(1)
above
- one's mind -píruka maghano
3-4b
- place of meeting -pírura dyango dyo makónganeno
- CHANGEABLE a
apt to change mind or
behaviour kukupíraghura -maghano endi dikúto
15/6-7,11
- CHANNEL n
water - course kapúpo 12/13 syn. mundendesho 3/6
gully, water-worn
ravine dithímanyambi 5/6
course, direction of
moving water mukogha ghoméyu 3/
- CHAOS n.
1. lacking chape or form thipíra tho thúmbo
7/ -endi thirāma
2. confusion - disorder thiharañanyitha 7/
confusion - mix up thivunganyitha 7/
confusion - scattering
about thimwaghawaghithi 7/

R.C. WYNNE.

CHAPTER n.

division of book - M.T. thikúrumingwa 7/8

CHARACTER n

1. mark of being different thinegha tho -dhira see DIFFERENT
kukupítura 7/8
2. behaviour yikára /8 see BEHAVIOUR
habits mihingo /10(4) see HABIT
personality ngándji 10/ see PERSONALITY
reputation dikúto 5/ see REPUTATION
testimonial mbapíra dho
ghunóngonokodhi
10/6 (10) gho dikúto - see TESTIMONY

CHARCOAL n

black remains of partly
burnt wood makara ghó mudiro see CINDER
/6

CHARGE n

1. load for gun, esp. of explosive muthíri 3/ syn. funda 10/6(10)
2. price for goods; mughuro 3/10(4)
- for service rendered manyinga gho
-kórota /6
3. commission, order to carry out veta 10/6 (10)
4. care, custody - thikúnga 7/8 Watching over, keeping an eye on e.g. children,
see CUSTODY property - thikéngerera 7
- give person in - hand over to police - shwághitha 4-2a The chief gave the thief in charge = fumu gha
(lit. 'cause to go out') shwaghithire mwidhi kumaporithi
5. accusation .see ACCUSATION marunderero /6

CHARGE vt vi (2)

1. load a gun -rongera ghúta
2. give strict orders 2. -shinga (hom.rebuke) "He charged them that they should tell no man
(1. drive 3; about him " (Mark 7; 36) = "Ha wa shingire
3. deter) eshi mbadi ha mu hokora kwamunu ghumweya"
3. - with the care, entrust with see ENTRUST -tápa thikengerera She charged her neighbour with the care of her
baby = gha tapire kwamuyendhendi thikengerera
thokambututukendi
4. accuse -rundera see ACCUSE
blame -ghambura 6-5b see BLAME
5. - a person a price for -pákera munu
mughuro 6-5a
6. attack -táthera see ATTACK
- as cavalry shwatama
- of wild animal, eg. buffalo -bómoka
- head on, as rhino id. -púmenena kadidi
kughútho 99-14

CHARGER n

cavalry horse mbi wa mashorondáti 1a(9)see HORSE

CHARIOT n

horse-drawn conveyance thihaúto tho koka mbi
7/8 N.B. used in ancient times

CHARITY n

christian love of fellow-men ruhakitho rwawakristi 11/

CHARITY (cont)

kindness ghunongo 14/
 gifts to help poor, yitápa ya wanépwe /8
 alms

CHARM (1) n

1. spell, enchantment, 14/
 magic ghurodhi
 object worn to protect péku 10
 from harm (pl. yi-8,) - seller múka pékura 1/2
 2. attractiveness, power to
 - attract ngcamu dho-koka
 10/

CHARM (2) vt.

bewitch by magic see
 BEWITCH rōha
 delight, give much pleasure
 to -shámberera thikúma
 66-14

CHARRED a

burnt to charcoal; piece
 of wood thihangekitho
 w.n. blackened with fire myéra /10/6(10)
 - ruin

CHASE vt.

1. pursue -tjidha 5-2b syn.2-Animal to lair e.g. mouse into its hole -
 -nunga (1. join) -tjidha kudikwina 5-2b
 - pursue one another kukutjidha syn.
 kukuyumuna OC 7 - of one person or crowd pursuing another
 person kukutávura OC 7
 - child, trying to catch quickly, of adult kukúpatedha OC 7
 2. drive away, out of, from -tjidha(r.tjira = run)
 5-2b (-hátera - Sets)
 -away birds from fields -kwinga also - away flies from milk, mosquitoes

CHASM n

deep cleft in earth's
 surface mufa gho ghudhúngi
 3/
 bottomless - mufa gho ghu_kandani 3/

CHASTEN vt.

discipline, -húmbitha 4-2b
 correct by suffering mu -yúvitha tjítju "The Lord chastens whom he loves" (Heb. 12; 6)
 4-2b = "Nyambi Fumu ghana húmbitha mu ka wa
 yúvitha tjítju ho wa ha haka.

CHASTISEMENT n

punishment thihúmbitha 7/8
 thrashing, beating mamwáshero /6

CHAT vi

talk easily, familiarly -vúreka -together kukuvúreka 7

CHATTER vi

1. of birds, uttering quickly short notes -diradira 10
 2. of people, talk without
 ceasing -táratára 10
 talk foolishly -ghamba ghuyero

- CHEAP a
not expensive, of low price
mughuro gho kupira ndhiro syn. thikatu, 7/8
- CHEAT (1) n.
1. trick, criminal fraud
ideo. red ghuringi, ringi 14/6(14) see TRICK, FRAUD
deceit thangereka 7/8 see DECEIT
2. swindler; one who cheats another of money (muka kuruka) 1/2
deceiver, trickster muringiringi 1/2
- CHEAT (2) vt. vi.
1. deceive, trick person out of a thing -ringiripera . He cheated you out of your property = gha ku ringiripeere wangu wa yongarithe yimuna yoye.
kwangereka
2. swindle, defraud (-kuruka) He cheated me in demanding a false price for these goods = gha ni ringiperire mu ghana rombo mughuro ghomoudhi yoyitere yi
ringiripera 6-5a
- CHECK n (1)
restraint, curb thikotora 7/8
test of accuracy thiyereka 7/8
- CHECK (2) vt. vi.
1. restrain, curb -katora I checked him as he was about to protest = na mu kotorire ghoku gha shwenine kuyenda
see RESTRAIN, CURB
- curb, keep under control -ñaña You will have to keep that horse in check = ñanyi wa roghere kuñaña mbi ya.
animal
2. test accuracy of accounts, statement -yereka I will check the figures of your accounts = ñanyi ni yereke yivarero yombapira dhomanyinga
- how things are, -condition -kokoka N.B. to go around and - how people are -dHINGURA
of patient
3. find fault with, rebuke -hanyena 9-5b They are checking the driver = hana kuhanyena muhingi
- CHEEK n
side of face below eye ditama 5/6 see HOLLOW
- bone ngwevo 10/6(10)
- CHEEKY a
behaving, speaking impudently to elders ghurughuru N.B. this word is used especially of children
- CHEER (1) n
1. of frame of mind of good - hopeful vi-tjimapá 1-17 "Be of good cheer! Be not afraid" (Math. 14. 27)
= "Mu tjimape! Yame! Mwa yapa"
2. applause, shout of encouragement vt. -humwerera 66-14 "Three cheers! " = id. "Mu wa humwerera" (lit. 'keep on applauding them')
- CHEER vt. vi. (2)
1. comfort . see COMFORT
gladden -kótamena 9-5a - up of a person who was sad, depressed -guva
-shámbereritha 66/4
14,2b
2. applaud, shout for joy -humwerera 66-14
- CHEERFUL a
1. contented -hethumuna mutjima To have a countenance, face - kara no rupara ro kutungitha

CHEERFUL (cont)

2. pleasant in conversation -ghamba thiwána
 3. willing, not reluctant -táwa agreeable
 4. gay, happy ghutúngitho

CHEESE n

- acidified milk in solid form maghadhi dho
 rushíko /6

CHEETAH n

- small type of leopard, very fast diumbwa 5/2,6

CHEMIST n

- seller of medicine mughuríthi gho
 ghuwanga 1/2

CHEQUE n

- written order to pay money kambapíra ko
 stated manyinga 12/13
 -book mbapíra dho
 manyinga 10/6(10)

CHERUB n (pl.-lm)

- angel of knowledge muengéli gho
 thidímukitho 1/2

CHEST n.

1. large, strong box thikésha tho
 thikúru thongóamu
 7/8
 2. part of body enclosed by ribs difémbwe 5/

CHEW vt. vi.

1. work about between teeth especially of food -tahuna syn. -tafuna - N.B. small teeth used to-, as chameleon
 -tobacco -tahuna dikáya matafunitho /6
 2. - cud, esp. of cow after grazing -yovonga chew food hard to masticate -mboronda
 (-ghotitha, 10 sets.)

CHICKEN n

- domestic fowl shushwa 1a(9)/2(9),10
 young domestic fowl katjijotjiyo 14/13 see HEN chicken-house thikōra(hom. thikōra-lamp) 7/8
 nestle together, of - in cooping in eve 1. -ghombatara (2. prosper)
 - louse, insect infesting feathers hofwa 10/6(10) see louse
 black - lice, appearing in rains yina yo shushwa 8
 - pox, child's disease of spots thikōrwa tho
 mváshe 7 (lit. 'the disease of the giraffe')

CHIEF (1) n

- head man of African Tribe 'fúmu 1a/2
 back yard of - marombe /4 palace of - mbára 10/6(10)
 person living in-'s back yard; secretary múkanyámo wa
 fúmu 1/
 to take gift to - to make rain -tjira mvúra kwa fúmu (lit. 'for the rain to run to the chief')

CHIEF (1) (cont)

to take present to - for
making rain

-twára yídyá kwa (lit. 'to carry food to the chief')
fúmu

gift-cow to -
for making rain

ndúpa 1a(9)/2(9)10

gift from - for journey
land of - field ploughed
for -

furufénde 10

dyándja 5/6

CHIEF (2) a

first in importance . eg.

- man

múkafúmu gho
mukúru 1

to first reason for
doing

muráandu gho mutángo
3

CHIEFLY adv.

especially, above all

thóthikúru

I went to speak chiefly to you = nina kushana
kughamba nowe thothikuru

CHIEFTAINCY, CHIEFTAINSHIP n

office of chief

ghufúmu

He desires the chieftaincy = ghufumu ghana ko
direra - see AMBITIOUS

CHILD n.

small human being

mwánuke (pl. hánuke)
1/2

unborn human being

mwána-gho-dhira-
shamuruka

newborn human being -

kambútutu syn.

baby

kakeke 12

- just weaned

mwíre 1/2

(pl. hemwíre)

grandchild

mwíkuru 1/2

(pl. hékuru)

first born -

mbédi 1a/

second born -

thirandambedi 7/

one and only -

ñomba-mbedi 1a/

last-that a woman will

bear

ñomba 1a/

illegitimate child - see

mwána gho

BASTARD

-píra wíhe 1/2

small, always playing with
things in house

thirúghuru 7/8

as a -

pawanuke

I remember learning this as a child = na ghayara
eshi ni thi kuhongire pawanuke

- whose parents are dead

thíghana 7/8

w.v. to be with -

pregnant

-rema

have one's own -

kukutúpwera 7

w.nn. childbirth

mashámurukero 6

Ritual cleansing after childbirth - madhirerekedhero
/6

childhood

wánuke 14/

a childish

thánuke

a childlike

yira mwánuke

a childlike - when child

plays with elders -

tjéreha

(N.B. see also MINCE)

CHILDLESS n

a -, barren

mbumi

a childless woman = mukadhi ghombumi

w.v. be - barren

-mbuma

n. one who has lost

last child

thinyéreri 7/

CHIN n

front of lower jaw

thindjúmu 7/

He was in deep water up to his chin = gha
karire muditondo dyo kumukuma kuthindjumuthendi.

- CHINK n
 1. split in ground mufa gho múve 3/
 2. long, narrow opening thero tho thire see GAP
 - in grass wall, fence tho thithórokoto 7
 kambénene 12/13 N.B. this is small; only thin objects can
 kabwabwa 12/13 pass through
 N.B. this is big - a hole through which even a
 dog can pass - see HOLE.
 peep-hole makókokero gha wa
 ngumweno /6 See PEEP-HOLE
- CHIP (1) n
 thin piece cut from wood, thipára 7/8 see PIECE
 broken from stone
 splinter, injuring person katháthá 12/13 see SPLINTER
 if enters finger nail
- CHIP (2) vt. vi
 1. cut wood at edge, near -yuwa
 surface of carpenter
 use axe to remove roughness
 of log to make plank -pangaghura 15/6-11 -maporopombo, remove bark at beginning of adzing
 -púta see STRIP (1) 3
 2- break cups, plates at yondoka 3-4b - break crockery many times at edges -gonyaghuka
 edge - once 15/3-11,4b
- CHISEL n
 steel-edged tool for shaping wood shíndho 10/6(10)
- CHOICE (1) n
 choosing, selection thitórora 7/8 or matórwero /6 (= place of choosing)
- CHOICE (2) a
 a nice, tasty, good in quality ghutówi
- CHOIR n
 band of singers kashúmba ka
 wakakwimba 1. 2/13
- CHOKE vt. vi
 suffocate, stop breath of -húthahúthera mūñu
 - 10,5b
 strangle throttle -gama
 - when food gets stuck in throat -rúhera
- CHOOSE vt. vi
 1. select out of a number -tórora
 - puppy out a litter -toma
 2. decide to do one thing than another -túra They chose to stay here rather than camp = ha
 turire kurara pano pamweya kuthikera.
 3. decide what to do -nómonona They chose to sell their cattle = ha nomononine
 kughuritha ngombe dhawo
 4. to be unable to -, to be perplexed -ngúmata I was unable to choose which path to take =
 na ngumatire ghodhi ndhirá na roghera kuranda
- CHOP (1) vt. vi
 cut wood with axe, with one blow 2. -páyura (1. cut, divide) (see CUT, HACK, HEW) -pághura pághura (10) =
 cut wood with axe with many blows

CHOP (1) (cont.)

- , cut off head with axe, behead -tjīnuna mūtwi
- branches of tree (up to five) -yēya mūte 1.e. of a big tree
- of many branches (over five) -rēngumuna mīte dhodhinga 89-14 - off all branches of tree (lit. 'spoil') -pētha thitondo
- saplings -tēta makōhwa
- , so as to split wood, with axe -yātura
- to make one scar in wood with axe -gēma nokāmo Make one scar, mark on many trees to show path through boundaries -gemangera 9,5c
- wood into small pieces -pāyaghura yiparāghana 11
- grass, with spade -shēva
- earth, with spade, when digging hole -thīmena fotjōro5c-11
- meat in mortar with axe -tēta nyama mukakūndhu. -nokāmo
- very fine, e.g. mince meat -tētaghura nyama ghuabīrumbīru 11

CHOP (2) n

- cutting stroke with axe thipāyura 7/8

CHOPPER n

- 1. person who chops mupāyuri (muyēvi) 1/2
- 2. short axe with large blade kāmo (pl. twāmo) 12/13

CHOPPING-BLOCK

- tree-stump or place for chopping mayēyero /6

CHOSEN a

- the - one person who is chosen mutōrori 1/2

CHRIST n

- the Jewish Messiah; Jesus -Křistusi 1a/

CHRISTIAN n

- believer, follower of Christ Mukřisti 1/2

CHRISTEN vt.

- baptize - see BAPTIZE -yōgha

CHRISTMAL n

- festival of birth of Christ Křistemas-E 9/ Or diyūwa dyo Mashā murukero ghaKřistus (lit. 'day of Christ's Birth') 5/

CHRONIC a

- lasting, often permanent disease, pain thishīporo, 7
- (yikōrwa yo -hēnya kughūtho kehēpa)

CHUCKLE vi

- laugh with closed mouth id.-hēka ghana kumumu

- CHURCH n
 congregation of Christians -mbúnga dhawakristi 10/6 see CONGREGATION
 building, organisation nkirishe 10/6
- CHURN vt. vi
 shake milk about to make butter - shika (hom. DRUM3) CHURNER n. one who churns milk thishiki 7/8
- CINDER n
 remains of wood burning without flame dikara 5/6 see CHARCOAL
 ashes mutútwi 3/10 (4) see ASHES
- CIRCLE n (1)
 line enclosing a perfect round - MT ñata 10/ 6(10)
 - of beads thipako 7/8
- CIRCLE vt. vi. (2)
 1. encompass, form - round -dhinga
 2. move in a - round, encircle -dhinguruka 16-22
 3. make a -, as a dancing kukutenda yira ditete OC 7
 4. - move in - as bird in air -teremba syn. -temba
- CIRCLET n
 - of cowrie-shells, of rain-making chief mathi /6
- CIRCUIT n
 line enclosing circular area thidhinga 7/8
 w.v. make a - go round in circle. -dhinguruka 16-22
- CIRCULAR a.
 round in shape thidhingudhingu mu thumbo
- CIRCULATE vi. vt.
 1. go round, as blood in body -yenda komanyinga muyirama
 2. send round a verbal message -yarayaritha thiragha 4-10/2b
 send round written note book -dhingurukitha mbapira 16/4-22/2b
- CIRCUMCISE vt.
 cut off foreskin -hōramitha 4-2b.
 undergo circumcision -keña
- CIRCUMCISION n
 act, rite of circumcising -mukeña 3
 chief officer of - mukuru ghomukeña 1
 boy who has not been to - mungawana 1
 boy refusing - mwoma 1/2
 boy who has just been circumcised ditjaha 5/6 see YOUTH
 procession of initiates of- thikurōndeka 7/8 tho WAKA KUPENGA

CIRCUMCISION (cont)
to come out from -
ceremony
to refuse -

-pénga
-téketa

CIRCUMFERENCE n
boundary of a circle,
distance round, mt.

mudhídhí 3/10(4)

CIRCUMFLEX n
accent ^ placed over vowel
for nasal sound

shũmbero. mt.
10/6(10)

mt - kápi, 12/13

CIRCUMSTANCE n.pl
everything to do with an
action see CONDITIONS

phrr. under the -

Describe the circumstances in which the fight
began = tongonone yinu yoyihe sho yi tu yake
kuyuva ngepi yita ya varekire (lit. 'tell
everything that will help us to understand how
the fight began')

Under the circumstances we had better not send him
to the chief. = yoyishi yoyinu ghoyi twa dimuka
yafumu, hasha mbadi sho tu mu tume (lit. 'because
of what we know of the chief, better we
do not send him')

under no -

ngambi kémo
tha kára
(lit. 'even if
anything happens')

Under no circumstances will I change my mind = ngambi
kemo tho kara, mbadi sho ni piruke maghano
ghange.

CITIZEN n
city-dweller
member of a state,
country

mutúngi 1/2
mutúngi gho
ditúnga 1/2

(-mudighumbo dyodikuru = in the city)
He is a citizen of Botswana = mutungi ghoditunga
dyo Botswana

CITY n.
important town, of some
size

dighúmbo dyo
dikúru 5/6

(lit = 'large village')

CIVIL a
courteous, polite
- of a citizen
- rights, rights of a
citizen

dikúto
ghomutúngi
yirōgha yo
mutúngi /8

- marriage, i.e. by
contract

wēnga nothikwátathana
14/6 (14)

- war, war between
citizens

m̃vo mukátjika
watúngi 10/

CIVILISED a
instructed in behaviour,
good way of living
- habits, habits of good
behaviour

tho kukuhóngá

- polite society

mihíngo dho
dikúto dyo díwa 10(4)
díko dyo thikúto 5

CIVILITY n
politeness

ghũnadikúto 14

- CLAIM vt. (1)**
demand recognition -nínga -kára He has claimed to be the true heir = nga kuningi kukara mudya ghushwi ghoshemwa.
- to be owner, or to have told the truth -nínga I claim that this is my donkey = na ningi eshi ghothi ne thidongithange.
- persistently, what is not ones own -káñana káñana 10 (lit. 'keep on arguing')
- CLAIM (2) n**
a demand for right, recognition thinínga 7/8 to put in a - -páka thinínga paghútho
- CLAIMANT n**
one who claims múka kunínga 1/2
- CLAMOUR n**
shouting -see SHOUT thikúyerera 7/8 (lit. 'crying aloud')
vi. vt. - make loud demand -rómba no kukúyerera They clamoured for his acquittal = ha rombire ko kukuyerera eshi mu ghature
(N.B. this is an ominous, unpleasant -)
- make confused noise -hátadhoka 3-12
- of joyful cheering mahúmwero 6
- CLAN n**
tribe díko 5/6
- CLAP (1) n**
explosive noise of thunder thānduka 7/8 (e.e. a single -)
noise of hand-palms struck together -ñwāthi-ñwāthi; also rukwāthikwāthi, 11/6 (11)
10/
- CLAP (2) vi. vt.**
1. applaud by clapping hands loudly -hūmwero 66-14 no kukānderera, 14 - see APPLAUD
-hands in song, dance 1. -kánda nyára; (2.milk) -cāndaghura, when small children play clapping game.
(once) (3. flap)
- hands before receiving gift 1. -kánderera 66-14 i.e. this is repeated (2 wag.)
- wings as bird flap audibly -kánda māndo noise of clapping wings kúpa-kúpa-kúpa 10
- CLASP (1) n**
1. fastening - brooch see BROOCH thitōghaghēritha 7/8
buckle see BUCKLE rupāteko 11/6(11)
2. handshake thikukukumuna moko 7/8
- CLASP (2) vt. vi.**
1. fasten clasp, buckle -kópera 6-5c see UNCLASP
2. embrace, hold closely 2 -ngcambura no nyára see EMBRACE (1. slap)
3. grasp another's hand kukukwāta nyára see HAND
OC 7
- CLASS n (1)**
1. rank, order of society, same age, group 2. mupáto (1. regiment) 3/10(4)
hānuke gho ndhugho dhofótji /2 -dho shúre (lit. 'children of the same hut of of the school')
- CLASS (2) vt.**
put in right group, place in a -yókudhona thiwána (lit. 'divide rightly')

- CLATTER vi vt
make dry, confused sound
of plates, cups struck
together -ngcérenganya 13/18 n. ngcérenganyo, 10/
- CLAUSE n
group of subordinate words
in sentence, mt. thighāambarúkerā 7
- CLAW (1) n
pointed horny nail of
animal dindwára 5/6, 10 see NAIL(1)
-talon of bird's foot dinyanyo 5/6
- CLAW vt. vi.
1. scratch with claws -nyānya see SCRATCH
2. tear with claws -djādjaghura 15/6-11 see TEAR
3. seize with claws -nóta
- CLAY n
stiff earth used for
pottery, bricks ghūma 14/ see LUMP
harden - model in fire -tūmekera thūmba 7 see MODEL
remove - model from fire
when hard -yōkora
break off, of a piece of
from pot -yōndoka
place of breakage mayōndokero /6
- CLEAN (1) a
free from dirt, unsoiled, 2. ghukénu (1. white)
clear clear
fig. - hands, meaning
'innocence' nyára dho dhikénu 10/(6)
- CLEAN vt. (2)
1. make - of dirt kukénupitha 1/4-16,2b see PURIFY
- up, tidy mass kukénupitha 1/4-16,2b
- down, by brushing -kóm̄ba
- down, by wiping kukuyúra 7
- teeth, by brushing kukuporitja mayegho 7
- oneself kukukénupitha 7
2. become - -kéna
become -, clear as water -kénupa, 1. 16 N.B. used of the result of sediment having settled)
become - of water -kéndhukuka 3-4b N.B. Used when sediment in bucket has settled;
separate sediment from water -
become clean, cerem-
onially kukuyōgha 7 (lit. 'to wash oneself') -kéndhumuna
become clean of
leprosy -hēruka kó yifōndwe
- CLEANSE vt.
archa. for CLEAN in lit.
sense; make clean -kénupitha 1/4-16,2b

purify from sin -kénupitha 1/4-16,2b
- i.e. cure lepers (bible) kwírukitha 4-2b
- wound completely -pönyoka

1. easily seen through,
transparent
fig. traffic-lights-for
traffic to proceed
fig. - conscience, free
from sin
-mōneena 9-5c
ditúrurandhīrá
thivúrukitho tho
thikénu
-yúvithitha
-dímukitha
ghurédhu kuyúva
-pīra muránu

see CONSCIENCE
see UNDERSTAND
see DISCERN

1. land, cut down trees
before cultivating -pūtura dīpya
- land of small bushes -yīpūtura
- chop to make space -yēya dīpya
- land of convolvulus -kāthumuna
'climbers'
2. -from obstruction,
remove -shwāghitha
4-2b

Clear these things on the ground so that we
can cook = shwaghithe yinu yi pamuve wangu wa
kona kutereka

- out, empty a place of things -shwāghitha
4-2b

- away, removing eating
utensils -shwághitha 4-2b

- off, when person, child
gets in way •shwāgha (-yēnda)

Clear off'. = shw_agha! (lit. 'get out') or
yende (= 'go')

- a way through a crowd -yōra hagūra

3. - out stomach with
medicine kukuhingurura

see PURGE

- the throat by slight coughing

fig.4. - up of sky, after
rain

(munyima dhomvura)

fig.5. make clear e.g.
reason for doing

I want to make clear why I have come
= na shana kukuyuvithitha gho thi neyera

piece of forest land cleared
for cultivation dipembe 5/6

natural open space in
forest

see OPENING

1. split asunder, in two
see ASUNDER -téta

2. chop along grain of wood, line He cleft the wood along the grain = gha payaghurire
-payaghura 15/6,11 thitondo pakatji katho

CLEAVE (cont)

3. cleft palate, in mouth-maharāpa gho kuyakunuka

6
 cloven hoof (see HCOOF) dindwara
 dyo kuyakunuka 5

CLEAVE (2) vi.

stick fast, adhere to, -kākatera

The children cleave to their mother = hanuke
 hana kukakatera kwanyokwawo.

e.g. of children, mud to
 shoes

-, stick fast to, as glued
 board

-kākateritha 4-2b see ADHERE, STICK

CLEFT n

split in earth, rock
 - in a tree

múfa 3/10(4)
 mupátameno gho
 dipángo 3/

- in tree-trunk

- múfa ghodithina 3/

see RAVINE 2

CLENCH vt. vi.

close teeth tightly in
 anger

-kwáta ngáyegho

- fists tightly in
 anger, to fight

-peteka makonye
 4a

CLINCH

settle argument finally
 conclude a bargain

-manitha nanani 4-2b
 -tenda ndhúvathano

CLERK n

person employed to write for
 another

kamutjangi 12/13 N.B. also to keep books, accounts, make entries

CLEVER a

skilful, neat in use of
 hands

ghundondoro

able and quick in thinking
 in using brain

ghutari

wise

ghunyányami

CLICK (1) vi

1. make sharp, slight
 sound in cocking gun

-ncérikedha 5-2a

2. make sharp voiceless
 sucking sound in African
 language

j. -ngcomona (2. peck) cp. -ncakura (SWA -MT) = to click like the
 Bushmen.

CLICK (2) n

1. sharp sound of cocking
 a gun

thincérikedha 7

2. - in African lang.

ngcomona 15a/6(15a)
 thincakura 7 -click of Bushman

CLIFF n

steep rock face, usually
 by sea

dindúndu dyo
 máwe 5

dyā shishama (lit 'hil of rock that is
 erect')

CLIMATE n

weather conditions in an
 area

muklimata-E 3/

CLIMB vt. vi.

1. ascend, go up

see ASCEND

ascend a hill

- a tree like monkey 1.

- tree, with sliding body

up trunk

- spirally, as snake,

creeper

2.- down, descend - see

cause to descend, as from

roof, tree

3. - go slowly up, rise up

as sun

-dhina

-dhina dindúndu

-nyákwera

(2. hold 1; 3. swear)

-hunya

kukudhíngerera 66-7,13

-shuruka 3-4b

-shurutha 5-2b

syn. -dhina ndani kushuruka

-kámbeke kodiýúwa

N.B. also, of aeroplane

CLIMBER n

one who climbs

mudhíni 1/2

CLING vi

1. stick to adhere to, as

wet garments

stick fast to, cleave to

person, see CLEAVE

embrace

2. remain faithful to

friend, cleave

-kákateritha 4-2b

His wet garments clung to him = yishupatayendi
yo kuyura yi kakaterithire papendi

-kákatera

As children - to mother; see also Ruth 1; 14.

-ngcámura nonyára

-hora

" You have clung to your mother-in-law since your
husband's death (Ruth 2; 11) = wa horire
kwangumwenyoye kushwagha yifa yamundambooye "

CLINK n

sharp, ringing sound of

coins on table

- of glasses

excl. ndjere !

vi. -ngcerenganya

13-18

CLIP vt (1)

shear a sheep, cut with

sheers

cut person's hair with

scissors

clip wings of bird, esp.

chicken

téta ghuhúki -

-ghoñdjwi

-kúrura ghuhúki

ghomúnu

-húya

CLIP (2)vt

grip eg. papers tightly

together

- kwatitha pofótji

4-2b

CLOAK n

loose upper garment worn out

of doors.

see KAROSS

ngúgho

10/6(10)

. w.vv put on cloak around shoulders

throw off a cloak

-kwíndeka 3-8

-yévura 8

CLOCK n

time-piece

1. víri (2.hour) 10/6(10)

CLOD n

lump of earth

disintegrate, as -

of earth

digínya 5/6

(small - kagínya, 12/13)

-gōnyaghoka 15/3-11

CLOG vt.

hinder progress, e.g. by
mud sticking to wheels -kákatera

This mud is clogging the wheels of the lorry =
murove ghu kukakatera ghuna kukakatera makosho
ghothihauto (they do not revolve well = mbadi
ghana kumbirumukanga thiwana)

CLOSE (1)

- a. adv. 1. shut; - up confined -yándherera
66-15
- stifling, of air 2. -húkukukera
(1, repeat)
6-10, 5c
- concealed (id. Mbukushu)
(lit. 'a secret near
to those who guard
him well)
- prep. 2. near; - to others pépi no
id. at - quarters; pépi
in immediate contact
id. in - contact, -gumata pépi
communication
- by, near to
- id. - resemblance, pépi thikúma
look similar
id. - attention, mashóngomemo
listening hard pépi

He is being kept a close prisoner = kuyandherera
hana kumuyandherera mushi dhokashitiko.

The air is very close in this room = muñu ghuna
hukahukera mungonda dhi

The President's whereabouts are being kept a close
secret = dyango dyo kupi Mutungi ghana kara dyo
ghudhindo pépi no kaka kukunga thikuma

Sit close to me = hungumane pépi nange
They are fighting at close quarters = kurwa hana
kurwa pépi waheya.

I am in close contact with him = kugumata nina
kugumata pépi nendi.

The house is close by the road = ndhugho dhi
ne pépi nondhirá

You bear close resemblance to the thief =
ghuna pirura mwidhi pépi thikuma.

They listened with close attention = ha
tereere nomashongomemo pépi

CLOSE (2) vt. vi.

1. shut book box, door, lid
kraal -yándhera
shut eyes -féréra mého
" hand upon an -fúngatera
object to imprison it
" teeth, as -kukushera
crocodile ngáyegho 7
" mouth kukumúma muromo 7
" plug, up hole -túthera
become closed, of a
path, sore

Shut completely, firmly, of African door
-páteka 3-4a
see SHUT

Close this hole to stop snakes entering the
house = tuthere dikwina di dyonoka sho
ghengene mundhugho
- thitombo

fig. - business, conclude, 7
complete -manitha dimbwámbwa
4-2b
-one's remarks, stop
speaking kwímeke -ghámbe

CLOSE (2) vt. vi.

- near: to be - near
together -kára pofótji
come-, near
together kukuháta pofótji
7
-kúndama (3)
- in, come nearer, close
together -hényena 9-5b

see BY, 1, 2, NEAR

They came close to the hut = ha hatire kundhugho
(see APPROACH)

They came close to the man to look at what he
held = ha kundamire kwamukafumu ko kukenga
ghothi gha kwatire munyara.

Please close in so that I can see you all when I
speak to you = pofamutja mu henyene wangu na
kone kumumona mwaheya ghopa shoni ghambe nonu.

- CLOSE (cont)
- around, surround -dhínga The people closed around the thief = haguva
ha dhingire mwidhi
- CLOSET n
inner chamber, private
place, as in Math.6; 6. thighōmbi 7/8
- CLOT n
- of blood, lump of
solidified blood dirōdhi dyo
manyínga 5/6
- CLOTH n
woven fabric, material dikéhe 5/6 Piece of - thipíndhi 7/8
unroll - to measure length -yándhumuna syn. -ghonyōna dikehe
(2,3 stretch)
roll up roll of - (Sets -púta)
2. péta. dikehe
(1. bend)
measure - -yedhekeritha 4-2b
cut - with shears -teta dikéhe see HOLE
weave - -rúka
- CLOTHE vt
put clothes on a person -
over head -shúpeka 3-4a see DRESS
put clothes on oneself -
over head kukushúpeka
3-7, 4a
pull clothes up over legs -
on another -váteka 3-4a
pull clothes up over legs -
on oneself kukuváteka 13- 7, 4a
- CLOTHES n
clothes put on over head -yishúpata /8 also 2. yitēre = of clothes in general
(1. goods, belongings) /8
- CLOTHING n
clothes pulled up over
legs -yiváta /8 see DRESS
- CLOTHES
a suit of - yishúpata yo rudhi
rofótji /8 suit of man's clothes (E, SWA) shúta, la (9)/6(9)
- of wild beast's skin,
fur thikukúmba tho
yishereka 7/
finery of Hambukushu
women makéhe /6
best - Sunday - (machine
made) mahína- E /6
to put on clothes -shupéka 3-4a
see CLOTHE above
to take off clothes -shúpura 8
to change one's clothes -shúpata yishúpata
yáyoneyo; or -váta yiváta yáyonaýo
to give new clothes to
initiates to puberty -váteka 3-4a
to show off new - -yēma ghedha The boy showed off his new clothes to his friends =
15/5-2a mungaghu nga yemagheda yitere yendi yoyipya
kwahayendhendi
to hang loosely, of -
on a person -shōkeshá

CLOTHES (cont)

- to hang wet - up to dry -yáneka
 to rend, tear one's - as
 a sign of mourning -djādjurura see REND
 - brush thikukumuniho tho
 yishupata 7/8
 - line, for hanging wet -
 to dry mughōdhi gho
 -yáneka 3/10(4) -yishupata
 - peg, to clip clothes
 to line thikwatitho
 tho yishupata 7/8 -tho -kwátitha mughōdhi

CLOUD n

- mass of condensed water
 vapour floating high above
 ground dívúyi 5/6
 dark clouds shutting out
 sun fōngoro 10/
 heavy clouds, heavy with
 rain mavúyi gho marému /6
 thick clouds, of smoke mavúyi gho makányu
 yira mwíthi /6
 opening between clouds mayirá /6 (pl. of 'ndhirá = way)
 break up, as clouds -túyaghuka 11 see BREAK 1.
 become overcast, of sky
 with dark clouds -kápwera 23.
 vanish, of clouds, from
 sky -kwéndjuruka - komavuyi
 rise up, of clouds of
 smoke -thímutuka 16-22

CLUB (1) n

1. stick with one thick and
 and as a weapon murāmu 3/10 (4)
 knobkerrie - S. African mbúro 10/6 (10)
 short stick, knobbed head thipūmuritho
 staff for beating sandals tho makúha 7/8
 - foot, mishapen from birth dipādhi dyo diréma
 5/6
 2. association of people
 with common interest makuwāneno /6

CLUB (2) vt. vi

1. beat with - -pūmura nomurāmu
 2. - together, combine
 for action -nūnga pofótji Everyone clubbed together to haul in the net =
 keheyu gho ha' nungire pofotji mu kudhinga
 dikwe

CLUCK vi

- cackle of hen after laying -kēka (ghomutēnde)

CLUMP n

- cluster of trees in swamps dipūta 5/6 see CLUSTER, THICKET (hom. dipūta = forest)
 cluster of trees near
 river, in 'bush' dígcú 5/6 syn. cō, 10/6(10)

CLUMSY a

- awkward in movement
 see AWKWARD ghūyi

CLUSTER n

- group of similar things,
 esp. things that grow;
 trees...see CLUMP above

CLUSTER (cont)

bunch of flowers, see BUNCH
 bunch of fruit thitoko tho maghumi 7/8
 group of people kashumba ka waguva 12/13
 - of stars nungwedhi dhodhingi /10

CLUTCH vt. vi.

1. seize eagerly, grasp tightly -kwaterera 66-14 A drowning man will clutch at a straw = muka kurovera hanyi gha kwatere mbu
 - with both hands, rail of moving lorry -kwaterera 66-14
 - horizontal bar pulling oneself up kukuyendha 7 see GRASP, SEIZE, HOLD
 - tightly, with feet, of chameleon -nyamatera 6-5c The boy clutched the bag and ran. = mungaghu gha tjomborire ndjato dho dha tjirire.
 2. snatch at - see SNATCH -tjombora

COAL n

see CHARCOAL dikara 5/6

COARSE a.

1. rough, as texture of cloth mafarakaka
 2. impolite, ill-mannered kupira thikuto
 3. swearing, using bad language 2. -nyakwera (1.climb)

COAST n

sea-shore ndundu / 10

COAT n

man's cloth garment with sleeves over body baki la(9)/6(9)
 - covering of paint thirambitho tho thirombo 7

COAX vt.

1. persuade person to do, agree roghithera 4/6-5a His wife has coaxed him into agreeing to the marriage = munduwendi nga mu roghithera mu kutawa nowenga
 persuade person into a good temper roghithera 4/6-5a She coaxed him into a good temper = nga mu roghithera mungundu dhodhiwa
 animal to do what one wants ghombapitha 4-2b

COB n

part of ear of corn to which grain is attached; mealie - thishati 7/8 tho nona dho mundhere; millet - mbuyaya dhonona
 to fall away, off red dho mahangu /10; thikope tho nona dho tumbi 7/8
 covering of millet - to reveal seeds kukukumuka mungu corn cob.

COBBLER n

one who mends shoes muruki gho makuha 1/2

COBRA n

poisonous, hooded snake dihuiko 5/6
 spitting - or ringhuls, thitughotugho 7/8
 eats eggs

COWEB n

spider's network dyondhe dyo diwiwi 5/6

- COCK n
male domestic fowl
cockcrow, ngondovōro 10/6(10)comb, red crest of - mukerengéngé 3/
makyathiku /6; syn. spur, hard projection on cock's leg
murūghura 3/ dinyānyo 5/6
- COCK (2) vt.
-a gun, prepare - for firing -ncērikedha ghūta
5-2a
- COFFEE n
drink made by roasting,
grinding seeds of shrub to roast - kóshiva 15a/
1. -kanga kóshiva (2. conquer)
- COFFIN n
long, wooden chest in which
corpse is buried thikéssha 7/8 tho mwimba
- COIL vt. vi (1)
wind rope spirally into
rings -dhínga 8
- of snake, - on itself kukudhíngera ant. -dhíngununa (uncoil) 8/15
6-7,5a
- of, python, - tight
round prey kwōnda
- COIL (2) n
- of rope thidhínga tho
mughōdhi 7
- COIN n
piece of money dinyínga 5/6
- COLD (1) a
of low temperature ghutēnda The cold is bitter = ghutenda na ghururu
very -, of water, almost
frozen tjáka To be very - frozen =-rēnga kací, e.g. of leaves
on trees.
frosty mépo
- water méyu gho matēnda
to be so - that hands
cannot hold things -ghāra kukúfu - in death e.g. the body is now cold = thitutu
ne thitenda dyaro
to get - while sleeping yuyúghera (seeSHIVER) become cold = tēndapa 1(16)
shiyer with = tútuma mepo
cold-blooded, of fish,
snakes gho manyínga gho
matēnda
- COLD n
- in the head, influenza dihōkima 5/
mucus running from nose dyongo (irr. pl. Yongo)
5/7 The nose runs = dyongo dina kuhoya
- COLLAPSE vi
fall in, of house kúwa or
mbándukera (see. n.) The house has collapsed = ndhugho nga dhi wu
break down, of person,
in health tjínaghuka He has had a nervous collapse = maruthipa
see BREAK down, cp. 15/3-11 gheridi nga tjínaghuka
break up ghúndhununa N.B. this can apply to a house or a person
n. falling in, of house thíwa 7 2. thimbándukera (1. come in numbers)
- COLLAR n
linen band round neck of
coat, dress etc. thíngo tho hēmbi 7/8
- bone digáwa 5/6

- COLLEAGUE n
fellow-worker
(fellow-tribesmen) muyéndha mukurughana 1/2
múpa syn.
múka díko
- COLLECT vt.
1. assemble, bring together people -kóngwetha 5-2a see ASSEMBLE
vi. assemble together, of people kúkukonga 7 Assemble together of village council to hear complaint of one person against another - póngodhora(20)
- assemble together, of people in one place -póna The people are collected in one place =haguva hana kúpona padyango dyofotji
2. -get taxes from people -téritha mutéro 4-2b (kukétetha - Sets.)
3. -things, e.g. rubbish into heap -kóngwetha - 5-2a - yitjóro dirambo see GATHER
-and cut vegetables -tema rwíthi
-different things together at one time -kóngwetha 5-2a -yinu yoyiputura muruvédhe rofotji
-at different times -kóngwetha páya
-firewood nopaya 5-2a
-small firewood nearby kútja yikúnyi
to start fire -kóghaghura twaghára 15/6-11
fig.4. one's thoughts, concentrate -yedhekera thikúma (lit. 'consider carefully') see CONCENTRATE
-oneself, regain self-control -shímbera 6-5a I startled him but he collected himself instantly
kukuraghura 7 = na mu yumbukire keho gha ka shimberire kukuraghura kendi wanguwangu.
- COLLECTION n.
-gathering together of people-things thikóngwetha 9/8 church - yitápa yo nkírishe (koreke-Sets.) /8
- COLLECTOR n
one who collects mukóngwethi 1/2
tax - múka kutéritha 1/2
- COLLIDE vi
come into collision kukugúnda 7 (Bump against each other) - see BUMP
- of two vehicles kwandura
- COLLISION n
violent bumping of two persons, objects. makugundero /6 i.e. against each other - see SHOCK (1)
- COLON n
punctuation mark dividing two related sentences tuthárawadi /13 MT (colon made so :)
- COLOUR n
hue, one of light constituents of spectrum rúdhí 14/6(4)
syn. 2. thirombo (1.paint) What colour is it ? = rudhi munye ? 7/8
a. multi-coloured, many coloured maramara
n. patches of- as giraffe's coat yimáteka /8
w.vv change - as of face -píruka rupára 13
dye - see DYE -pírura
change - of sun, chameleon -thítunuka thirómbó
- COLOURED PEOPLE n.pl
people of mixed race hambásitera /2

- COLT n
young donkey see DONKEY thidongighana 7/8 Young horse - see HORSE mbighana 3
- COMB (1) n
1. toothed strip of horn metal thikashákuritho thohuki N.B. used for arranging the hair 7/8
2. red crest of bird, e.g. cock mukerengéngé 3/ (also used for comb of hoopoe, lourie)
- COMB (2) vt
draw comb through hair kukukámuna 7
- COMBAT n
battle yirwa /8
single - fight between two people yirwa yo hanu hawadi /8
- COMBINE vi
join together, of people -nūnga pofótji
- COME vi
1. start, move towards, or arrive at point, place kwiya N.B. irr. v. pres. perf. nineya; fut. nakwiye; imp. wiye
there came kwa kéyire There came a traveller to the house = kwa keyire muka ruyendo kundhugho
come here! wiye_kuno!
- daily kwiyaंगा 10-9 He will come every day to see you = hanyi gheyange kehe diywa kukoye
- cause to - make animal come to one 2. -kándwera (1. touch, 3. condemn)
- and go, pass to and fro kwiya no kuyenda He comes and goes as he wills = ghaneya gho ghana yende ghopa ghana himi
- for a short time, then go -fúndhuka
- in great numbers 1. -mbándukera (2. fall in)
2. with adv. prepp - back, return -húka - away from, plaster from wall, earth from earth floor -yóndaghoka 15/3-11
- close together, see CLOSE v.2 -hēnyena
- down, e.g. from roof, tree, vehicle -shuruka Come down from the roof = shuruke pamutwi ghondhugho
- down from hills to river-ghurumuka They came down from the hills to the river = ha ghurumukire kushwagha mumandundu ko kukuma kurware
- for - see BUSINESS kwiyaera 6-5a What have you come for? = yinye mu neyera?
- for a certain thing to a person yeghera 6-5b
- from, of the place from which person - -tunda
- from, out of -shwagha She came out of the house = gha shwaghire mundhugho
- forward, when asked kwiya paghútho
- in, enter kwiingena
- of grass from roof -vinyutuka
- off, of a handle -kúka
- out from up from river -kanduka
- out of water of river -túpuruka -
- out of hole, of marking pole -dhūruka (r. dhūra) 3-4b - ant. -hwera (= go into the water)
- out, perspire, of sweat see PERSPIRE, SWEAT -hūpa kódiyūya The sweat came out on his forehead as he worked. = diyuywa dina mo hupa parupararwendi ghopa gha rughanine

COME (cont)

- out, as sores	-shwāgha, yira yitombo	Sores have come out all over his body = yitombo nga yi shwagha yarayara peghuru dhoyiyama yendi yoyiheya
- together, arrive together	-kúma kofótji	They came here together at the same time = ha kumine kuno kofotji muruvédhe rofotji
- together, of travellers	kukuwāna	
- together, of husband and wife	OC 7 kukuhútha OC 7	They had separated but now they have come together again = ha ku yakunukire, keho nga ha kuhutha karo
- to, arrive (see-together, above)	-kúma	Have we come to the right place ? = a nga tu kumu kudyango dyodiwandi ?
- towards onlooker, to have an effect upon him	-twíma	This may be used of persons or things. e.g. approaching rain.
- upon unexpectedly	-hókoka no kudhira kudímuka	The storekeeper came upon the thief unexpectedly = mughurithi ghothitora nga hokoka pamwidhi no kudhira kudimuka.
- upon (animals) unexpectedly after long search	túrukera	
3. fig. and id. - across = meet with	-hángana no	I came across him in Maun = na ku hanganine nendi mu Maun.
- along! = make haste!	-tambúke!	
- away from there!	-shwāghe kokúya!	
- back to mind, remember	-vúruka or -gháyara (lit. 'think')	
- before judge	kwiya paghútho dhamupanguri	The case will come before the judge = theko fiányi tha kwiye paghutho dhamupanguri
- in useful (lit. 'work well')	-rughána thiwána	This tool will come in useful = thirughanitho thi fiányi tha kurughane thiwana
- into sight	-mōnena 9-5c	At last the village came into sight = pa ghuhura dighumbo dina monena.
- out, go on strike (lit. 'come out, refusing to continue work')	-shwāgha -shwēna -hēnya kurughana	The workmen have come out on strike = harughani nga ha shwagha kushwena hana kushwena kuhenya kurughana
- short, fail	-tághera	You must not come short of producing the same number of bricks = mbadi mwa roghera kutaghera kutenda paro pofotji dhoyitina
vi. - short of doing a thing well	-thóringa	Their building of that house comes short of their best work = kughumba kwawo kondhugho thiya kwa thoringire ghufupi ghoyirughana yawo yoyiwa thikuma
- to after fainting, revive	-túmuka	She fainted but she is now come to = gha reremenine keho kutumuka ghana kutumuka keho
- to recover from fit	-túmuka (-pōra = 'get well')	
- to right mind, after fit of madness	-húkera 6-5a mumaghano gho mawa kwiya kutáwa	He has now come into his right mind = nga hukera keho mumaghanoghe ndi ghomawa
- to believe	kwiya kutáwa	I have come to believe that he is innocent = nineya kutawa eshi gha pira murandu
- to light, be revealed	-hókoka	Some new facts about the case have come to light = yinu yimwe yoyipya yo patheko nga yi hokoka
- to one's knowledge, to know	kwiya -dímuka	It has come to my knowledge that he did go = nineya kudimuka eshi ghana piti.
- to pass, happen	-kára po	'Let us go and see this thing which has come to pass' (Luke 2;15) = tu yende tu ka mone yinu gho yi ya karire po
- to hand, be delivered, of letter	-támbara (lit. 'receive')	Your letter has just come to hand = mbapira dhoje nga ni dhi tambura vene

COME (cont)

- what may = whatever happens

ngambi kémo thi
thakáre

Come what may, I will be there = ngambi kehe
thi tha karere ñanyi na kukare po

- right, e.g. of figures

-kára wúwa

I wish these figures would come right = nina
himi eshi yivarero yi ñanyi yi kare yiwa

- to an end, cease - see

CEASE

kúpwa

- to blows, fight with
fists

kúrwa nomakōnye

- to harm, be injured see

HARM

-rēmēna 9-5a

- to power

kwiya mathiraghura

A new Government has come to power = furumende
ghomugya gheyire mathiraghura.

- to a point, taper

-tjengura

The sticks for the house top must come to a
point = tutondo tomutwi ghondhugho twa
rogghera kutjengura kughuhura

kughuhura

- upon suddenly

kwiya pa

He came suddenly upon a drum when walking in the
bush = gheyire pangoma, no kudhira kudimuka,
ghopa gha yendire pamuwe mumuthitu.

- upon, e.g. herd of
buffaloes

-shwāghera dyānda
dyonyatji 6-5b

COMFORT n

- 1. consolation in trouble

see CONSOLATION

consolation of a
mourner

makótameno /6

mahéngawero /6

"She would not be comforted because they were
not" (Math. 2; 18) "ghana shwena mahengawero
yoyishi hana pu keho".

- 2. being comfortable,
(lit. 'living well')

-kára thiwána

COMFORT (2) vt.

- 1. console

kotamena 9-5b

console a mourner

héngaghura 15/6-11

console a fretful child

-tjighunitha 4-2b

- 2. make comfortable

-kárittha thiwána 4-2b

see CALM (3)

COMFORTABLE a

- 1. - life having comforts
to live well

moyo ghowúwa thiwána

- to sit on, of chair

vatjama 6-3

COMFORTER n

- 1. one who comforts

mukotameni 1/2

one who comforts a

a mourner

muhéngaghuri 1/2

- 2. of Holy Spirit = the

Encourager

muthíneneki 1/

of Holy Spirit = the

Strengthener

mutánarithi 1/

COMMA

punctuation mark - MT ,

kémaneno

(N.B. this separates parts of a sentence) syn.
kóma (3) la(9)/6(9)

inverted " " MT

la(9)/6(9)
yidimukitho yo
matémweneno /8

(N.B. these open and close quotations.)

COMMAND vt vi (1)

- 1. order, bid, of God -
absolute -

-rawera

Let us do as God commands = tu tende shika
nyambi ghana kurawera.

order, bid, of others in
authority

6-5b
-raghura (r.message)
6-21

Do as you are commanded = tenda yira mu ghana
kuraghura

- 2. have authority, control
over

-kára novēta

see CONTROL, ORDER (in reference to work)
-raghura 6-21

COMMAND (cont)		
be in -	-rāghura 6-21	He is in command while the chief is away = kuraghura ghana kuraghura ghoku fumu ne ghana piti.
be in - of oneself	kukurāghura thinda /7	
COMMAND (2) n		
order	thirāghura 7/8 syn.2.vēta (1. law, rule) 10/6(10)	
COMMANDER n		
one who commands	murāghuri 1/2	
COMMANDEER vt.		
seize stores under emergency powers	-kwāta novēta	In time of war, famine, national distress
COMMANDMENT n		
- of God	vēta 10/6(10) thiraghura, 7/8	The Ten Commandments = Veta Dikumi, <u>or</u> Yiraghura Dikumi
to break a - (lit. id. 'jump')	-régha vēta	
to carry out -	-tēnda vēta	
to keep, observe a -	-nōmena vēta	
to obey a - = hear	-yūva vēta	
COMMEMORATE vt		
keep in memory by celebration	-vūrukitha 4-2b	To-day we commemorate the granting of independence to this country = dyarero dina vurukitha haguva kutapera ghothikuraghura thoditunga di
COMMEMORATION n		
celebration in remembrance	thivūrukitho 7/8	
COMMENCE vt. vi.		
begin to do	-vāreka -tēnda	
COMMENCEMENT n		
beginning	mavārekero /8	(matātekero, 6)
COMMEND vt.		
1. entrust for safe keeping- soul to God	3. kukūndeka OC-7 (1. grumble 2. lean)	" Father into thy hands I commend my spirit" =" Tate, munyaradhoye na ku kundeka mudhimuwange"
entrust thing to another's care	-tāpera 6-5a	see ENTRUST
2. praise - see PRAISE	-kūgha	-highly 1. -tānura (2. be mighty; 3. explain)
3. greet another in one's name	-rumēritha 4-2b	
4. - person for work being done	-bōka	Commend me to Pithatho = ni rumerithere Pithatho
COMMENT (1) n.		
1. explanation to make meaning clear	thiyūvithitha 7/8	
2. considered opinion	thiyēdhēkera 7/8	
COMMENT (2) vi		
(see n. above) 1.	-yuvithitha 14.	
2.	yēdhēkera	
COMMERCE n		
exchange goods for sale	-tāpera yitēre yo -ghūritha	see EXCHANGE

COMMISSION n.

1. command instruction -vēta 10/6(10)
thiraghera 7/8
2. body of people with power to act dikónga 5/6

The President has appointed a commission to redress the people's grievance = Mutungi nga hurura dikonga kururamitha yitokota yawaguva.

COMMISSIONER n.

- District - government representative in district murāghuri 1/2
High - , representative of government in another land murāghuri

(Sets. molaodi; SWA - komisare - from 'commissar')
gho mukúru, 1/

COMMIT vt.

1. entrust to another's care. see COMMENT 1. kukūndeka 7
2. - body to ground for burial kukūndeka 7
3. - to prison of a judge's order (lit. 'cause to send') -túmitha 2b
4. - a crime (lit. 'do wrong') -tenda ghúyi
5. - a sin (lit. 'sin a sin') -hārura diharwero
6. - bind oneself to do -rōghera -mōna

-tápera, 8
"We commit his body to the ground" (Burial Service) = "Tuna kukundeka ditutu dyendi mumuve"

The judge committed the thief to prison = mupanguri gha tumithire mwidhi kukashitiko

or - régha vēta (lit. 'to break the law')

He has committed the sin of blasphemy = nga harura diharwero dyomatuka
I am committed to seeing this thing through = na roghera kumona eshi thitenda thi thapwa

COMMITTEE n

- body of people appointed for definite purpose dikónga 5/6
village development - dikónga dyo
- member -yēnditha
muka dikónga
(mukamiti- , 1)
1/2

(komíti, 12 - E)
-dighumbo kughútho

COMMON a

belonging to, done by most or many people

1. by - consent, with agreement of all noyitáwa yo kehéyu
2. - experience, ordinary happening thínu thothi kára -kehe páno
3. - people, ordinary folk hagúva 2
4. - law, unwritten law of custom, usual practice mukingo 3/10(4)
long-established custom mukingo ghokare kare 3/10(4)
5. - land, land belonging to all ditúnga dyo kehéno
5/6

COMMONLY adv.

- usually kehépa

It is commonly believed = ha thi tawa kehépa

COMMOTION n.

1. disturbance, tumult rupétho
11/6(11)

There is a commotion going on in that village = (see TUMULT) kwa kara norupetho ro rwa karanga mudighumbo diya.

COMMOTION (cont)

2. insurrection see
INSURRECTION

yishátana yo
ghungüre /8

COMMUNE vi

1. talk intimately, alone
with another
talk privately with
ancestors

kukughāmba pitháwo 7

-ghāmba pithendi
nawadhimu

- with ones own spirit
heart

-ghamba no mutjima

"Commune with your own heart, and in your
chamber, and be still" (Psalm 4: 4)
= ghambe nomutjimaghoye ghothinda,
nomuthighombi thoye, no thipore"

- receive Holy Communion

-tāmbura
makúwaneno

gho kupongoka

COMMUNICANT n

- one who receives Holy
Communion

muka kutāmbura 1/2

Makuwaneno ghokupongoka

COMMUNICATE vt. vi.

1. impart news

thimwetekedha
mbúdhí 5-2a

2. speak with another

-ghamba noghumwéya -

3. receive Holy Communion

-tāmbura makúwaneno- ghokupongoka

COMMUNICATION n

1. imparting of news

yithimwetekedha yo mbúdhí
/8

- giving of information

thitápera dho thitóngora
-7/8

- speaking together

kukughāmba pofotji

2. connection between
places

thinūngékera 7/8

COMMUNION n

1. participation see

PARTICIPATE

- fellowship - see

FELLOWSHIP

2. Holy - or the Lord's
Supper

makupákerero /6

makúwaneno gho
kupóngoka /6

COMMUNITY n

1. organised body of people

makúwaneno /6

2. people living in same
district

hagúva ho mukúnda /2

3. natural - eg. tribe

díko 5/6

COMPACT (1) n

- agreement between person,
groups

thikwátathana 7/8

COMPACT (2) a

- tightly packed together

-pákerera thiwána
9

I have done up your things in a compact parcel =
nga wanga yinu yoye thitungu tho kupakerera
thiwana.

COMPANION n

1. one who goes with,
accompanies another
one who goes with another
to a place mutáti 1/2
 múkakutúra
 1/2
2. associate, see
ASSOCIATE, friend mushere 1/2

He was my companion on the journey = gha
karire mutati wange muruyendo.

see ACCOMPANY

COMPANY n. vt. vi.

1. companionship ghushere 14/
2. bear, keep - with,
see ACCOMPANY
part - with, leave -táta
 -thigha
- keep - associate with -shereka
3. business firm dikóna dya
 -yenditha
 yirughana 5/6
 mbúnga dha
 wamashorondáti
 10/6(10)
4. - of soldiers

He must part company with you at Tsau = gha
roghera kukuthigha muTsau.
"He keeps company with sinners" (Mark 2;16)
= "ghana kusherekanga nawaharuri."

(cp. mupáto gho thirwa = regiment for fighting)

COMPARE vt. vi

1. liken, declare to be
similar, see LIKEN -yēranitha 5-2b
- one thing with another
by considering -yedhekera (mt)
- by putting side by
side -hátitha 4-2b

"To whom then will you compare God" (Is. 40; 18)
= " kwadye keho fiányi mu kuyeranithe Nyambi" ?

If you compare these two poles, you will
see they are alike = ngeshi ghu hatithe yitondo
yi yiwadi, fiányi ghu mone eshi ya ku pitura

COMPARISON n

- comparing - by likening thiyeranitha 7/8
- " - by considering mayedhekeritho /6
- " - by putting side
by side mahátitho /6

COMPARTMENT n

- partitioned division in
railway carriage thikoto 7/8

COMPASS n. (1)

1. pair of -'s, instrument
for drawing circles, (MT) paseri -/10
2. circumference, MT mudhídhí 3/
- area thiko 7/8
3. instrument showing right
direction thineghedho 7/8
- points of - yiko yo ditúnga
 /8

thifunditho 7/8

-tho kurughanitha ndhirá dhodhiwa

COMPASS (2) vt

1. go round see CIRCLE -dhinguruka 16-22
2. hem in, surround see
SURROUND -dhingumwetekedha
 3/5-4a/2a

"My enemies compass me about on every side"
(Psalm 17; 19) " Hañorewange hana ni dhingumwetek-
edha mumitara dho thiheya."

COMPASSION n loving concern of heart that goes out to another	-féra nyeke thikúma	"When he saw him, he had compassion on him" (Luke 10; 33) = "Ghopa gha mu monine gha mu fererire nyeke thikuma"
COMPEL vt. force to do	thíneneka	He compelled his enemy to submit = gha thinnekire ñorewendi ko kutapa.
COMPENSATE vt. make amends, see AMENDS	-húthera 6/5a	
COMPENSATION n making of amends	thihúthera	"You claimed compensation from me for anything stolen" (Gen. 31; 39) = "Wa wanine thihuthera mumwange mu kebe thino ghothi tha pwire kwidha."
COMPETE vi strive with others in doing	kukutángawera 14-7/23	The boys competed with each other to see who could reach home first = hangaghu ha kutang- awerire namweya kumona ghoyu sho gha ka tange ka kudighumbo
COMPETENT a 1. well-fitted to do a job see ABLE 2. legally qualified (lit. 'be right for by law') see ABLE (lit. 'pass examinations')	1. ghundóndoro gho-róghera shika veta -píta yitātuva	see also CAPABLE
COMPETITION n act of competing	thikutāngawero 7/8	
COMPETITOR n one who competes	múka kutāngawera 1/2	
COMPILE n collect materials to in a book	-kóngwetha	He is compiling a dictionary = ku kongwetha ghana ku kongwetha mambapira ghomañando
COMPLAIN vi express dissatisfaction state grievance	-tókota	The men complain about their work = harume hana kutokota mukatji koyirughanayawo. see PRESENT, GRUMBLE, BEGGAR.
COMPLAINING n grumbling	tōkotoko /13	
COMPLAINT n stating of grievance formal accusation see ACCUSE	thitókota 7/8 thithekitha 7/8	see JUDGEMENT - of - ; JUDGE 1 see PLAINT
COMPLETE (1) entire (with all its parts) finished	ghoghuhéya -manitha 4-2b	(no mitara dho dhiheya)

COMPLETE (cont) (2)

1. finish see FINISH, work -māna

He has finished his task = nga mana thirughana thendi

2. perfect, see FINISH 2 -yéránitha
4-2b

He has completed it in every detail = nga thi yeranitha mumutara keheghu.

3. make up the amount of -manena 9- 5c

Complete the time you were absent from work on Saturday = manene ruvedhe gho ru rwa pirire muyirughana mukapeghu.

4. take long time to -
job.

1. pwíririka 16-22

2. drink 2

COMPLETELY adv
entirely

popahéya

COMPLETION n
act of finishing

mamānithero /6

COMPLICATE vt.
make a situation harderkútitha thikúma
4-2b

Your visit complicated matters = thihungerathoye tha kutithire thikuma yinu yo yiheya

COMPLIMENT n (1)

1. polite expression of
praise
2. formal greetingsdifúmaneko 5/6
yimeritha /8

He paid him the compliment of working well = gha mu tapire difumaneko dyo kurughana thiwana

COMPLIMENT vt (2)

pay a -

-fúmaneka 3-4a

He complimented the chief on his daughter's beauty = gha fumanekire fumu gha ningire eshi mwanendi ne muva.

COMPLY vi
do as another wishes,
commands

-tenda (= 'do')

I have complied with your request = nga ni tende gho thi nga ghu ni kumbura eshi ni tende

COMPOSE vt.

1. make up of

-tenda no

Brass is composed of copper and tin = thiyonga tho kutenda noroto no thigapa

2. make up differences in
disputekukutúngitha
4-14
yinu yofanani

Compose your differences and work together = mu kutungithe yinu yofanani dhenu mu rugthane pofotji

COMPOSITION n

act of putting together,
(mt)

manungekero /6

especially gr. - of putting sentences together.

COMPREHEND vt.

1. understand see UNDERSTAND

-yúva; -yúvithitha
66-142. realise, conceive as
real

-tjwāthana

see REALISE

COMPREHENSION n. gr.

realisation of meaning,
mt.

thitjwāthana 7/8

COMPRESS vt.

squeeze together - the
lips
squeeze together
between handskukumuma miyromo 7 see SQUEEZE
kukama pofótji nyāra

- COMPROMISE vi
settle dispute by - each party
kukutápera kwawaheya 6-7, 5a They compromised to settle the dispute. Both agreed that one thing the other was saying was true = ha kutaperire kwawaheya kughatura nanani. Hawadi ha tawire eshi diywi dyofotji ghoyu ghunweya gha ningire eshi di ne shemwa.
- COMPULSION n
act of compelling
thithíneneka 7/
- COMRADE n
fellow - worker
mūrugāni 1/2
- CONCEAL vt.
1. keep secret (from) -dhinda She concealed the man's visit from her father = gha dhindire thihungera thamurume kwawihe.
2. hide - an object -horeka He hid the money in the ground = gha horekire manyinga mumuve.
hide - oneself kunda "They hid themselves among the trees" (Gen3;8)
"ho hondire mukatji ko yitondo"
- CONCEIT n
empty pride, vanity
dishanga dyonyaranyara 5/ Because he has killed one lion, he is full of conceit - yoyishi nga pagha nyime yofotji ghana yara dishanga dyanyaranyara.
see PRIDE
- CONCEIVE vt. vi
1. become pregnant, of woman -rēma
become pregnant, of animal 1. -djura (2. drip)
2. form picture in mind, imagine -gháyara (lit. 'think') kughayara ghoyi ya rogherire kukara. I can conceive what must have happened = na kona
- CONCEIVABLE n
It is - = 'it is possible' kádi kuna kángera It is conceivable that he went to the wrong village = nina ghayara eshi pamwe gha yendire kudighumbo dyodiya
It is - = 'I think perhaps' nina gháyara eshi pamwe
- CONCENTRATE vi
give all one's attention to -shōngomēna pópahe He concentrated all his attention on what he was doing = gha shongomenine popahe mu ghoyi gha rughanine.
think hard -dheghetera
- CONCEPTION n
1. becoming pregnant, of a woman ghurému 14/
2. think conceived, idea thigháyara, 7/8 syn. dighano, 5/6
- CONCERN vt. (1)
relate to -háta "All the Scriptures concerning himself" (Luko 24; 27) = "yitjanga yoyihe yo kudhirera gho yi ya hata kukwendi"
to have to do with -tēnda How does this concern you? = ngepi thina kutendi thinu thoye?
2. interest oneself in -gháyara thinda The chief was concerned with the matter = fumu gha ghayarire thinda nothitenda.
be concerned = 'take part in' -nūngékera 3/6- ha, 5a The whole family are concerned with the discussion of your marriage = haka dirapa dyoye ghawaheya kuna kunungékera muyiyekuyoye.
(r-nūnga = 'join')

phrr. I am not concerned mbādi thitēnda thānge This means 'it is not my business'
that which concerns him dīm̄bāmbwa dyēndi (lit. 'his affair, business')

see ANXIOUS 1

I am concerned that he has received bad news =
na ngendapitha eshi nga turukera mbudhi
dhodhiyi

mbadiko dho
kutenda
thine mbadi dhange
thighayara 7/8
mathirerekedho 1/6
-thingendapitha 7/8
yirughana 8;
dimbwambwa 5/6

I have no concern with this matter = ghome
mbadiko dho kutenda mothitenda thi

4. concerns - business

see BUSINESS

mū

" Concerning spiritual things" (Rom. 12; 1)
= " Mu yinu yomuñu."

shiya kukutowaritha (lit. 'making music to entertain.')

see AFFRCVAL 1

see APPEASE 1

-manitha 4-2b

He concluded by saying = gha manithire no kuninga
eshi

thiyá ne thihúra

That concludes our business = thiya ne thihura
thoyitenda yetu.

-ghátura nānani

They concluded their dispute as friends =
ha ghaturire nanani yirawashere

mamanithero 4/6

in - paghura (when speaking)

thihúra 7/8

At the end of their discussion = pañarodhawo id.

0111101 2 17 5

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

(10)

19

thitáwa 7/8

see AGREEMENT - peace and concord = thiraro nothitawa
adjectival - mt. thinungitho tho fandeshingononi 7/8

turaphútho 7/8

possessival - MT " the payimuna 7/8

thinungitho tho

verbal - mudjumo 3/10(4)

nyetji 1a/2

CONCUR vi.

1. happen at same time - -kára muruvédhe
rofótji His arrival concurred with your departure =
kukuma kwendi kwa karire muruvédhe rofotji
yira kuyenda koye
2. agree in opinion -táwa noyi_gháyara I concur with your opinion = nina tawa
noyighayarayoye

CONCUSSION n

- brain injury from heavy
blow vt. -remeka ko ghurwi He is suffering from concussion = kukorwa ghana
thipumuriitho thothiremu ghothi nga
tha remeka ghurwiwendi

CONDEMN vt.

1. censure, blame -ghambera 6-5b SEE BLAME, CENSURE
2. give judgment against -pángura The judge condemned him as guilty = mupanguri
gha pangurire yira kunegha murandu.
3. bring about conviction -neghedha -kára
nomurádu 5-2a The expression on his face condemned him = thikenga
tho murupara rwendi tha mu neghedhire kukara
nomurandu
(lit. 'show to have the
guilt')
4. - to death -pangwera yifa
- 5 - as unfit for use syn.3 -kandwera kuyifa 14/23 (1. touch, 2. cause to come)
-pangwera 14-23 The health inspector condemned the mealies as
unfit to eat = mutatuvi ghoyidya gha pangwerire
mundere eshi kadi wa kwiya.

CONDEMNATION n

1. blame, censure thighambera 7/8
2. adverse judgments thipangura 7/8
3. - to death thipangwera thoyifa;
thikandwera thokuyifa 7/8

CONDESCEND vi.

- (stoop to do) -ghombateritha 4-2b The President himself has condescended to help
them = Mutungi ghithinda nga ghombateritha
kuwayaka.

CONDITION n.

1. idea of stipulation, ngo
phr 'on-that' = if I will go on condition that you come too =
ñanyi nakwiye ngo ñanyi wa kwiye karo

npl.2. circumstances, which
SEE

- shika yinu yiya
kárapo Under the present conditions the work will take
(lit. 'as these longer = shika yinu yiya kare po, yirughana
things are so') ñanyi yi shimbe ruvedhe rorure kupwa

3. in good, bad -, as to
the state of things -kúma thiwána
=(lit. 'arrive supplies for the store arrived in good condition =
well') yitere yothitora ya kumine thiwana

CONDOLE vi

- express sympathy with-see
SYMPATHISE -fëra nyeke They condoled with her on her husband's death
= ha mu ferire nyeke muyifa yamundambowandi

CONDONE vt.

1. overlook an offence -kwátera 6-5a Her husband condoned her infidelity, as it was
her first offence = mundambowendi gha yi mu
kwaterire moruhondarwendi, yoyishi wa karire
muranduwendi ghomutango
2. atone for an offence see
ATONE -húthera 6-5a Her deep contrition condoned for him what she
had done = nayuwero ghendi ghoghukuru ghotjitju
gha hutherire mamehoghendi ghoyi gha tendire.

- CONDUCT (1) n.
 1. way of doing business mayenditherero /8
 2. behaviour yikára /8
 see BEHAVIOUR
- CONDUCT (2) vt. vi.
 1. guide, lead to -shimba He will conduct you to the chief = ñanyi gha kukushimbe kwafumu.
 see GUIDE, LEAD
 2. manage a business -yenditha 4-2b He conducts the business of the store = gha yenditha yirughana yothitora.
 3. - oneself, behave well kukukúteka 7 He conducted himself sensibly at the meeting = gha kukutekire thinda noghunyananyi mumakonganano.
- CONDUCTOR n.
 1. one who guides person to -múka kushimba 1/2
 2. manager of a business muyendithi 1/2
- CONFEDERACY n.
 league, alliance, see
 ALLIANCE thikuyúya 7/8
- CONFER vt. vi.
 1. grant, bestow -tápera 6-5a He conferred his daughter in marriage upon Disho = gha taperire mwanendi gha mu yekithire kwa Disho.
 2. take counsel with, consult -kára nothikúpi The chief confers with the elders = fumu gha karire nothikupi nahakuru.
- CONFERENCE n.
 consultation thikúpi 7/8
- CONFESS vt.
 1. acknowledge. (lit. 'cause to come out') -shwághitha 4-2b I confess my fault = nina shwaghitha muranduwange
 2. formally declare sins kukutongora 7 When things go wrong, the people confess their sins against each other = pa kuyenda yinu ghuyi, haguva ha kutongora maharwero ghawo kwawamweya.
- CONFESSION n.
 1. acknowledgment of sin thishwághitha tho dihárwero 7/8
 2. declaration, telling out of sin yikukutongora yo /8 -mahárwero
 3. - of faith, belief in creed etc. matongwero gho /6 -matáwero
- CONFIDE vt. vi.
 1. place trust in kukukánya 7 He confided in his friend = gha kukanyire mumusherewendi.
 2. communicate secret to; share with - -tápera 6-9,5a He confided a secret to his friend = gha taperire ghudhindo no musherewendi
 3. entrust object of care, task He confided to him the care of his child = gha tapire thikungi thomwanendi kukwendi
- CONFIDENCE n.
 1. firm trust thikukánya 7/
 2. assured expectation thikéngerera thoshómwa 7/8 I have every confidence in your success = na kara no thikengerera.

CONFIDENCE (cont)

3. boldness ghupáta 14
 4. in one's - mu_thikukánya
 to tell in - -tongwera ghudhindo^{i.e. of a person with whom secrets are shared.}
 14-23 (lit. 'to tell a secret to')

CONFIDENTIAL a
 that which is secret,

ghoyĩ ne ghuphindo

CONFINE vt. vi.

1. keep within limits
 (lit. 'shut within')

-yándherera 66-14 She confines her small children within her yard
 = gha yándnererire hanuke wendi mushi dhodirapa dyendi

imprison

-yándherera
 mukashitiko 66-14

2. having to lie in bed,
 being ill
 having to lie in bed,
 because pregnant

-shóngeka He is confined to bed = gha roghera kushongeka

-shámuruka She is confined = kushamuruka ghana kushamuruka

CONFINEMENT n

1. imprisonment
 in solitary -

mayándherero /6
 muthiyándherero
 tho pithendi
 mashámurukero /6

2. - of pregnant woman

CONFIRM vt

1. make firm, establish

-tánaritha 4-2b " I will confirm the throne of thy kingdom"
 (1 Kings 9-5) = " Nanyi na kutanaritha thipuna
 thoghufumu ghoye

2. - an agreement; i.e.
 put in writing and sign

-shémwapitha 4-2b They confirmed the agreement with their
 signatures = ha shemwapithire thikwatathamathawo
 ha thi tjangithire ko kutjanga menaghawo
 nomenwedhawo

ratify, sanction

3. - agree that statement
 is true
 see CORROBORATE

-shémwapitha 4-2b He confirmed the woman's testimony = gha
 shemwapithire eshi ghunongonokodhi dhamukadhi
 eshi dhoshemwa.

4. - baptized Christians
 (lit. 'make strong')

-ngécámupitha
 1/4-17,2b

CONFIRMATION n

1. establishment
 2. ratification,
 corroboration
 3. - of baptized Christian
 rite

thitánaritha 7
 thishémwapitha 7
 veta dho thingécámupitha
 10

CONFISCATE vt.

1. take possession of
 illicit goods cp.
 APPROPRIATE:

-kwátera 6-5a

or seize by authority

The Government confiscates the corpses of animals
 shot without licence = Furumende ghana kwatera
 marambo ghoyiyama ya wa kondhire gho
 kupira mbapira dho kushanitha

CONFLICT n

1. fight, struggle,
 see FIGHT
 2. collision - see
 COLLISION
 3. clash of opposed
 principles

thirwa 7/8 syn.
 yita/8
 makugúndero /8
 ñanani 10/6(10)

CONFLICT vi

1. struggle with see STRUGGLE
2. collide
3. clash in opinion

-rwēra 6-5a
-gunda
-kañana

CONFORM vi

comply with accepted
behaviour, laws

-tēnda shika You must conform to tribal custom = wa roghera
(lit. 'act according to') kutenda shika mihingo dhodiko

CONFOUND vt.

1. cause to fail, of plotting, hopes
2. put to shame

-kangeritha
4-2b
-wana nohonyi
9

confound the plotting of my enemies, Lord!
= Nyambi, kangerithe kutungura kawañorewange
You will confound your enemies = ñanyi wa ha ku
wane nohonyi hañore woye

3. perplex, confuse,
see CONFUSE,
BEWILDER, PERPLEX

kwímana mútwi
yérupitha 4-2b

CONFRONT vt.

meet face to face
see DISADVANTAGE

-wānekedha (5)

The storekeeper confronted the thief in the door-
way of the store = mughurithi gha wanskedhire
mwidhi pathero thothitora

CONFUSE vt.

1. disorganise, throw
into disorder,
embarrass

harañanyitha 13/4-
18,2b

This unexpected happening has confused my plans
= thitenda tho tha kara tho kudhira kukengerera
nga thi harañanyitha yiyereka yange

2. mix up in mind 2.
see BEWILDER
(interrupt, interfere)

-rúngangedha
mumutwi

He is talking nonsense, he is all confused =
ghana yiyavingera yombango; ghana rungangedha
mumutwi

3. abash, disturb in mind
see ABASH

mwaghara
muyirama 6-19

CONFUSION n

1. disorganisation,
disorder. see CHAOS
2. being mixed up in
mind
3. disturbance of mind
4. commotion see
COMMOTION

thiharañanyitha 7/8
thirúngangedha tho
mumutwi 7/8
thimwaghara tho
muyirama 7/8
rupetho 11/6(11)

CONFUTE vt

prove person wrong

-négha -yípitha He confuted him about the sale of cattle = gha
(lit. 'show to be mu neghire kuyipitha; ngombe mbadi ha dhi ghurithire.
in the wrong')

prove argument to be
false

-négha ñanani eshi
moudhi ('mbudhi' = 'lies', in this sense)

CONGEST vi

to be congested, too
crowded

-kára hageya ho
hengi
thikuma mudyango
dimwe

The room is too congested = ngonda dha kara
nawagaya hohengi thikuma mwadho (lit. 'the
room has too many people in it') or ha kara
hageya ho hengi thikuma mungonda

- see CROWD

- CONGRATULATE vt.
tell another one's pleasure -tóngwera eshi
14-23
in hearing of his happy event -shámberera
66-15
Let us congratulate the chief on the birth of his son = tu thighe tu tongwere fumu eshi tuna shamberera mumashamurukero ghombedi ghomurume
- CONGREGATE vt. vi
collect, gather in a crowd -kukukonga
OC 7
see ASSEMBLE, COLLECT, CROWD, GATHER.
- CONGREGATION n
gathering, assemblage mbúnga 10/6(10) small - dikōnga - (see CHURCH) 5/6
- CONGRESS n
meeting - for a period of time makónganeno /6
- CONJUNCTION n
1. word joining two sentences MT nándonunga 10/6(10)
2. act in -, act together -tēnda pofótji no
- CONJURE vt.
1. appeal solemnly to kwedhera
(lit. 'cause to swear to') 6-5b "I conjure you to tell us by the living God" (Math. 26; 63) = na kwidhera wa kwaNyambi ghomuyumi ghu tu tongwere"
2. cause to appear -hókokitha
4-2b "Conjure up the spirit that I name to you" (1 Sam:28;18) = "Hokokithe mudhimu ghoyu nina ti kukoye"
3. carry away -shimbera 6-5c "The spirit of the Lord will conjure you away" (1 Kings 18; 12) = "Muñu waFumu hanyi ghu kushimbere kwako"
- CONNECT vt. 1. join two things together
-nungekera 3/6-4a,5c N.B. join broken pieces together - waneka
vi 2. join on with -nungekera no
see JOIN 3-4a
- CONNECTION n
joint manungekero /6
- CONQUER vt. vi.
1. overcome by force -píterera nongcamu
66-14 (lit. 'go beyond the limit of strength' see OVERCOME, PREVAIL)
- another country 2. -kánga (1. roast)
take by force, annex -kwátera thimuna
6/5 see ANNEX (-biterera - sets.)
2. get the better of eg. bad habit -píterera mihíngo
dhodhiyi
66-14
- CONQUEROR n
one who conquers. mupítereri
mukángi 1/2
- CONQUEST n
act of conquering, subduing mapíterero
makángero /8
- CONSCIENCE n
moral sense of right and wrong thiyúrukitho
7/8 -lit 'that which causes to remember'

CONSCIENCE (cont)		
have qualms of -	kukudhékera 6-7,5b	
have sin on one's -	kukuyúva murandu mudiharwero 7	- dimwe (lit. 'to feel the guilt of a certain sin')
CONSCIOUS a		
aware of what is going on around	-dímuca ghoyi ya kara -	-kudhinga
unconscious, not -	-pwérera	see UNCONSCIOUS
CONSECRATE vt.		
1. set apart as sacred	-dhirera (6)-(5a)	
2. make holy, sanctify	-pongokitha 4-2b	
CONSECRATED a. w.nn.		
a holy person, sacred person	mudhiri 1/2	
a holy thing, sacred thing	thidhiri 7/8	
CONSECRATION n		
act of making holy	madhirero /6	
CONSENT (1) vi		
agree - see AGREE	-táwa	
CONSENT (2) n		
1. agreement	thitáwa 7/8	
2. permission	thithighera 7/8	
CONSEQUENCE n		
result of happening, effect	mapwéro /6	He now sees the consequences of his crime = ghana mono pano mapwero ghoghuyi.
take - i.e. accept results of choice	-támura mapwéro	Do it and take the consequences = thi tende ghu tambure mapwero
CONSIDER vt. vi.		
1. think about	-yedhekera	The chief will consider your request = fumu ñanyi gha kuyedhekere thikumbara thoye.
2. be of opinion that	-gháyara	I consider that he is lying = nina ghayara eshi kumbudhipa ghana kumbudhipa
3. regard as, look on	-kénga	I consider him to be a rogue = nina mu kenga eshi muringiringi.
CONSIDERATE a		
thoughtful of others	-gháyara	He is always considerate of his mother = gha ghayaranga kehepa nyina
CONSIDERING prep		
in view of	-yedhekere	Considering his age he has done well = yedhekere mighakadhandi, nga tendi thiwana.
CONSIGN vt.		
1. deliver to another's care	-tápa (lit. 'give')	
2. send by road, rail	-túmitha no 4-2b	I consigned the parcel to the driver's care = na tapire thitere thopopa kuthikunga thomuhingi.
CONSIGNMENT n		
goods sent	yitere ghoyi hana tumitha /8	

- CONSIST vi
be made of, be composed of -tenda no The hut consists of poles and grass = mayugho ha gha tenda noyitondo nomuhonyi
- CONSISTENT a.
in keeping with (id. expression in Mbukushu His coming and going is consistent with his usual practice = kwiya kwendi no kuyenda kwendi ne yo ghana tendanga kehepa
- CONSOLATION n
comfort see COMFORT makotameno /6
- CONSOLE vt.
comfort -kotamena 9-5a
comfort a mourner -héngaghura 15/6-11
- CONSONANT n gr.
sound combined with vowel thíghukafwato m.t.
to make syllable 7/8
- CONSORT vi
keep company with
see COMPANY 2 -shereka
- CONSPICUOUS
1. clearly seen, ghuredhu kumóna
easy to see -kóka mashongomeno Her bright red dress made her conspicuous =
2. attracting notice thishupata thothikihu no kutwedhima thi
remarkable kokire mashongomeno kukwendi
- CONSPIRACY n
plot made by people
together thirumbana 7 N.B. usually for evil purpose,
see PLOT (1) 2.
- CONSPIRATOR n
plotter múka kurumbana 1
- CONSPIRE vi. vt.
plot together for evil
purpose -rumbana "They saw him in the distance and conspired
to kill him " (Gen. 37:8) " ha mu monine ko
see PLOT, (2) kayendagho ha rumbenine kumupagha"
- CONSTABLE n
police officer muporithi
1/2(6),6
- CONSTANT a
1. steadfast, firm thitánara see STEADFAST
2. faithful thikukánya see FAITHFUL
3. unchanging mbadi kukupiraghura
- CONSTANTLY adv.
1. always kehépa
2. often rwíngi
- CONSTERNATION n
dismay thiyápitha 7/ She received the news with consternation =
gha turokerire mbuchi nothiyapitha.
- CONSTIPATED a
not working, of the bowels mbadi -rughana He is constipated (i.e. his bowels are not
working) yihoye yendi mbadi yina kurughana.

- CONSTITUTION n
 1. health of body yirema yo
 ndjewandjewa /8 You have a strong constitution = wa kara noyirama
 yondjewandjewa.
 2. set of principles for
 a society veta dho
 kuraghura 10/6(10) makuwaneno (i.e. for its governance, conduct
 of business)
- CONSTRAIN vt.
 1. compel to do see thineneka
 COMPEL, FORCE
 2. imprison yándherera mukashitiko
 66-14
- CONSTRAINT n
 1. compulsion thithineneka 7/8
 2. confinement mayándherero /6
- CONSTRUCT vt.
 contract, compress -kwáta 2. The python's coils constricted the man's breathing
 = yikwonda yomboma ya kwatire kutotha kamurume.
- CONSTRUCT vt.
 1. build a complete house -ghúmba see BUILD, ERECT
 put up the roof -shókeka
 2. fit together, join
 (neatly) -munekera 3/6 4a,5c
 3. put together -pákerera 66-15
 4. combine words to form
 sentence -tenda (mt)
- CONSTRUCTION
 1. building mughumbo 3/10(4) see BUILDING, ERECTION
 roof - thishókeka 7/8
 2. act of putting
 together thipákerera 7/8
 3. - of sentence. mt. thitenda 7/8
- CONSUL n
 state's representative in
 another state mwimaneni 1/2 (lit. 'one who stands for'); mughambereri.
 (lit. 'one who speaks for') 1/2
- CONSULT vt. vi.
 take counsel with -kára nothifúpi no see CONFER, COUNSEL
 seek advice -shana thuvúrukitha
 seek information -shana thitongora
- CONSULTATION n
 act of conferring, taking
 counsel thikúpi 7/8 - conference.
- CONSUME vt. vi.
 1. eat or drink everything kúdyá, kúnwa yoyiheyá
 2. waste time, trouble -petha ruvédhe, yinyanda
 3. destroy see DESTROY -yipitha 4-2b
 4. use up, - spend -rughana kate kúpwa see SPEND
- CONSUMPTION n
 1. disease eating up lungs yikórwá yo mamúnga. /8
 2. wastage - mapethero /6
 3. destruction mayipithero /6
- CONTACT n.
 1. touching vt. kukuwana 15 The wires must be in contact = mandarata gha
 roghora kukuwana

CONTACT (cont)

in - with	kukundama	He has been in contact with smallpox = nga kukundama noyikorwa yofanga.
come into - come across, meet	kukuhangana no OC 7	Did you come into contact with Disho in Maun ? = a wa kuhanganine naDisho mu Maun ndi ?
3. lose -, lose touch with -	-yongara yikuwana	"Contact was lost during the night" = "yikuwana ya yongarire maghuthiku"

CONTAGION n

communicating of disease to spread - of disease	thiyambura 7/8 -yarayaritha yikórwá 21.10	see INFECTION
---	---	---------------

CONTAGIOUS a

infectious, catching	-yámbukera 7	see INFECTIOUS
----------------------	--------------	----------------

CONTAINER n

<u>vessel that contains; if carried</u>	thishimbero 7/8 thinweno 7/8	
water -		
- for closing up, hiding grain, money etc.	di ghánda 5/6	group of containers maghanda /6
to store things in a -	-pungaritha 4-2b	

CONTAIN vt.

has, as contents carries	-kára no -shimba
--------------------------	---------------------

CONTAMINATE vt.

1. infect, as disease	-yambana 8-3	see INFECT
2. pollute water	-vundurura matapa 66-15	see POLLUTE
" character	-yipitha kikúto 4-2b	

CONTEMPLATE vt. vi.

1. look upon - with eyes	-kenga
look upon - with mind	-yechekera
2. expect	-kengcerera 66-13
3. intend, purpose	-gháyara

CONTEMPT n

act of despising	yinyátha /8	-of court, disobeying court order thirégha tho veta dho madhekero 7
------------------	-------------	--

CONTEMPTIBLE a

deserving contempt	-rogghera yinyátha	see DESPICABLE
--------------------	--------------------	----------------

CONTEMPTUOUS a

showing contempt	-négha yinyátha
------------------	-----------------

CONTEND

1. fight with person for a thing	-rwērerera (r.-rwa.) 14	see FIGHT
fight a case in court	-rwera théko 5c	
2. struggle against difficulties	kukukótera OC 7	I have much to contend with just now = na kera noyina yoyingi kuyikukotera keho vene.
3. compete with others	kukutángawera OC 14/7/23	see COMPETE
4. argue with	kukukéhana no	see ARGUE
maintain that	-ninga OC 7	I contend that I was right = nina ningi eshi thoshemwa

- CONTENT (1) npl.
What is contained in vessel,
book yikárama /8
- CONTENT (2)n. CONTENTMENT n.
state of satisfaction thindámbo 7/
- CONTENT (3)
satisfy -shámbereritha
see SATISFY 66/4-15/26
He contented his parents with his choice of a
wife = gha shambererithire hawawana wendi
nothitorerathendi thamunduwendi.
- CONTENTION n
strife, dispute, see
DISPUTE ñāndo; ñānani 9
point in dispute; id.
bone of - pakátji ko ñāndo
- CONTEST (1) n
1. dispute, strife, see
DISPUTE ñāndo ñānani 10/6(10)
2. friendly competition thikutángawero 7/8 see COMPETITION
- CONTEST (2) vt. vi.
1. dispute, strive -kañana
2. dispute with arms,
fight kurwa
3. contend, compete for
seat in Parliament kukutángawera
OC 14-7,23 see COMPETE
- CONTINENT n
continuous land ditúnga dyo N.B. Expl. of Africa as - = 'land of black people'
-yenda kughútho = ditúnga dya waguva ho heru 5/6
5/6
- CONTINUAL a.
1. always going on -yēnda kūghutho kehépa
2. very often rwingi thikúna
- CONTINUE vt. vi.
1. keep on doing -tēdanga, 10-9
-tenderera N.B. continuous action expressed by v. ext. 4;
66-13 habitual; v. ext. 17, continuous.
2. retain office, keep
possession of -kára no shime see RETAIN
3. resume story -hēnyitha thitongonona
4-2b see RESUME 2
4. resume journey -núngura syn see JOURNEY. He continued his journey = gha
rúndura rundurire ruyendorwendi
5. -, of life -hēnya Life will continue on earth = ghuparo ñanyi ghu
kuhenye pakaye.
6. - to speak -wēdherera
-ghamba 66-13
- CONTRACT (1)
agreement - covenant thikwátathana 7/8 see AGREEMENT
agreement = treaty
between states ndhúvadhano (also of business-)
10/6(10)

-thigheka

prefix 'ku' + red. v. beginning with w. -
ku + wimana = kwimana ('stand')

-kāñāna

hānani 10/6(10)

The opposite to what others do -
see OPPOSITE, REVERSE.

id. tho kwímana
(lit. 'standing
against')
-tjwáthana

He contrasted the sounds of the two drums by beating first one, then the other = gha tjwa - thedine yihata yomangoma mawedi gha shikire ghofo tji pamutango keho thimweya munyima.

thit.jwáthana 7/8

-régha vēta
-kañana nongonokodhi

He contributed much to the success of the
undertaking = gha yskire thikuma kukaritha
mayenditho shothiyereka

-yúva tjítju
no dihárwero

mayúvero gho tiftju /6

He contrived a new way of roofing = gha tendiro
no mghano ghendi ndhira dhoshijya dho
kuchimera

CONTROL (1)

1. command, power to direct thirāghura 7/8
2. restraint, check thikōtora 7/8

CONTROL (2) vt.

1. command -rāghura
- bring under - -rāghuritha 4-2b
2. bring under discipline, by coaxing -ghōmbapitha 4-2b
- bring under obedience -ghōvamenitha 4-2b
3. restrain oneself, eg. one's anger kukukōtora ghūpata 7
- oneself with a great effort -dhīdhimeka

"Joseph could no longer control his feelings"
(Gen. 45; 1) "Josefe mbadi gha raghurire
rorure makuyuvo ghendi"

i.e. not to give way, or to give up

CONTROLLER n

- one in command murāghuri 1/2
one who restrains, e.g. expenditure mukōtori 1/2
steward - see STEWARD mukengereri 1/2

CONTRIVERSY n

- dispute ānani 10/6(10)

CONVALESCE vi

- regain health -pōra

CONVENE vt. vi

1. assemble see ASSEMBLE -kōngwetha 5-2a
2. call assembly together kwitha mōunga

CONVENIENT a

1. suitable wūwa (lit. 'good')
2. not troublesome mbadi -nyānda

Choose a convenient time to you = torore ruvedho
roruwa kukoye
If it is convenient to you, I would like to spend
the night with you = ngeshi mbadi sho gha nyande
kukoye, nanyi ni hake kurara ghuthiku
mudighumbo dyoye

CONVERSANT a.

- well acquainted, see
ACQUAINT 3.
know about things

-dīmuka
-dīmuka

CONVERSATION n

- talk yighāmba /8
chat yikuvūreka /8
break in upon, interrupt -rūngangedha

Break up a -

-abūndungedha

CONVERSE vi,

- talk with person

-ghāmba nomūnu

talk about a subject

-ghāmba mukéiji kodimbwāmbwa

CONVERSION n

- bringing a person over to belief -pīrukitha
turn sinners to God -pīrukitha
hahāpuri 4-2b

- or opinion - or party.

-kwa Nyāmbi

CONVERT vt.

1. change into, eg. of money -pīruka 3-4b

I have converted my money into pounds = nga ni
pīruka mambadi ghanga mupondo.

CONVERT (cont)

2. bring person to God -pírúkitha munu kwa- or belief, opinion, party.
Nyámbi 3/4-4b 2b

CONVEY vt.

1. transport from one place
to another -twára
pick up and carry -shimba

N.B. the action of -shimba presedes the action of
-twára

2. impart news

-thímwetedha
mbúdhí 3a

Have I conveyed to you what I mean ? = a ni ku
thimwetekedha ghoyi na ku ninga ndi ?

CONVICT (1) n

condemned criminal

dipānditi 5/6

CONVICT (2) vt.

1. prove tuiity
2. declare guilty
3. bring home to person
his evil ways

-nēgha murádu
-tōngora murádu

-kwátitha
dishamu 4-2b
2. -ndjōndjawaghāra

I have convicted him of the evil of his doings
= nga ni mu kwatitha dishamu dyoyitenda yendi

- of be convicted of
lying and feel ashamed

see CRAWL for ex. (1. droop)

CONVICTION n

1. proving, finding
guilty

thinégha thomurádu

2. firm belief

7/8
thitáwa tho thitēnama
7/8

CONVINCE vt

- firmly persuade (forcefully) -kōna thoshémwa
firmly persuade (pleasantly) -ghāngera tho
shēmwa

I convinced him that he was wrong = na mu konine
thoshemwa eshi gha karire ghuyi

CONVOKE vt.

- call people to assembly
together

-kóngwetha 5-2a

-haguya pofotji

CONVULSE vt.

1. shake violently

-tūtuma thikúma

My baby is convulsed with pain = kambututu kange
kututuma kana kututuma notjitju.

2. be convulsed with
laughter

-pwēdhangerā
kumúne 5/10/6
2a, 9, 5a

When the chief heard the news he was convulsed
with laughter = ghopa fumu gha yuvire
mbudhi, gha pwedhangerire kumune

CONVULSION n

violent-shaking

yitūtuma thikúma

shaking with laughter

7/8
thipwedhangerā
kumúne 7/

COO vi

murmer softly as dove,
pigeon

-díra

COOK (1) n

one who cooks food

mutéreki 1

COOK (2) vt. vi.

prepare food by heating

-téreka

COOK (2) (cont)

- in a dirty manner -téréka wishu
 put pepper, salt in -
 pot -tóva
 take meat from pot to kukutunditha OC 4
 taste -7,2b To see if meat is cooked
 -meat to a soft broth -hóghoroka
 -till porridge is thick -póna dimbómbo
 kate ku kwata
 overcook -téréka thikúma
 -and remove food from pot
 when ready -térura

COOKING-PLACE n

- place where cooking is dyángo dyo
 done kutérekera 5/6 didhíko (lit 'fire place') 5/6

COOL (1)

- a. moderately cold ghutēnda ghoghumbíru
 n. - of the day (-time) ghutēnda gho
 diyúwa 14/

COOL (2) vi

- become - -tendapa 1-16 (1. cool) see PERSPIRATION
 become - as in evening -tēnderera 66-15
 become -, of fat 1. -ghāngera (2. convince)
 become -, of food -póra
 become -, of sun, as it
 goes down -ghōmboka
 become -, in water, of
 living things -kwōmbeka 3-4a
 vt. -person with water to
 revive -vōmbeka 3-4a
 become cool, of person's
 anger 2. -ghōwoka (1. dislocate) or of a protesting animal - see also CALM

COOP n

- fowl -run dirápa dyo shúshwa
 5/6

CO-OPERATE vi

- work together -rughāna pofótji A co-operative Store = Thitora tho kurughana
 pofotji kawaguva

CO-OPT vt

- elect as member of body -tōrora yira muka
 dikóngá

COPPER n

- reddish metal rōto 1a(9)/6(9)

COPY n (1)

- duplication, reproduction
 of writing yitāmenena 8
 imitation of another thitēmununa 7 - or of work of another person

COPY (2) vt. vi

- duplicate, reproduce -tāmanena
 imitate -tēmununa
 The children copied the man as he walked =
 hanuke ha tēmununine murume shikamu gha
 yendire pamuve

CORAL n, a

- hard substance found in mānde /6
 sea

N.B. this is used in necklaces

- CORD**
 n. thin rope, thick string thingōdhi 7/8
 umbilical mukogha ghoghugita 3/
- vt.** bind with - -wānga nothingōdhi
- CORDIAL**
 n. stimulant for heart ghuwānga gho -hēthumuna
 mutjima 14
 a. warm, friendly -kāra ghushere
- CORE** n
 hard part of fruit, heart; mutjima 3/10(4)
 -inmost part
- CORK** (1) n
 float for fishing-line ndindikiro 10/6(10)
 bottle -stopper thivukitho tho
 dikendi 7/8
- CORK** (2) vt.
 stop up a bottle 3. -vuka dikendi 8 ant. uncork a bottle -vukura dikendi 6-5c, 8
 sink, of cork -porokera
 (1. sleep, 2. sink
 in mud)
- CORMORANT** n
 water-bird with snake-like
 neck ngororo 1a(9)/2(9), 6(9)
 dive, and later surface, of - or person -tūmuka
 spread out wings, of -, to get dry kwamba
 The cormorant spreads out his wings to dry them
 = see STRETCH 2. Ngororo gha kwambire
 mando ghendi
 spread out wings, of-
 to get warm - -kangura
 let down outstretched wings 2. -tūpekedha 5-2a
 (1. push)
 The cormorant let down his outstretched wings =
 ngororo gha tupekedhire mando ghendi gho
 kughonyona.
- CORN** (1)
 collective sg. grain esp.
cereals - in fields mbuto /10
 - in granary, when prepared tumbi
 1a(9)/6(9) Also = kaffir - corn
 1. kinds of corn, maize,
 Indian corn mundere 3/10(4)
 millet mahangu /6
 sorghum (white) tumbi gho mukenu 1a(9)/6(9)
 wheat, English - mavumbikiro /6 (red) Tumbi gho , mukihu 1a(9)/6(9)
 a little corn in field or granary matumbi /6
 2. corn in the field
 first fruits for rain-maker
 guests shimo 10/6(10)
 - field dipya 5/6 mealie field thikana, 7/8
 - sheaf standing in field 1. dithinde 5/6 2. sod
 - stalk kutengetji ko
 tumbi 12/13
 ear of - ditumbi, 5 dihakara, 5 (see BEAT 2, MILLET) ear of millet (see RUB 1) Mbeye
 syn digovo 5/6 10/6(10)

CORN (cont)

- cob thisháti 7/8
 - standing thickly in fields in autumn dihungo 5/6
 bundle of corn laid lengthwise and tied thitúngo tho túmbi 7/8 i.e. sheaf
3. receptacles for corn; shelter ghutára 14/6
 clay bin before transfer to 'kashete' thindándara 7/8
 large-basket, bin of wicker-work kashéte 12/13 larger receptacle for corn recently stored
 -house, for long period of storage ndáma 10/6(10) = thishéte 7/8
 -stored in - house, i.e. for a long time -ngündju 10/
4. harvesting corn. - reap -tjóra
 glean, -gather ears after reapers -gúgurura (15)
 bear inferior head of - -púra
 carry home - gather in - - túta túmbi
5. preparing corn for for store or use.
 winnow - -yérutha (2b) see WINNOW
 grains left after winnowing ghuhéke 14
 remove unbeaten grains after winnowing kwichúra
 remove husks of mealies -tjenga see POUND, STAMP
 stamp, pound grains in mortar kúwa túmbi
 pound millet on ground, of four women -púra
 corn-flour, i.e. fine-ground Indian - mushúngwa ghotúmbi 3
 corn-flower, of plants growing among - mutémo gho túmbi 3

CORN (2) n

- hard place on foot dihútu 5/6

CORNER n

place where two sides, edges, meet.

- in town, - of street, house, table,

dishóna (lit. 'angle') 5/6

In the country, houses are usually round huts; - of a square house would be called mapétekero gho ndhugho (lit. 'the place of bending of the house')

- in country, - of garden

ngoro dhodípya 10/6(10)

- to turn a - (lit. 'deviate, go, to out of way')

-hambuka píruka 4b

-(lit. 'to make a turn')

- id. vt. - drive into -, of animal, so cannot, escape

-dhingumwetekedha 2a

-popaheya (lit. 'hem in', 'completely surround') see DRIVE 2

CORPSE n.

1. person at point of death
 life lingers
 body from which all life;
 has gone

ditáku 5/6

see CARCASS

mwimba

3/6(3)

(gets. - thitútu, 7/(8))

CORPSE (cont)

- | | | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------|
| watchers around - | ditámu 5/6 | clothe - for burial | -vuverera mwimba (vodihina) |
| to lay out - for funeral | -honya mwimba | see EMBALM | |
| 2. - or dead object | | | |
| floating on waters surface | dibu' 5/6 | | |
| to float of -, dead | 1. fughuka (2.cow) | | |
| object. | 3-4b | | |
| to removing floating - | 1. fughura (2.cow) | | |

CORRECT vt. (1)

- | | | |
|------------------------------|----------------------|---|
| 1. amend, put right | róghitha 4-2b | |
| see AMEND 3 | | |
| - a person's use of language | 2. róngeka (1.load) | When person is trying to speak language different from his own. |
| -inaccurate news, see NEWS | 2. prepare 3-4a | I corrected the news that he gave them = na rogh-ithire mbudhi ghodhi gha wa pire |
| | róghitha mbudhi 4-2b | |
| 2. punish a person | humbitha munu 4-2b | |
| admonish person | | |
| see ADMONISH | | |

CORRECT (2) a.

- | | | |
|---|------------------|---|
| 1. true, accurate, see ACCURATE | thoshēmwa pópahe | |
| 2. right, proper, of conduct see BEHAVE | wúwa (lit. good) | That is not the correct way to behave = gho thiya ne mbadi ndhirá dhodhiwa tho kukukuteka |

CORRECTLY adv accurately

- | | |
|---------------------|--|
| no thoshēmwa pópahe | |
| (thiwana = well) | You answered correctly = nga ghu huthu no thoshēmwa popahe |

CORRECTION n

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------|
| putting right of an error | thiróghitha 7 |
|---------------------------|---------------|

CORRESPOND vi

- | | | |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------|--|
| 1. be similar to, alike | -pítura yíra | His account of what happened corresponds with yours = thithimwetedha theni gho thi tha karire tha pitura yira thoye |
| 2. agree in amount (to) | -táwa | Your total of payments does not correspond with your total of receipts = thivarero thoye thoyifuta mbadi thi tawa nothivarero thoye thoyitambura |
| 3. communicate by letters | kukutjāngera mambapíra OC 6,7,5b | We have corresponded for a long time = nga tu kukutjāngera mambapíra ghoruvedhe rorure. |

CORRESPONDENCE n

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. agreement between two things | yitáwa /8 |
| 2. communicating by letter | thikutjāngera mambapíra 7/8 |

CORRESPONDENT n

- | | | |
|--|---------------------|------------|
| one with to whom one corresponds by letter | múka kutjāngera 1/2 | -mambapíra |
|--|---------------------|------------|

CORROBORATE vt

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------|----------------|
| confirm statement with evidence | -shémwapitha 4-2b | see CONFIRM 3. |
|---------------------------------|-------------------|----------------|

- CORRODE vt. vi.
become rusty - see RUST
consume, wear away - of rust
decay - see DECAY
- CORRUGATED a
bent into ridges as - iron
bent into ridges as surface of road
- CORRUGATION n
ridged surface on a road
- CORRUPT a (1)
1. rotten, morally, depraved
wicked
influenced by bribery
2. - of a language
- CORRUPT (2)
1. person's morals, language
2. bribe
- CORRUPTIBLE
perishable
bribeable (this must be the example given)
- CORRUPTION n
1. rot, decomposition of dead body
2. rot, depravity of character, language
3. bribery
- COSMETICS npl.
beauty preparation for hair
beauty preparation for skin
to be heavily made up with
- COST (1)
1. price payable on goods for sale
2. law expenses see EXPENSE
3. expenditure of time, labour on job
- COST (2)
1. involve expense of
- kára thitémbwe
-vúndera kuthitémbwe 5c
thikúvo tho kupétadheka 7
ndhírá dho 9 -kupétadheka 24
thipétadheka 7/8
-yipithitha mungándji 44-14 (destroyed in personality, character')
ghúyi
-hámbukitha 4-2b You resorted to corrupt practices in the election
-yípthitha 44-14 = wa rughanine yirughana yoyinambukitha muthitorera
-ghondimi. i.e. a language whose purity has been destroyed by introducing too many foreign words.
-yípthitha 4-2b cp. DETERIORATE 1
hámbukitha 4-2b
gho yireréya You can bribe him = wa kona kumuhambukitha
ghufútu 14/
mayípthithero /6
mahámbukithero /6
mukúra 3/ kathíra 12/
múnde 3/
-kukudóweka 14/5
mughúro 3/10(4) Value of goods, amount needed to produce them
twátwá /13
yishinyehero /8 I ask for judgment with costs = nina rombo
thipangura noyishinyehero.
yifúta (payment due) (mughúro = what it will cost to render service, do a job)
kukushimba 7 That will cost you one pound = ányí thí ka
kushimba thipondo thofotji.

COST (cont)			
2. fix prices	-páka mighūro	What does it cost ? = ghungatji ?	
3. result in loss of	-shinyehera	His rash act cost him his job = thitenda thendi tho kuhandukere tha mu shinyeherire yirughana yendi	
COSTLY a			
expensive	ndhīro	Of great price = gho mughūro gho ghukūru	
COSTUME n			
see CLOTHES			
COTTON n			
thread to make cloth	wānda 14/6(14)		
cloth made from - thread	thihina 7/8		
- plant	thitápeka thowānda 7/8		
-yarn, thread prepared for weaving	wānda gho kurūka 14/6(14)		
COUCAL n			
Burchell's - S. African river bird	mukúku 3/10(4)	N.B. has a low, mellow, watery call	
COUGH n			
bed	ghudīdi 14/6(14)	Sleeping - place	maráro /6
COUGH (1)			
act of coughing	ideo. dikohwēra 5/6		
COUGH (2) vi. vt			
expel air from lungs with effort, noise	-kóghora	- up, out spittal etc.	-kóghora ko kuthípa
COUNCIL n			
body for conferring, advising, deciding	ngōtha 10/6(10)		
COUNCILLOR n			
member of council	múka ngōtha 1/2		
COUNSEL (1) n			
advice	thivúrukitha 7/18		
COUNSEL (2) vt			
advise - see ADVISE	-vúrukitha 4-2b		
COUNSELLOR n			
one who gives advice chief's -	muvúrukithi 1/2 múka kashumba 1/2		
COUNT (1)			
counting, reckoning	thitára 7/8		
keep -	-tára	I have kept count of the days you have worked = nga ni tara echi mangatji mayuwa gho gha nga mu rughana	
lose -	-yōngara thitára	He lost count of the number of people who came = gha yongarire thitara thopero dhawagava ha wa hoyire	
COUNT (2) vt. vi.			
1. reckon number	-tára paro		
- up figures of sum	-tára thivarero		

- COUNT (2) (cont)
 2. trust, expect confidently-kánya
 - for, be worth -rógha
 I count on your support = nina kukanya muyivatera yenu
 The chief's support counts much = thivatera thofumu tha rogha thikuma
- COUNTENANCE
 n. 1. expression on face thikénga tho
 see FACE. mu rupára 7/8 "Cain's countenance fell" (Gen. 4: 5) = thikenga tho murupara rwa Cain rwa karire thighe"
 vv. 2. alter, change of facial expression -píruka 3-4b
 When he heard of his son's death, his countenance changed = ghopa gha turukerire ghoyifa yomwanendi thikenga thomurupara rwendi rwa pirukire ghuthighana
- COUNTER (1) n.
 table in store for counting money, giving goods tishi yo
 thitóra 1a(9)/6(9)
- COUNTER (2) vt.
 1. oppose, contradict see
 CONTRADICT -kañana
 2. return blow when parrying in boxing -hútha
 He countered his opponent's blow with a punch to his jaw = gha huthire ngomi dhoforewendi nongomi kumomotjidhendi
- COUNTRY n
 region, district mukúnda 3/10(4)
 thitáka.
 7/8(Ang)
 territory of nation ditúnga 5/6
 Strip of - ngóra 10/6(10)
- COUNTRYMAN n
 fellow - man of my country muka ditúnga
 dyánga 1/2
 native - where one was born, ditúnga dyo
 mashámurukero 5/6
 What country is he ? = muka ditunga munye ?
- COUP n
 (move to gain control of country)
 (translate as in example given)
 The army deposed the President in a successful coup (trans. 'they have gained control of the country') = hakamvo ha tughurire Mutungi ha wanine thiraghura thoditunga
- COUPLE (1) n
 pair - see PAIR ghuwádi 14/
 Wedding couple - háwadi gho ha yékitha /2
- COUPLE (2) vt.
 inspan oxen with double yoke -kwáta mahóve
 link, join two things together with coupling -nūngekera 3/4-4a
 5c
 see INSPAN
- COURAGE n
 bravery, boldness ghupáta 14/
 take, pluck up - gather it together -kóngwetha ghupáta
 5-2a
 He took courage and plunged into the water = gha kongwethire ghupatawendi gha dabwamine munyeu
 lose - -yōngaritha ghupáta
 4-2b
 He lost courage and gave up the attempt = gha yongarithire ghupata wendi gha hupurire thiyereka theni

COURAGE (cont)

fig. - of one's convictions,
beliefsghúpata ghoyitáwa
14/He has the courage of his convictions to do what
he believes to be best = gha kara noghupota
ghoyitawa yendi eshi gha tende ghoyi ghana tawa
kukara yiwa thikuma

COURAGEOUS

brave
fearlessghupáta
-píra wóma

COURIER n

running messenger

mutūmi gho
kutjira 1/2

COURSE n

1. onward movement
2. direction taken-yēnda kughútho 15
ndhirá dhokughútho (lit. 'way onward that is chosen')
thokutōpora 10/6(10)

hold a -

-hēnyena -yēnda The boat held its course against the current =
kughútho mundhira wato gha hēnyenine kuyenda kughutho mundhira
dhagho kundhirá dhomeyu

change -

pírura ndhirá He changed his course and made straight for the
gap = gha píruire ndhirá dhendi gha ghoror-
okithire kuthero

3. water-course

" " - channel
where water flows

kapúpo 12/13

syn. mundēndesho, 3/6

4. in the - of, i.e. during
in due - i.e. in good
ordermumémāno gho
thiróghaI saw him in the course of my visit = na mu
wanine nendi muthihungera thange.We will consider your affairs in due course =
fianyi tu kuyedhekere dimbwambwa dyoye mumemano
ghothirogha

of - i.e. naturally

thoshémwa

Of course you may be present = thoshemwa wa
kukare.matter of - i.e.
natural thingthínu tho
thirógha 7/8I had assumed that as a matter of course =
na ghayarire thiya shika thinu thothirogha.

COURT (also COURTYARD) (1)

1. space enclosed by walls,
buildings - of house
back - of housedirápa (front)
5/6

or (ditéte, 5/6) see also YARD (2)

back - of headman

1. marivéra (2.eaves) (sets. - mahúra)

back - of chief

1. mukūnda (2.district)
3/10(6)
marombe /62. place of justice - of
tribengótha dho díko
10/6(10)

- of justice

mathékero /6

Criminal - mathékero gho yirégha yo veta;
police - mathékero gho mapóriti /6

COURT (2) vt

1. pay - to, seek favour
of

-shána yishámberera

He is paying court to the chief = kushana ghana
kushana yishamberera yo kwa fumu.

2. make love to

-shéshe

He is courting the chief's daughter =
kushesha ghana kushesha mwana fumu

3. seek to win admiration

-shána
yishámbereraHe is courting her admiration by his prowess
in hunting = kushana ghana kushana yishamberera
yendi kughupatawendi mu kushana yiyama

COURT (cont)		
4. invite enquiry	-tēnda kwípura kwípura	But he is courting enquiry into his exploits = keho gha tendi haguva kwipurakwípura yiyovora yendi.
COURTEOUS a polite	gho dikúto	kind ghunōngo; considerate; see CONSIDERATE - -gháyara
COURTESY n politeness	ghūnadikúto 14/.	
COUSIN n uncle or aunt's child	thīro 1a (pl. hayīro, 2)	
second - ie. parents' 'first-'s child	mwāna thīro 1/	
COVENANT n compact see COMPACT legal contract see CONTRACT	thikwátathana 7/8 thikwátathana 7/8	see TESTAMENT ex. ark of - thikésha tho thikwátathana 7/8
bargain - see BARGAIN	ndhúvathano 10/6(10)	
COVER (1) vt.		
1. spread over - with cloth	2-yára (1. full)	She covered the table with a cloth = gha yarire tishi nodikehe.
spread over - with apron	-fikerera 66-15	She covers her dress with an apron = gha fikerera yivatayendi nodikehe
lie over, be covering to body in bed	1. -fíka (2. sod)	A blanket covered the patient = ngugho gha fikire muka kukorwa.
- with lid	-fíka (fúrumeka) 3-4a, 8	She covered the pot with its lid = gha fikire kanyungu nomuhuko wako.
- by putting larger object over	-fúrumeka 3-4a, 8	She covered the plate with a dish = gha furumekire rupesha nothidyero
- eyes, shade eyes, see SHADE	-fikerera 66-15	She covered her eyes against the sun = gha fikererire mehoghendi kudyuwa.
- eyes when lying down	-káthumuka 3-4b	She covered herself with her veil = gha kufuyererire nodishire dyendi.
2. - hide with veil	kukufúyerera 66-7, 15	She covered the milk from the heat of the sun = gha fikire manhwe kumutenya ghodiyuwa
- milk from heat of sun	-fíka	She covered up the goods she had stolen = gha horekire yitere ghoyi ghedhire.
- anything up -	-hōreka; 3-4a (-fikerera 66-15; -fíkama, 8-3)	- i.e. by pulling up trousers and closing knees to cover exposed part.
- up, hide split in trousers	kukunyámbedha 7, 2a	
fig.- up, hide guilt	-vúva muránda	He covered his guilt by bribing witnesses = gha yuvire muranduwendí kukuhambutha hatunungi ghomcho
3. - protect body when moving about	kukukáva 7	She covered her body against the cold with a blanket = gha kukavire yiramayendi no ngugho apa gha yuvire mepo.

COVER (cont)

4. - extend over, lie 2. -yérana (1.enough)

strew thoroughly -hārañanya 13-18
(also of manure
covering garden)
- spread over, as water
on garden -tjākera 6-5c

A mat covered the floor of the hut = disharo
dyo yeranine ghupapati ghondhugho.
They covered the floor with ant hill earth =
ha harañanyine ghupapati mumuve ghothighuru.

They covered the surface of the ground of the
garden with water = ha tjakerire peghuru dhomuve
mudipya nomeyu.

5. var. - in, fill in (cp.
cultivate) -tūthera
- with gun, point gun
at -négha noghūta
covering letter mbapira dho
thinongonona
10/6(16)

They covered in the grave = ha tutherire mbira.

i.e. explanatory letter with enclosure.

COVER (2)

1. thing that covers thifkitho 7/8
lid muhúko 3/10(4)
binding of book thiwanga tho
mbapira 7/8
2. hiding-place mahorekero /6
refuge mayápero /6
shelter ghutara 14/6
3. to take -, hide
oneself (kukuhōreka, 14)
kūnda
to break - of animals -yūkuka koyiyāma

see HIDING PLACE.

i.e. to leap out of hiding-place and run

COVERING n

1. any kind of - thifkitho 7/8
- of head, in rain makukúriho /6
head - túku to kumútwi
10/6(10)

e.g. apron dikéhe 5/6 (thiváta 7/8) veil dishíre 5/6

see NAPKIN

COVET vt

- desire eagerly usually
another's belongings -rumbera

"You shall not covet your neighbour's wife"
(Ex. 20; 17) = "Ewa rumbera muna
munyendhenu"

COVETOUS a

- desiring eagerly what
belongs to another -rumbera
grasping -kwáterera
avaricious, see
AVARICIOUS -yūthaghura

COVETOUSNESS n

- unlawful desire yirumbera /8
avarice yiyūthaghura /8 see AVARICE

COW n

- female of bovine animals ngómbé jo
mukádhi la(9)/2(9), 10 see also CATTLE, HELPER
-totem dikádhimu 5/6 to low, moo, of cow - see MCCO -kúmba
- that is pregnant, or ndema see CALF. to swell of -'s teats, when about to
with one calf la(9)/6(9) calve 2. -shísha (1. erect)

COW (cont)

- with two or more calves 'ngómbé 1a(9)/10
- who has just calved 'ngómbé yomandana 1a(9)/10 see CALVE
- kept at home for milking 'ngómbé zo kukama 1a(9)/10 see MILK
- first milk of - after calving dihēnga 5/6
- to separate calf from -, after milking -pāngura remove rope from cow's nostrils 1. -pweyura (2. remove thing from hole)
- to die, of long sick - 2. -fūghuka (1. corpse) 3-4b
- to kill long sick - 2. -fūghura (1. corpse)
- boy mung'ighu gho 'ngómbé 1
- dung- see DUNG rutoko 11/.
- herd, one looking after grazing cows mūka kuditha 'ngómbé
- manure - see MANURE dirōmbo 5/

COWARD n

- person who is afraid esp. of doing mwōma 1/

COWARDICE n

- fear wōma 11/

COVER vi

- crouch, in fear, see CROUCH -nyōngama

COW-POX n

- disease on cow's teats yikōrwa yo mambūngo- gho ngōmbe gho mere /8

COY a

- shy, modest, usually of girl kúfa hōnyi She is coy = kufa ghana kufa honyi

CRACK n (1)

- 1. sudden, sharp noise of whip, thunder kwānduka 15 Also of sharp blow on head.
- of gunshot ndwangu 10/6(16)
- of broken plates -ngcandumuka 13
- 2. split, - in wall, ground mūfa 3/
- partial fracture in wood thipāyuka 7/8
- in foot -payaghuka maña This is when a person is not used to wearing shoes.

CRACK (2) vt. vi.

- make sharp noise, eg. - whip kwāndura tjūpa
- nut -tenda ndōngo
- of ground nuts, beans kukutūngawera nyima, makunde 11-7,23
- of a boy's voice 2. -horama (1. adolescent) His voice has cracked = diyaridjanti nga di horama

CRACK (cont)

- , of smeared floor kúfa ghupapāti also of wooden vessel - kúfa karónge
- , in ground or wall kúfa mumúre kúfa mumudhúdu . Also of pot by fire - kúfa kumudíro
- , in earth floor, causing earth to come away -yóndaghoka 3-11 - of container, vessel - pāgha thishimbero
- , causing plaster, to come away from wall -yóndaghoka 3-11
- , of a plank -yátuka thikúngu 13
- , of a skin -yeruka thikúmba 3-4b
- , in a straight line -payuka murúnda 3, 4b

CRACKLE vi

- make slight cracking noise as boiling fat -túkaghuka 15/3-7-11 komaghadhi
- make slight cracking noise as roasted mealies 2. kwíra (1. boil)

CRAFT n

- 1. skill ghundōndoro 14/
- 2. cunning, deceit ghuringiringi 14/
- 3. handicraft thirughana thonyára 7/8

CRAFTY

- cunning, artful, wily ghuringiringi 14

CRAFTSMAN n

- skilled workman mundōndoro 1/2

CRAG n

- steep and rugged rock díwe dyo
thikanduko dyo
dingónda 5/6

CRAM vt. vi.

- 1. fill overfull -yárittha thikúma 4-2b
- fig. - for examination -yárittha yikuhónge (lit. 'fill the head with learning')
mumátwi 4-2b
- 2. eat greedily kúdyá thikúma
- stuff poultry with food -kórera shúshwa thikúma
- 3. force thing down into container thindera thínu
muthishimbero

CRAMP

- 1. contraction of muscles through pain -ghāngera thípa His muscles have painful cramp = thipo thendi tha
tjítju ghangere kutjítju
see CONTRACT
- suffer from - -rēnga thípa gho kudhira kutara
- 2. cramped handwriting, hard, to make out mutjāngo ghoghúyi
3/

CRANE n (1)

- large, wading bird; crowned - dífwāwāri 5/6

- CRANE (cont)
wattled - muhōrori 3/6
- CRANE (2) vt.
stretch, neck, like a - -kōkoka
- CRASH n (1)
noise of broken crockery ngcērengceru 10/
noise of broken calabash, waterpot mabwayukero /6
noise of thunder kwanduka 15
- CRASH (2) vi
make noise of broken crockery -ngcērengcēruka
make noise of broken calabash, waterpot -bwāyuka
make noise of thunder -kwanduka 3-4b crashed - bwāju
- CRATE n
open work wooden case thikēsha tho yitōndo 7/8
- CRAVE vt. vi.
beg for -kūmbera
long for -rūmbera
- CRAWL vi
move slowly, dragging body along ground -kōkawa -, of a lorry, moving slowly - -kōkawithera 10, 8
-writhing, twisting, as snake kukuthēta 7 -kokawera 14-23
-creep miserably home -tēnyengera kudighūmbo He was convicted of lying and was ashamed; he crawled miserably home = gha ndjondjwagharire thikama gha tenyengeere kudighūmbo
- when swimming (simply 'swim') -yōghana
- to be crawling with - i.e. on the surface of -yēndaghura 11/ The meat was crawling with maggots = marongwandhi kuyendaghura ghana kuyendaghura pēghuru dhonyama
see ALIVE 3
- CRAYONS npl.
coloured blackboard chalks mbōyo dho
rudhi 10/6(10)
- CRAZE n
(activity in which everyone engages till they tire of it) thipita 7/8 There is now a craze for beating drums = kwa kara keho thipita tho kushika mangoma
- CRAZY a
mad -ghūndumuka N.B. a crazy fellow 1. thighūndumuki (thipuku - Sets.) 7/8 2. muka mundāngare 1/2
(-puka. sets.) 3. thighughūru 7/8
- CREAK (1) n
noise of uncoiled hinges, new shoes kwēghekwege 12/
- CREAK (2) vi
to - , make the noise -tēnda kwēghekwege vt. make - -shika (nom. -shika = play drum)

- CREAM n
oily part of milk maghádhi gho
- from milk-curds rushiku /6
mböfu (ngondive, Her) /10
- CREASE n. vt. vi
wrinkle. see WRINKLE ghönyangera 10/6-5c
- CREATE vt
bring into existence 1. kúmba (2. motion (1)) I have created = ninúmbu; he created = ghómbire,
he created him = gha númbire.
- CREATION n
act of creating thúmbe 7/ - of the world thúmbo tho káye 7/8
- CREATOR n
The One who CREATES múmbi 1/
- CREATURE n.
created thing thúmbe 7/8 a living - thúmbe tho thiyúmi 7/8
- CREDENTIALS n.pl
letters of introduction mambapira gho The Ambassador presented his credentials to the
thishémwapitha President = mutumi gha tapire mambapira gha
/6 ndi ghothishémwapitha kwakutungi
- CREDIT n.
1. belief thitáwa 7/8 The chief gave credit to the man's story =
trust thikukánya 7/8 fumu gha tawire thitongonoma thomurume
2. good reputation, good name dína dya díwa 5/6
3. give - to, express appreciation of -kúgha (lit. praise) Give him the credit for having done a good job =
see ACKNOWLEDGE 3 mu kughe yoyishi nga rughana yirughana yoyiwa
4. trust person to pay kúpa yitè re nothikurupera The storekeeper gave him credit till he received
kufuta muyi (lit. his wages = mughurithi gha mu pipe yitè re
give goods in nothikurupera kufuta muyi gho gha kutambure
the hope of payment yitamoura yendi.
on them)
- CREDIT vt.
1. believe -táwa
2. - amount of money to -tjánga thivarero I will credit this amount to your account =
mumbapira fanyi na kutjange thivarero thi
(lit. 'write down mumbapira dhoye dhomanyinga.
sum on paper')
3. - person with -táwa no I credit him with enough sense to do this = nina
tawa eshi gha kara nojikuywa yoparara kuthitenda
- CREDITABLE a
that which brings credit róghera kothifúmaneka
6-8 Your honesty in this matter is very creditable =
(lit. 'deserving of ghughororoka ghoye kuthitenda thi ne
honour') kuroghera kothifumaneka
- CREDITOR n
one to whom debt is owing múka kumukōrota
muránda 1/2 nunu ghokudyo mukúdi, 1/2
- CREDULOUS a
too ready to believe anything --róghera thikúma
-táwa kehéthi

- CREED n
set of beliefs yitāwa /8
- CREEP vi
1. move with body close to ground -kókawa (crawl)
2. move slowly stealthily, stalk -hōndāghedha 5-2a -or, if crawling, -kókawera, 23
- CREEPER n
plant creeping along ground -thitāneka tho kudhīngera 7/8 stalk of - kaghodhi 12/13
- CREST n.
1. comb of bird, cock mukerengéngé 3/
2. top of hill mūtwi ghodindundu 3/10(4)
3. - of wave mūtwi gho dingūmbi 3/10(4)
4. mane of lion, horse mungūmbi 3/6
- CREVICE n
crack in ground, split, chink, fissure mūfa ghomúve 3/
- CREW n
body of men manning boat dikóngá dyo wáto 5/6
- CRICKET n
jumping insect, chirping in evening ndjēnene 1a(9)/2(9),6(9)
- CRIME n
breaking of law thirégha tho veta evil act ghúyi, 14/ sin dihárwero, 5/6
- CRIMINAL n
one who breaks the law mūka kurégha veta 1/2
- CRIMSON a
deep red colour ghukíhu thikúma
- CRINGE vi
1. cower - see COWER -nyōngama nowōma
2. bow as servant, fawn -fumbera see CROUCH
- CRINKLE vt.
1. twist - see TWIST -dhinga
2. wrinkle see WRINKLE -ghonyangeritha 4-2b Don't crinkle that paper! = wa ghonyangeritha mbapira dhiya !
- CRIPPLE (1) n
1. lame person nūnu gho kutēghena 1/2 see LAMB
2. disabled - in, any way mūka kukákatera 1/2 see DISABLE
- CRIPPLE (2) vt
1. lame -tēghenitha 4-2b He crippled his enemy's horse = gha teghenithire mbi yañorewendi

CRIPPLE (cont)

2. disable

-gítapitha 4-2b

He crippled the enemy's army by silencing their
guns = gha gítapithire hakawo hohafire ko
kuporereritha mataghawo.

3. impair = weaken

-kāshitha
4-2b

The injury to his arm crippled his power to
fight = thiremana thodyoko dyendi tha kashithire
ngcamu dhendi kurwa.

CRISIS n

moment of danger

ruwédhe ro
ghuréma 11/6(11) LT - dithidyañoro, 5/6

CRITIC n

one who makes a judgment

mupānguri (=judge) or mūka kuyédhekera ('one who considers') 1/2
1/2

one who censures another

mughamberi 1/2 see CENSURE

CRITICAL a

1. fault-finding-see BLAME

-hānyena
gho ghuréma

2. risky, dangerous

The patient is in a critical condition = mukatjitju
gha kara mumemano ghoghurema.

CRITICISM n

1. judgment

mbanguro 10/6(10)
(considered opinion thiyedhekera 7) ghuṣāngwero 14 M.T.
thighambera 7/8
thihānyena 7/8

2. censure

3. finding of fault

CROAK vi

to utter shrill sound
of small frog.

-yuma shika kafūruru

- of bull frog, deep -
after heavy rain

-yuma shika dihéthi When pools are full after heavy rain. this is
followed by ! - see FROG

CROCODILE n

large reptile living on
land and water

ngándi 1a(9)/2(9), 10 syn. macāva /6 (two- ha- 2) smell of - dithēnde 5/
wv. to plunge into water, as - -dābwama

to surface only to breathe -yūnenekédha

strike with tail, of a - kútjukútja 10

syn. yūnyumekédha 3/5-13, 2c.

crush with teeth, as a - kwándura

snap teeth as - -shēra

CROOK n

1.

dighóndo 5/6

2. band, curve

thipéta 7/8

3. rogue

muringiringi 1/2

swindler

4. crook-back, hunch-back mūnu gho kafuto 1/2

CROOKED a

1. not straight

mbadi dhā-ghōroroka; - bent thipéta; twisted thikudhinga dhinga

w.v. be -

-pēnga-pēnga 10. make - -petitha 4-2b

2. to be deformed

kūmba ghūyi (lit.
'made badly')

3. bent with age

-pēta no kukurupara

a. 4. dishonest

ghungure

CROP n (1)

1. bird's pouch, below throat duyero 5/6 N.B. this is to prepare food for digestion
 2. produce of cultivated land kwinda 15
 total seasonal yield of corn, harvest mutjoro (reaping) - mukesho (gathering) 3/10(4)
 3. cut hair short - of person -kurura
 cut hair short - of animal -teta

CROP (2) vt. vi.

1. -, of animals, to eat top of plants -dyera kuwinu dhoyitapeka 6-5c - of cattle - see BROWSE: - of goat, giraffe.
 2. reap -tjora; 1. -mburukuta (2. crunch)
 - gather - kasha
 3. cut short hair of person -kurura
 cut short hair of animal -teta

CROSS (1) n

- stake with cross-bar used formally for crucifixion thikurushe 7/8

CROSS (2) vt. vi

1. to place cross-wise -tjirananiha 9/4-2b
 2. make sign of - -tenda thiragha thikurushe
 3. cross out, cancel 2. dhimangadha (1. obliterate;
 3. (silence) 4. Banish see CANCEL (MT. -dhimununa incorrect - see 'postpone')
 4. go across road, river (by bridge) -tjinana - border into another country -taghurukera 3/6-4b,5c
 - river in a canoe regha rware; Crossing - place in canoe maraghero 6
 5. meet and pass people kukuhangana no 7 I crossed him on the way here = na khangane nendi mundhiré kuno
 - of messages, letters 3-pingadhana 9-6b
 (2. meet 1; 1. alter- Our messages crossed. I sent a message to you before I received yours = yiragha yetu ya ku pingadhanine. Na tumine thiragha kukoye ghoku badi na tamburire thoye.
 -nate)

cross the minds = occur to

-ghayara

It crossed my mind that you might forget = na ghayarire eshi pamwe ghu vurame

CROSS (3) a

angry ghupata

CROSS-BEAM n

pole crossing width of building mutambo 3/10(6) i.e. horizontally = put - in fork of upright pole -pateka 3-4a

CROSS-PIECE n

sapling across rafters, paline dikohwa 5/6
 - for entrance door thitata 7/8
 - for bed ghuhagha 14/6(14)

CROSS-EXAMINE vt

examine court witnesses kwipurakwipura 10

- CROSS-QUESTION** vt
question witnesses thoroughly-totomitha 4-2b (Sets.)
- CROSSING** n
place for - road makutjīnaneno ghó
mayirá /6
- CROSS-LEGGED** a
squat, - see SQUAT kukutumbata 7
sit, - kukuvinda maghuru 7
- CROSS-PURPOSES** n.pl
speak at - misunderstand kukungondana OC 7
each other
act at - tēnda yīnu yo We are at cross-purposes. You are letting the
kukupirukera cattle out while I am trying to drive them in
= twaheya kutenda yinu yo kukupirukera.
kuyandhurura ghura kuyandhurura ngombe ghoku
kuyereka nina kuyereka kudhingeneka muhambo
- CROSS-ROAD** n
road crossing another 'ndhīrá dho
kutjīnana dhimweya
10/6(10)
n.pl. intersection of two mahāngayirá ghondhīrá
roads
- CROSS-STITCH** n
stitch made by two crossing
each other yifuma ghoyi /8 -yina tjīnana yihéya
- CROUCH** vi
1. stoop, bend, to hide oneself see COWER, CRINGE -nyōngama She crouched in fear behind the bush = gha
nyongamine muryima dhothipumbu nowoma.
2. - down of lion before pouncing -fūrumana The lion crouched down before he pounced on
his prey = nyime gha furumanine ghoku
badi gha pumanenine pathiyama thendi
- CROW** (1) n
large, black bird ideo dikórova 5/6
- CROW** (2) n.
1.-cry of cock kwīgha 15 (cp. kwiya= come)
cock-crow, time when murūghura 3/ syn. mā kayathiku. /6
cock crows yihéka yoyishógherera
2. joyful cry of infant yokakeke /8
- CROW-BAR** n
iron bar used as lever mut jekēra 3
- CROWD** (1) n
multitude, large number of people mbūnga 10/6(10) Place where crowd is collected dihānga 5/6
- CROWD** (2) vi. vt.
1. collect, in a crowd kúkukōnga, OC-7 see ASSEMBLE, COLLECT, GATHER
to be going to a place kuku kongana 7,5b
of a crowd
go to a place where crowd has collected -mbūnga

CROWD (2) (cont)

- collect, in large numbers to be crowded together -pūndumana 9-6a
 2. - be together in small space -vūvura
 - be together thickly small space -kára muthinda The people crowded the courtyard = haguva karire muthinda mudirapa.
 see CRUSH (1) 4 (r-thinda = press hard) "The people crowded upon him to hear the word of God" (Luke 5; 1) = haguva ha thindarakanyine paghutho wendi kuyuva maywi ghaNambi"
 - press upon each other kukuthundathunda They crowded upon each other = ha kuthundathundire haheya.
 - round a person, encircle OC 7, 10 They crowded round him = ha mu dhangire
 - upon, catching hold with hands -dhinga
 -pōngerera 66-14 They crowded upon the thief = ha pōngererire mwidhi

CROWN (1) n

1. king's head-covering of gold, jewels thitēngena 7/8
 chief's circlet of cowrie-shells māthi /6
 2. - of quills, of dancers on hand dingūmbi 5/6 If on shoulders, mangūmbi /6 - if round waist, rudāve 11/6(11)
 3. - top part of head kambwimbwi 12/13

CROWN (2) vt.

1. place - on person's head -tēngeneka 3-4a
 put on, wear - -tēngena
 2. reward -tāpa thikutumēritha

CRUCIFIX n

- image of Christ on cross thifāneko thakristus
 pa thikurushe 7/8

CRUCIFIXION n

- putting to death by 2. kwāmba (1. stretch 3) syn. kwīndakanya (N.B. mapāmarero = nailing; -pamarera kuthikurushe.

CRUCIFY vt.

- fastening to a cross (lit. 'stretch out taut, as e.g. skin') = to nail to the cross
 tree of crucifixion ditōndo dyo
 kwīndakanya 5/

CRUEL a

1. hard, callous - see ghukūkutu i.e. unkind, not caring for another's pain; even delighting in it.
 CALLUS ghukénya He was so cruel to his wife that she ran away = gha karire ghukanya ngeno kwamunuwendi eshi gha tjirire.
 2. treat another unkindly

CRUELTY n

- n. hardness thikūkutu 7
 w.v. without feelings -pira makuyūvo.

CRUELTY (cont)

2. unkind treatment of
another ghukénya

CRUMBS n.pl.

(small fragment, esp. of bread) yighuferere 14/8 (14)
irr. pl. "The dogs eat the children's crumbs" (Mark 7:28)=
see FRAGMENT syn. fukumuna 10/6(10) mbwaghana ghana dyanga yighufefere yawanuke

CRUMBLE vi.

break, fall into fragments -pwéra ku ghufefere
(of bread) 6-5c The bread is crumbling = mborotwa dhi ne kughufefere
break, fall into fragments dhina kupwera
of clay pot kúpa muyipára The clay pot crumbled into pieces = kanyungu ka
pwire muyipára.

CRUMPLE vt.

crease, wrinkle -ghōnyangera
see WRINKLE

CRUNCH vi. vt.

1. crush with teeth, 2. -mbúrukuta (1. browse)
noisily
2. grind under foot
eg. gravel -ndjāma -yikarawe

CRUSE n

earthenware, pot, jar of liquid mutéko 3/10(4) "The cruse of oil shall not fail" (1 Kings 17:14)
="Muteko ghomaghadhi mbadi sho gha kangere"

CRUSH (1) vt. vi.

1. squeeze to break, bruise -djātdjāta 10
squeeze with teeth, as kwāndura He crushed the snake's head = gha djatadjatire
as crocodile mutwi ghodyoka
 - squeeze head with thumbnail e.g. insect -thōghonya
 - squeeze soft object, eg. pumpkin -hōghorora Also; egg shell, fly
 - squeeze - in hands for extracting liquid -kāma -eg. egg. fruit; also = milk
 2. corn by stamping on ground -púra -corn by pounding in stamping pot, see POUND
-kúwa
 - stones -gcārura māwe
 3. - accidentally - person's lingers indoor -thāvarakanya 3/13(18) see SQUEEZE 3.
 - accidentally, as by falling tree -thāvarakanya 3/13(18)
 4. - of one person between two others -thīndarakanya 3/13-18 -person against e.g. a wall -thōva
- see CROND (2) 2
5. - to powder, see PULVERISE
 6. subdue, overwhelm -pītereritha 66/4- He seized power and crushed all opposition = gha
15, 2b kwatire ghutungi gha pitererithire yikušana
yoyihe.

CRUSH (2) n

prefix thi-
before vv. acc. to meaning

CRUST n

- hard surface of porridge dihoño dyo
dimbombo 5/6
- hard layer at bottom, and
on sides of porridge pot mathirudhi /6
- outer covering of Earth;
Earth's - thifikama tho kaye 7

CRUTCH n.

1. staff for lame person thiyénditho 7/8 Pair of crutches = mayénditho /6
support for lame person mayéghemeno /6
2. of human body, where the
legs meet nāmo 10/

CRY (1) n

1. loud, wordless utterance
of grief, pain, fear, joy thidira 7/8
syn. madiro /6 -when insect bites tjú !
2. battle-cry thidira thómvo 7/8 triumphant cry of warriors kahūmuhūmu 12/13
- excited - at fight, some
trying to separate fighters kayóghoyógho 12/13
3. appeal, entreaty - see
APPEAL thikānderera 7/8
- of oppressed thikāmbekerera 7/8
4. of women, greeting one
not seen for long time kakādikādi 12/13 Especially of old women, when girl becomes
adolescent - kakādikādi 12/13

CRY vt. vi. (2)

1. make loud utterance -
exclaim (or crowd) -yóngora see EXCLAIM
- out to someone for away
see CALL 1. -tāmbekera 6-5b - out to one another e.g. enquiringly -dirangana
10/9-9,6a
- out in anger, fear kukūgherera syn.
14
- out as a crowd kukūyerera 14.
- out as victorious
soldiers, dancing women kukūhūwerera 14
- out very loudly, in pain -vūruma thikūma
- out as animal mauled by
lion -bōkwera or as animal is being slaughtered.
2. weep; wail, cry piteously -dīra continuously - dīradīra 10
- with eyes full of tears -dīra thingwédhimá -silently, tearfully- ngwédhimá
- as a baby -bōrana -all the time, of a baby - bōrana bōrana 10
- much, as a cross child -ndéghana -of one baby to another - gáyana 9-6a
- want to cry -gheghemena
- begin to cry 1. kwandura (2.speak)
- go up, of - of anguish kwimanganya 10/13, 18 "A great cry of anguish went up" (Ex.12;30) =
gho thidiro tho kuyumbuka " thidiro thothikuru tho kuyumbuka mutjima
mutjima ho themanganyine."

CUB n

- young of wild animal mbwāwa 3/10(4) (= young jackal); but N.B. hyaena cub = dimbūngwana
(formed by adding -chana)

CUCKOO n

- bird laying eggs in other
bird's nests mukūku 3/10 (4) One member of - family, COUCAL, which see;
MUKURU ideo. of -'s call.

CUD n;w.vv

- chew - chew food brought back
from first stomach -yóvonga especially of cow, after grazing.

- CUD (cont)
fig. chew the - reflect,
ponder -yōnga dighāno see PONDER, REFLECT
- CUDGEL n
short stick with knob,
used as weapon murāmu 3/10(4) (Sets. tovāni)
- CUFF vt.
strike with fist -pūmura nodikōnye strike, slap, with palm of hand -ngcāmbura
- CULPRIT n.
one who has broken the
law. mūka -rēgha One who has done wrong muka -tēnda ghūyi 1/2
veta 1/2
- CULTIVATE vt. v.
till the ground -dīma with hoe only, sowing, and covering with foot
(tūthera) - kānā (2. break 4.)
- CULTIVATION n
tilling of land thidīma 7/8
- CULTIVATOR n
one who cultivates mūka-dīma 1/2
implement for cultivating thirugānitho tho
-dīma 7/8
- CULTURE
1. tillage thidīma 7/8
2. development of mind thitjo 7/8
- CULVERT n
channel for carrying water mukōgha gho 3/10(4) - yēnditha méyu kūshi dhōndhirá
- CUNNING n.s.
1. artful, crafty ghurīngirīngi 14
2. able, skilful ghundondoro 14
- CUP n
drinking - vessel (Gc-ngānda)
beer-cup kōpi(E)la(9)/6(9) anything for drinking water with - thinwītho 7/8
cup-bearer pagāna 10/6(10)
cup handle mushimoi gho kōpi
1/2
mukoré 3/10(4)
- CUPBOARD n
cabinet for vessels or
food thikēsha tho
yitēre endi yīdya 7
- CUPIDITY n
covetousness, greed of
gain yiyūthaghura /8 see AVARICE, COVETOUSNESS
- CURB n (1)
1. horse's rein see REIN mīya dho tōmu /10(4)
2. check, restraint on
person thikōtora 7/8
- CURB (2) vt.
1. check, restrain horse -āāā mbi
2. check, restrain person -kōtora

- CURDS** n.pl.
solidified milk
cream from
mánhwe gho vóta/6
maghadhi
(Her. ngóndive) gho
mánhwe vóta /6
- CURDLE** vt. vi.
form into curds
-vóta
- CURE** n (1)
1. remedy for disease
2. success with - of
doctor
ghuwānga 14/6(14)
thipānga 7/8
success with -, of lay healer thipóritha 7/8
- CURE** (2) vt. vi.
1. restore to health of
doctor
2. - preserve meat by
salting
- preserve meat by
drying
-pānga
kwírukitha 4-2b to be cured, of African doctor kwíruka 3-4b
kwírúkitha muka
kughūramuka 4-2b see HEAL
-tóva
ku kukútitha to make biltong -hāngarura 66-14
4-7,2b
- CURIOSITY** n
1. desire to know
2. inquisitiveness
thishāna tho-dímuka
7/8
thithípudhura 7/8 As a person peers through a window to see what
another is doing.
- CURIOUS** a
1. eager to learn
2. be inquisitive
3. surprising
-shāna kukuhōnga
kwípudhura (r. kwípura
= question) 6-20
-yóvora syn. -tétora
- CURL** (1) n
1. twist of the hair
2. thing that curls
spirally
3. - of lip to express
scorn
thithéta tho húki
7/8
thikudhíngera 7/8
thifútha tho
muromo 7/8
- CURL** (2) vt. vi.
1. - hair
2. - spirally eg. smoke
3. - lips in scorn
4. - up, of leaves, in
heat of sun
- up bringing knees
up of person
- up of dog
when lying down
-théta húki
kukudhínga 7
-fútha mirōmo
-kasha
kukuhōnya 7
-péta péta 10
The smoke curled upward from the fire = mwithi gha
kudhingire ghomudiro
He curled his lip with scorn at the idea = gha
futhire muromowendi nothinyatha thodighano
- CURRENT** n.
wild, seedless fruit, from
which 'khadi' derived
mungóvo /10(4)

CURRENCY n
money used in a country manyinga ghogha ha
rughanitha /6 - mu ditunga

CURRENT n
running stream rwareghana ro
kupupa 11/6(11)
paddle with - in boat -voghedha rorure paddle against - -dika
5-2a

CURSE (1)
1. utterance of evil thikuto 7/8 syn.
nuta 10/6(10)
2. blasphemous, profane oath thikwedha tho
thituka 7/8
3. thing lying under a curse thinu muthi person who is accursed muka thikuto 1/2
thikuto
thinengenine, 7/8

CURSE (2) vt. vi.
1. utter curse against person -kuta N.B. this is for doing something bad; syn. -
ghanda syn. 2. -ghandura (1. drive 4)
- put evil on a person -kuya
- oneself 1. kukukuta 7
(2. employ)
- each other kukukuya haheya - another person continuously 1. -tukathana
(2. desecrate) 9-20
2. blaspheme -tuka utter swear words - see SWEAR -nyukwera.
- and swear -thupena no
kwedha
- strike ground and - -hongaghura
15/6-11
"Peter began to curse and to swear" (Mark 14:7)=
"Petrus gha tangire kwendi kuthupena no kwedha "

CURTLY adv.
discourteously brief He answered me curtly = gha ni huthire ghufupi
see BRIEFLY thikuma

CURTAIN n
hanging cloth as screen thifeyereritho 7/8 spread out - -tandununa 99-15
w.v. draw aside - to reveal -kokerera kumbadi draw back - to reveal - -kokerera kumbadi
munyima 6-5c paghutho 6-5.c

CURVE (1) vt. vi.
bend to form - -poteka 3-4a

CURVE (2) n
line which not straight but partly circular thipeta 7/8 e.g. - like a sickle - thipeta tho sokero 7/8

CUSHION n. (1)
1. soft material stuffed into covering for comfort; pillow muthato 3/10(4)
2. - pad for head, when carrying object on head ata 10/6(10)

CUSHION vt.
1. - head with pillow -thatera 6-5c
2. - head with pad for carrying -thata ata

CUSTODY n

1. care - see CARE n. 3 thikúnga 7/8
 2. imprisonment; hold in- -shínga mukashítiko He is being held in custody = ha shingire mukashitiko
 3. arrest; take into - -kwáta I am taking you into custody = kukwata nina ku kukwata.

CUSTOM n.

1. usual practice muhíngo 3/10(4) This is the custom in this country = ghothi ne ghomuhingo muditunga di.
 2. ancient - having force of law muhíngo gho karekare shika veta 3/10(4)
 3. tax, duty on imports entering a country mutéro ghoyitère 3/10(4) yo yingēnekitha ditunga

CUSTOMARY a

1. usual - see USUAL yíra pakāre
 2. according to custom shika muhíngo

CUSTOMER n

- buyer mughūri 1/2

CUSTOM-HOUSE n

- office where customs duty is collected mbēreggho gho miterola(9)/6(9)

CUT (1) n.

1. act of cutting - prefix. THI. to RAD. of appropriate verb
 2. stroke, blow with knife, sword to wound thirémeka 7/8
 3. piece of meat cut off joint, a - thinóko 7/8
 4. short - crossing to shorten distance -vāvanganya 10/13-9/18 They took a short cut through the field = ha vavanganyine dipya

CUT (2) vt. vi.

1. cut with instrument - wound -rémeke 3-4a The knife cut his finger = moko ghina remeka munwewendi
 wound oneself with instrument kukurémeke 3-7,4a He cut his finger with a knife = ghana kuremeke munwewendi nomoko
 divide in two, with knife 1. -páyura (2.chop) This applies to materials and lashings for building poles.
 - an object with blade -rēngumuna 8/9-15 -With big knife or hoe -këshura
 2. what is cut - meat, string (with one cut) - poles -tjīghuna; (with continuous cutting) -tjīnaghura 15/6-11
 -téta yitondo -meat for cooking; - straight at end of log, pencil, candle -tétaghura 15/6-11
 -shāha -yikungu
 -pūtura dípya6-5c -reins into thin strips -djādjaghura múya 15/6-11
 -djadjaghura ngodhi 15/6-11
 - off twigs, shoots, old corn -tjéngura katoghana -mahokerekedhi, makoko
 - grass, eg. for thatching -vūdha mūhonyi gho kupamera

CUT (cont)

-reeds

1. tēma mbu (2. pluck
leaves)

-open reeds

-tēndhá mbu

collect and -vegetables

-tēma rwithi

-pumpkin for cooking

-kēyera mangádi

-peel of water-melon with
knife

-tērura katjama

-in a circle, as with

-tērura mīya

-hole in patch

-páyura dimbórwa
muthirívo-length from material to
give to another

-tjīwena

3. Carve Meat - see MEAT

- up meat with knife

-tjínaghura 15/6-11

- up meat for cooking,
with knife

tétaghura 15/6-11

- up meat into joints

(-rókurúra-gets. 15)

-up meat into small pieces for mincing- tétaghura

- off shoulder from
carcass

-ghoyaghura 15-11 ghumbirumbiru 15/6-11

(1. - Wagha (2. notch) syn -tétaghura)

-dhókoka dipéghe
nyama

- down by backbone

kungéngena thishokóra
thómughóngo- lengthwise down
middle

-yátura

-straight down middle

-páyaghura pakátji
15/6-11

-down animal's stomach

-vóra

- open a roasted kid

-píthe nōmboghāna gho

-pōna 4-2b

carve meat - into long
strips

-páyaghura 15/6-11

- into thin strips to
dry

-hāngurura 66-15

N.E. This is for making biltong - see BILTONG

- into thick pieces

-tjīmura

4. - hair with scissors-

-kúrura

Shave hair - See SHAVE: HAIR 3, -ñūshura

see HAIR

-kēra

- off all a person's

hair

5. fig. and idio. - to the

heart, gurt -

-yúvitha tjítju

His daughter's words cut him to the heart=maywi ghawwanendi

4-2b

gha mu yuvithire tjitju kumutjima

kumutjima

- a tooth, i.e. let
it appear through gum

-hókoka gho

My baby is cutting a tooth = kambututu kange ka

diyegho,

kara nodiyegho gho oi dina kuhokoka

mughuthighinyi

mughuthighinyi

-, reduce wages

-tépura yitāmbura

-, reduce prices

-shúrutha mughúro

They made the storekeeper cut the price of salt=

5-2b

mughurithi gha shuruthira mughuro ghomungwa

-, a loss = sell out
business in good time

-thígha

He has cut his losses by selling the store =

yishinyehera

nga thighi yishinyehera yendi ku mughuritha
thitoro

CUTLASS n

bush-knife

dikerevére or dikúve

5/6

see BUSHKNIFE

CUTLERY n.pl.

knives and forks

mamoko gho tíshi

no maforoko /6

CUTLET n

small piece of meat

thinóro, 7/8

mutóra gho nyama 3/10(4)

CUTTER n.

one who cuts mūka + v. inf. see CUT vt.vi.

one who cuts meat in

mūka marombe 1/

chiefs backyard

D.

DAGGA n			
Indian hemp	rumbāndhe 11/	Dagga - pipe	mbīya dhorumbāndhe 10/6(10)
DAILY adv			
every day	kehe diyūwa		
DAINTY n.			
choice morsel, delicacy of food	thimīngwa 7/8		
DALLY vi.			
1. linger, loiter on way	kukurānga 7	The driver dallied at the beer-shop on the way =	
2. be very late in starting work	-rāngapa 16	muhingi gha kurangire muthitora thomarovu murdhira. see DELAY, LINGER, LOITER	
DAM n (1)			
barrier to hold back water	mavúkero gho		
	kwīghura meyu /6		
barrier to stop the flood	mavúkero gho	syn. mukaño (see RETAIN 1.) 3/10(4)	
	kwīmekā kuhandju /6		
water confined by dam	mēyu ghoghu gha		
	yāndherera mavúkero /6		
DAM vt. (2)			
confine with dam	-yāndherera nomavúkero		
	66-15		
block up, obstruct	-vūka syn. -kāñera	see BAR	
DAMAGE (1) n			
1. harm, injury, lessening value	thirémāna 7/8	I cannot sell the ox with this damage to its leg =	
2. legal damages, compensation	yikúthera /8	mbadi na kona kughuritha hove nothiremana thi thoshongo thadho.	
		I claim damages for the injury to my reputation =	
		nina rombo yihuthera yoyiremana kudina dyenge dyodiwa	
DAMAGE (2) vt.			
1. injure to lessen value	-rémeka 4a		
2. take away reputation	-shwāghitha dīne dyodiwa 4-2b	His speech has damaged the Government = fāndo dhendi kwawaguva nga dhi shwāghitha dina dyodiwa dyoFurumende.	
DAMARAS n.pl.			
tribe of S.W. Africans, also called 'Herero'	ha-dāmara /2		
DAMP (1)			
a. slightly wet, cp. SOAKED	ghushūwi (cp. ghuyūri= soaked)	The ground is damp with dew = muve ne ghushuwi ghomume	
wv. make - moisten as dew	-shūwipitha (16), 2b		
DAMP vt. vi. (2)			
1.-down fire, heap on ashes to extinguish	-dhīmitha 4-2b	Damp down the fire before you leave = dhimithe mudiro ghoku badi ghuna yende	
2. discourage, depress e.g. hopes	-biragheritha 4-2b	This news has dampened my hopes = mbudhi dhi nga dhi biragheritha yikuruperayange	
DANCE vi. vt.			
1. move with rhythmic steps, glides, leaps	-kīna	cause to -	-kīnitha, 10

start drumming for dancing -ghūmbeka 3-4a,8
make a circle to - kukutenda yira
ditete
7, 14
divide into groups kukutaghura mu
nakita 11.
- with one another, in pairs kukushēra syn. (N.B. -shēwa - dandle child on knee)
kukushēwa 7
wana pakātji
kukuvirukera 6-7, 5b
dikāndero 5
tjātjarera 6-5c
tūkuka
(2. startle)
to meet in the centre
to turn back to back
centre where people -
to go to centre to -
strut like a cock
to desire to - 1. tūkuka
2. startle
Stop drumming for dancing -ghūmbura yikīna 6-8
Dismiss, break up - of the dance only
-ghūmburanga 10.-8, 9.
quiver, of men's legs when dancing 'dikare'
-pandadhoka 3-12
sway body, wiggle behind, wave arms while dancing =
-fwakura
When the dancers danced, he began to want to dance =
ghopa hana kini haka kukina, naye gho ghana
tūkuka ko kukina

a - n of v. DANCE	thikina 7/8	
- tune	dímbo 5/6	
noise of -, song and drums		
together	rwímbo 11/	
<u>kings of dance</u> - children	-shambandonga 10/-	
- girls' initiation	ghudyáho 14/	
- of man with two women		
and two drums	dipéra 5/	(this is for pleasure)
- with jangles on feet	thipéru	
	(nomutjokótjo)7	
African doctor's - to find		
cause of illness	diwāre 5/	
Rain Maker's -	réngo 11/	
Ha-Nyenga -	ghunyanga 14/	
ha-ibukushu -	mayashuma 6/	

one who dances	mukĩni 1/2	Late dancers	haka-tūkura 1/2
dancing diviner	mukĩni ngombi		
	mupũmbi 1/2		

dance small child on knee -shēwa

man of smart, flashy
appearance múka kukuyénga 1/2
man who shows off before
women múka -nénda 1/2

peril, risk - see RISK ghuréma
14/6(14)

exposed to -	peril, risk	gho ghuréma
-, of a wild animal		yifénu

1. be hanging and swaying -yēndhereritha ko His dead body dangled from the cross-beam =
 -sunga 66/4-15,2b mwina wendi kuyēndhereritha ko kuyanga kumala wendi.

DANGLE (cont)

2. hold out hopes, tempt -yēndhereritha
66/4-14, 2b

He dangled the money-bag before his eyes =
gha yēndhereritha ndjato dhomanyinga paghutho
dhomchoghendi

DARE vt.

1. have courage to, take risk, venture -yéreka
2. have the cheek, impudence to -kára yishéwe
3. defy, stand against kwímana ku
4. challenge, see CHALLENGE -shúpwera

He dared to hunt the lion alone = gha yerekire
kushana nyime pithendi

Do you dare insult me ? = a wa kara yishewe
kunituka ndi ?
He dared his anger = ghemanine kughupatawendi.

I dare you to do it = nina ku shupwera gho
thi tende

DARING n

- adventurous courage ghupáta gho
-yéreka 14/

DARK a

- with no light, gloomy makókore 6
'even when it is - around' runguro bwí muya id.
pitch -, so one has to
grope one's way makókore gho
-papatera 6

DARKEN vi

- become - -kára makókore
vt. make dark -fúyera

see GROPE
The hut darkened as he put out the light =
ndhugho dha karire makókore ghopa gha
dhimithire munenge
A black cloud darkened the sky = divuyi dyodiru
dya fuyerire diwira.

DARKNESS n

- state of being dark makókore /6
be in - after sunset
without light id. kumbombwa

-that may be felt makókore gho gha -yūvara /6

in the - after sunset, without light id.
muthimbombwa

stand in - see STAND 1

DARN vt.

- mend by interweaving,
esp. of knitting -rúka

see MEND

DART n

- pointed, light missile for
throwing dyóngá dyo
diredhu dyo
-kondha 5/6

DASH vt. vi.

1. shatter to pieces;
see SHATTER

-páyaghura 15/6-11 He dashed the pot to the ground = gha payaghurire
kanyungu pamuve .

2. drive away hurriedly -hínga -shwāgha no
tāmbukitha

He dashed away in a hurry = gha hingire kushwagha
kuno no kutambukitha

3. knock down -pūmwerera 66-15

He dashed the poisoned cup to the ground = gha
pumwererira kopi koghuhungu pamuve.

- knock = collide with -ngōngona pa

"lest you dash your foot against a stone"(ps. 91:12)
= "maghana ghuna ngongona dipadhi dyoye padive."

- DATE (1) n
fruit with one long stone mwimo gho ñone 3/6(3)
- DATE (2) n.
day in month of year diyúwa, 5 syn. (MT)
dátumu (S) 5/6
- DATE (3) vt. vi.
1. write - on letter -tjánga diyúwa mumbapíra
2. reckon - time -tára diyúwa, ruvédhe (lit. 'count the day, time')
- DAUB vt. vi.
1. coat well with plaster, -rāma mudhudhu Coat wall with paint -kúnya mudhúdhú
clay
2. smear surface with dung -kāta smear floor with dung and earth -rāmba pamáve
e.g. on floor ghondhugho
3. paint cursely -fáneka ghúyí see SMEAR
4. paint face, make up kukudoweka, 3-7, 4a Paint face with three marks on forehead
smear body with much -rāmbwera 14-23 -páyura katópe
oil
- DAUGHTER n
one's female child mwáná gho múkamadighāna
- in - law, son's wife nyékera 1a/2
- DAWN vi. n.
begin to get light in morning kúva ko diyúwa
reddening of sky at sun- kúkyá kodyúwa
rise, sunset kúva ko diyúwa 15
first light, daybreak (dayspring-poet)
place on horizon where sun appears meýero gho diyúwa /6
- DAY n
time when sun is above horizon diyúwa 5/6
1. cockerow to sunrise. cockrow murúghura 3/ syn see COCKCROW
makyathíku/6
- w.vy. begin journey between cockerow and dawn -méneka
dawn - see DAWN kúva ko diyúwa before dawn ghoku bádi dinávu
reddening of sky at sunrise, sunset kúkyá ko diyúwa see also SUN
2. morning to evening mathíkuthíku /6
morning.
nine o'clock, position of sun 1. -kámbeke diyúwa 4a (2. look up; 3. put 3)
midday mutwekátji 3/ Just after midday mwíru 3/
afternoon thitengyúwa. 7
syn. thitenguko 7/ Start journey in afternoon -ñova
late afternoon, evening from 3 pm. runguro Three o'clock, position of sun -thígukú diyúwa
3. DAY-TIME all - diyúwa dyodiheya 5
in the day-time mu muténya
during the day-time mutényamwíru 3/ A bright day kayúwa ko káshe 12/
day-light muténya 3/
by day and night muténya no ghuthíku

DAY (cont)

4. Particular days, today-	d'farero 5/	
yesterday, or, to-morrow	pegdndha 10/	N.B. The following day
- before yesterday	diyadyuwa 5/	diyúwa di dya tundire ko 5/
- after to-morrow	kunáki 15a/	
this - week	muthivike thofótji	
5. Phrr about 'day' twice a-	ruwádi	
everyday	zene diyúwa	
- by -	diyúwa no diyúwa	
one -	diyúwa dímwé	
some day	diyúwa dímwé muruvéde	
	ro kughutho	
the other -	diyúwa dímwéya	
6. special days - Sunday	Shundahala(9)/6(9)	N.B. First - of week
Christmas -	diyúwa dyo	diyúwa dyo -tángá mu thivike 5/
	Krístemas 5/	
birth -	diyúwa dyo	
	Mashámurukero 5/	
pay -	diyúwa dyo yitámura 5/	
The Last Day	diyúwa dyo ghuhúra 5/	
7 From former days till now		
in days of old	mumayúwa gho karekare	
these -, nowadays	mumayúwa gha	
at the present -	mudiyúwa díno	
to this -	kate d'farero shime tha kárera	"The pile of stones is here to this day" (Josh. 8; 29) = "thirambo thomawe thi di kuya kate d'farero shime tha kárera."
	(lit. until to-day still it remains)	

DAY-LEBOURER n

man hired to work by the day	murugháni gho-kúta	
	ko diyúwa dyorótji	(lit. 'workman hired for one day')
	1/2	

DAZE vt.

stupefy (lit. 'cause head to stand') i.d.	kwímanitha mútwi	He is dazed by his accident = thimyatuka theni
	4-2b	ghemanithire mutwiwendi.

DAZZLE vt.

confuse person with too much light	-yérupitha 4-2b	The lorry's lights dazzled the cattle = minyenge dhothihauto dha yerupithire ngombe.
------------------------------------	-----------------	--

DEAD a. n.

living creature, object that ceased to live

a - person	múfu 1/2	The Dead	háfu, 2; -object	thífu 7/8
a - animal, animal carcass	dirambo syn.	a - fish	díbu	5/6
	didhodho 5/6			

to be - of person, eg.
'he is dead' ghaná pu (v. kúpwa)

to be - of animal eg.
'it is dead' ghaná fu (v. kúfa)

without hope of recovery mbódi-kúrupera
kwáruka

nearly mo mo kúpwa

to fall down - kúwa no kúfa

phrr. fig. and id.

a - calm

nyiki po

"The wind dropped and there was a dead calm"
(Mark 4;39) = "lingundanga dya rarire no kokuheya kuu karire nyiki po"

DEAD (cont)

- a - heat, i.e. two finishing
race together pofótji po
- a - faint, swoon rēremena po
- a - loss thishinyehera yo
i.e. without compensation kúfa 7

The two boys finished the race in a dead heat =
hangaghu hawadi ha pwire thitjira pofótji po
He collapsed in a dead faint = gha pwererire
ghana kurerekena po

The smashed lorry is a dead loss = thihauto tho
payaghuka thi ne thishinyehera tho kufa

DEADEN vt.

- deprive of feeling, e.g.
kill pain -pāgha tjitju

This injection will deaden the pain = vendwa dhi
hanyi dha kupaghe tjitju

DEADLY adv.

- very, extremely, i.e. able
to kill gho -kōna -pāgha
- nightshade, belladonna,
poisonous plant mudyāngwe 3

That snake is deadly poisonous = noka ya gha
kara noghuhungu gho kona kupagha.

DEAF a

- without hearing ghupūrupūru
- phr. turn - ear, i.e.
refuse to listen -shwēna -tērerera
- and dumb language, i.e.
use signs with hands to
communicate -tēnditha yineya
4-2b

Unable to lip-read, understand what is being said

-nema
He turned a deaf ear to her entreaties = gha shwenine
kuterera yikanderera yendi

He spoke with them in deaf and dumb language =
gha ghambire nawo kutenditha yinegha.

DEAFNESS n

- state of being without
hearing ghupūrupūru 14/

DEAF-MUTE n

- one who is deaf and dumb thimūmu no thifa
mātwi 7/8

DEAFEN vt.

- make unable to hear because
of noise vi. -kāra kakūmbo

The noise of the hammering was deafening = muyongo
gho kupamarera gho karire kakumbo

DEAL vt. vi.

1. distribute gifts among
people -tāpa yitāpa
2. associate with -tēnda no kehe
thino
- do business with -tēnda yirughana
no

He dealt out presents to his family = gha tapire
yitapa kwawapendi.

I refuse to deal with him = nina shwena kutenda
nendi kehe thino.
We do not have dealings with them = mbadi tuna
kutenda yirughana nawo

DEALER n

- trader mughūrīthi 1/2

DEAR a.

1. beloved muhākwa
- also polite address at
beginning of letter muhākwa
2. costly, of high price,
expensive ndhīro

'my dear Disho' = 'Muhakwa Disho'

DEARTH n

1. scarcity of food yipira yo yidya /8
 2. scanty supply maghungwero gho mambiru /6

DEATH n

- dying - of process yipwa /8
 dying - of animal yifa /8
 - bed ghudidi gho yifa 14/6(14)
 - duties, tax on property of deceased mitero dho yifa 3/10(4)
 - rate, yearly number of deaths paro dho yifa 10/ -kehe mwaka
 - rattle, muyongo gho mudyu i.e. noise in the throat of a dying person
 gho muka kupwa 3/10(4)
 - sudden - yipwa yo -dhira -dimuka /8 Be in state of rigour before - -ghanyana

w.v.v. - wail, of an animal

phrr. to be brought near to -

come near to -

at death's door, i.e. soon

to die

eyes closed in -

everlasting -

lose someone by -, be bereaved

put to - i.e. kill

sick unto - about to die of illness

- blow, blow causing death

- warrant

fig. sign one's - warrant

-retitha pepi no yifa 4-2b

-hanyena pepi noyifa

momo kupwa

meno gho -yandheritha muyifa /6

yifa yo -dhira kupwa 8

-ferrera 66-15

-paga

-korwa thikuma pepi noyifa

thipura tho yifa 7/8

mbapira dho -paga i.e. written authority to put a criminal to death - see WARRANT

no veta 10/6(10)

kukuponda

(1. eat; 2. use

4. borrow) 7

see DEBARR

" For this word he shall be put to death (1 Kings 2:23) = "yoyishi yo diywi di fanyi ha ku mu paghe"

He was sick unto death = gha korwire thikuma pepi noyifa

i.e. written authority to put a criminal to death - see WARRANT

i.e. do something worthy of death

DEBAR vt.

1. exclude from entering, right

2. prevent, lit. 'forbid'

-yandherera kununda 66-15 (lit. 'shut out')

-dhireka 3-4a

The chief debarred him from entering his backyard = fumu gha mu yandhererira kununda ko kwingna marombe ghendi.

The man has debarred his daughter from leaving his yard = mukafumu nga dhireka mwanendi ghonuk-amadi kuthigha dirapa dyendi

DEBASE vt.

lessen value of money

make a coin smaller

-tépura twatwa dho manyinga

-pupitha danyinga 4-2b

The ownership of this plot is debatable =
ghuthinda ghothiko thi ghu ne dimbwambwa
dya kukañana

-kañsana see DISPUTE
-shimba dimbwámwa see DISCUSS
-yedhekera
-yonga dighano

ñānani 10/6(10)
yishimba yo
dimbwāmbwa /8

mbapira dho
manyinga gho-korota
10/6(10)
-pakera munu thivarero
tho manyinga 6-5b

thikórota 7/8
kwiŋgena muthikórota
- 4-2b Burden, encumber with debts -kúreka yikórota 3-4a
-mānitha thikórota
- 4-2b Part of - still unpaid thikórota tho thi thīghara 7/
-shūtura thikórota
ngwāngwa mu thikórota
mukóngwethi gho yikórota
1/2
thikórota tho ditunga
7

one who owes money, service-múka kukórota -múka murándu (lit. 'the person of the debt')
(lit. 'one who owes')
1/2

-yúmenena 99-15

thiyipa 7/8
ghufutu 14/
yiyuacnena /8

vífa /8

kúpwa

múfu 1/2

DECEIT n.

1. misrepresentation of what said, done
deliberately false account
mahambuthero /6
thithimwetedha
tho mbudhi 7/8
ghuringiringi 14/
2. trick

DECEIVE vt. vi.

- mislead, persuade belief in what is false
- with false promises
kwangera
kwangereke 3-4a
- with false statements
-ringiripera nombudhi 6-5b
- by denying or suppressing truth
-mbudhipitha 1/4(17)
2b
- oneself
kukukuruka nothinda 7

"Your brother deceived me and took away your blessing" (Gen. 27;35) = "Minoye gha nangerire gho ghana na shimbi fighagbudhi dhoye"
He deceived you with false promises = gha kwangerekire moyikurupiritha yombudhi

DECEIVER n

- one who tricks others
one who leads others astray
muringirilingi 1/2
muka-yongaritha 1/2

"If we say we have no sin, we deceive ourselves" (1 John 1; 18) "Ngeshi tuna ningi eshi mbadi twa kara nomaharwero, kuna kukukuruka twathinda"

"Satan - the deceiver of the whole world" (Rev. 12;9) = "Shatani - muka kuyongaritha kaye ko keheya"

DECEMBER n

- twelfth month, usually when rain continues
dikururonga 5/

DECENCY n

- good behaviour
thiremeko tho thiwa 7/ see BEHAVIOUR

DECENTLY adv.

- nicely
thiwana

DECENT a.

- seemly
respectable
nodikuto
-roghitha ko
thifumaneka 4-2b

DECEPTIVE

- apt to deceive
kwangera
Appearances are always deceptive = yimonara yina kehepa yo kwangera

DECIDE vt. vi.

1. settle disputed question -ghatura ndhango
The headman decided that Makoya had reached home first = nduragumbo gha ghaturire ndhango eshi Makoya gha tangerire kudighumbo.
2. give judgment for, against
-ghaturera(-pangurera)
5b
3. bring, come to decision -ghayara
He decided to go away = gha ghayarire kuyenda.
4. - as a group to do
-nungadhana 9-6b
(r. -nunga = join)

DECISION n.

- 1. settlement of dispute, judgment
thighatura 7/8
- 2. personal -
thighayara 7/8

DECK vt.

- array, adorn
-tende wiwa or
yengitha 4-2b

DECK (cont)
- oneselfkukutēnda wūwa or
kukuyengitha 4-7,2b see ADORN

DECLAIM vi.

1. speak loudly against -ghēmbera kuwīru ku
6-5b He declaimed against the new rule = gha ghemberiro
kuwira kuveta dhodhiyya panyeya yiphayara.
2. speak with feeling rather than reason -ghamba no makuyūvo

DECLARATION n.

1. stating, announced thitōngora 7/8
2. making known thidimukitha 7/8

DECLARE vt. vi.

1. proclaim publicly -tōngora The President has declared war = nga tongora
Mutungi mvo.
2. make known one's goods at the Customs -dimukitha 4-2b Have you anything to declare? = a nga wa kara
nokehe thino tho kudimukitha ndi ?
3. pronounce a person to be -ninga I declare him to be a traitor = nina mu ningi
eshi muhonyaghuri

DECLINE vi.

1. slope downwards see SLOPE -ghūrumuka
2. -, draw to close, of the day -tōkera The day is declining = diyawa kutokera dina kutokera
3. refuse discussion, challenge -shwēna He declines to discuss the matter = ghana shwena
kushinbera dimbwambwa.
4. - invitation -ninga eshi mbādi lit. 'To say that one is unable to accept an invitation'
-kōna -tūwa
thishipwero

DECORATE vt.

see DECK, ADORN

- musical instrument -yēnga

DECORATION n

see ADORNMENT

DECREASE

- vi. 1. become less -pūpa The goods in the store have decreased = yitere
muthitara nga yi pupa.
- vt. 2. make less -pūpitha 4-2b He has decreased his stock = nga pupitha
mapungwero ghoyitara

DECREE n

1. edict of authority veta dho thiraghura 10/6(10) "A decree went out from Caesar" (Luke 2; 1)
"veta dho thiraghura dha tongwemire kushwagha
mwa Kaisere."
2. court order mbānguro 10/6(10) A decree annulling a marriage = mbānguro dho
kutongwera wenga kukera kuveta.

DEDICATE vt.

1. devote to sacred use, give to God -ghirera 6-5b
2. - new thing for use for the first time -chūmena 0-5
3. - give oneself up to special work kukutāpera 7,5a He is completely dedicated to his work = ghama
kutāpera popuhaya kuyiraghamu jwili

R.C. WYNN.

- DEDICATION n
 1. giving to God of new building
 2. - of a special day
 thi shúmena tho mughúmba
 gho ghúpya 7/8
 madhirero gho diyúwa dímwé /6
- DEDUCT vt.
 1. take away, subtract
 2. put aside
 -shwághitha 4-2b Employers deduct part of employees' wages for income tax = hakuti hana shwaghitha mutara ghoyitambura yoharughani manyinga ghomutero.
 -páka kumbádi They put the money aside for Government = ha paka kumbadi manyinga gha Furumende
- DEED n
 thing done with intention, act
 thitēnda (doing)
 thirughana (work) 7/8
- DEEP (1)
 going far downwards from surface
 -water in river, esp. gorge
 a - sleep see SLEEP
 a - breath
 a - thinker
 ghudhúngi A deep place = didhamenens dyodidhungi
 ditōndo 5/
 thirára tho thithúngi
 7/
 mutōthimi gho N.B. to breathe deeply so as to snore - ghōna
 ghukúru 3/10(4)
 muka-gháyara thikúma
 1/2
- DEEP (2) n
 abyss. see ABYSS - gorge
 the Deep, i.e. the Sea, see SEA
 ghudhúngi 14/6(14)
 dikúruviya 5/6
- DEFACE vt.
 spoil appearance fo see SPOIL
 spoil beauty of, see DISFIGURE
 -pétha thimónara
 -petha wúwa
- DEFAME vt.
 give bad name to
 speak ill of
 kúpa dína dyo díyi
 -ghamba ghúyi
- DEFAULT vi. vt.
 fail to appear in court
 fail to pay money
 -kángera kukumonitha -mu mathékero
 -kángera -fúta manyinga
- DEFEAT (1) vt.
 1. frustrate, prevent
 2. overthrow in fight - single combat
 conquer a country in war
 3. person in argument 1.
 -bíterera 66-14 i.e. of the wind preventing paddlers of boat from following a straight course
 -píterera 66-14 see BETTER
 -kánga mvo
 -mbíruruna -píruruna i.e. person in dispute so that he cannot reply to questions put.
 10
- DEFEAT (2) n
 - of person in single combat
 - of country in war
 thipíterera 7/8
 thikánga tho mvo 7/8